



WILMINGTON
North Carolina

TECHNICAL STANDARDS AND SPECIFICATIONS MANUAL



March 2007

PREFACE

This manual was prepared in the office of the City Engineer. The manual contains specific technical information related to the construction of infrastructure improvements which are required to be built to the City of Wilmington, NC standards and specifications.

COPIES

Additional copies of the document can be obtained at the City Engineer's office located at 305 Chestnut Street, by contacting the offices with written request, PO Box 1810, Wilmington, NC 28402, or by phone (910) 341-7807.

This update, completed in March 2007, supersedes all previous printings of this document. Copies prepared or dated prior to March 2007 should be discarded.

*TABLE
OF
CONTENTS*

TECHNICAL STANDARDS AND SPECIFICATIONS MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Chapter</u>	<u>Page</u>
I. Introduction	1-1
II. General Requirements	2-1
III. Water	3-1
IV. Sanitary Sewer	4-1
V. Stormwater Management	5-1
VI. Landscaping	6-1
VII. Traffic Engineering	7-1
VIII. Public Transportation System	8-1
IX. Sanitation	9-1
Index	A-1
Document Revisions	B-1

I

INTRODUCTION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>SECTION</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
A. GENERAL INFORMATION	1-1
B. JURISDICTION	1-1
C. VARIANCE OR MODIFICATION	1-1
D. AMENDMENT AND ADOPTION PROCEDURE.....	1-1

A. **GENERAL INFORMATION**

The materials, design and construction specifications and standards contained within this manual are established as the minimum improvement specifications and standards for the City of Wilmington. These specifications and standards have been compiled by the various technical agencies of the City of Wilmington and New Hanover County upon sufficient studies of the existing problems, improvement standards within other areas of the State, and applicable enabling legislation of the State, and have been determined to be reasonable improvement specifications and standards applicable to the City of Wilmington. All construction methods and material not specified within this manual shall conform with the current "North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures".

B. **JURISDICTION**

On and after September 11, 1979, the specifications and standards contained herein shall be applicable to all new improvements and alterations in existing improvements lying within the regulatory jurisdiction of the City of Wilmington.

C. **VARIANCE OR MODIFICATION**

All proposed variances to the specifications and standards contained herein shall be subject to the provisions of Section 18-348 of the City Subdivision Regulations. Any alternate designs, construction methods, and materials, not specifically prescribed herein, shall be subject to Section 18-399 of the City Subdivision Regulations.

D. **AMENDMENT AND ADOPTION PROCEDURES**

The City Manager or his/her designee may make amendments to the standards and specifications contained herein, provided that such amendments, in his/her judgment, are of a minor nature and do not alter significantly the intent as originally adopted. The City Council, by resolution, shall have the right to repeal or alter any amendment so made by the City Manager or his/her designee. Any other amendments to these standards and specifications shall only be made by resolution adopted by the City Council following review of the proposed amendment by the Subdivision Review Board. Such resolution shall set forth the revised standards and specifications or may amend the standards and specifications by incorporating by reference any document or set of standards. Any document or set of standards so adopted by reference shall be in force from and after the date it is filed in the office of the City Clerk.

CHAPTER II

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

II
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>SECTION</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
A. <u>DEFINITIONS</u>	2-1
B. <u>EXCAVATION, GRADING & BACKFILLING</u>	2-2
C. <u>CONCRETE</u>	2-6
D. <u>CURB</u>	2-8
E. <u>SIDEWALK, DRIVEWAYS, WHEELCHAIR RAMPS & RAILROAD CROSSINGS</u>	2-8
F. <u>BASE COURSE MATERIALS</u>	2-10
G. <u>ASPHALT PAVING</u>	2-12
H. <u>MATERIALS</u>	2-14
I. <u>TESTING</u>	2-25
STANDARD DETAILS	2-28

A. DEFINITIONS

1. A.S.A. - American Standards Association..
2. A.S.T.M. - American Society for Testing Materials.
3. A.W.S. - American Welding Society.
4. A.W.W.A. - American Water Works Association.
5. A.A.S.H.T.O. - American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials.
6. City - The word City in these specifications refers to the City of Wilmington, North Carolina.
7. City Council or Council - The word Council, or City Council, refers to the City Council, the governing body of the City of Wilmington, North Carolina.
8. Drawings - All drawings, or reproductions thereof, pertaining to the construction of the work, which are approved by the Engineer for such purpose.
9. Engineer - The word Engineer, as used in these specifications, refers to the City Engineer or his or her properly authorized assistants.
10. F.S. - Federal specifications.
11. N.C.D.O.T. & H.S. or N.C.D.O.T. & H.S.. Specifications - North Carolina Department of Transportation and Highway Safety and their "Standard Specifications of Roads and Structures", latest edition.
12. Standard Details - The Standard Detail drawings, or reproductions thereof, which pertain to the standard method of construction of the work, and which are approved by the Engineer.
13. Phrases - Wherever, in the specifications, or upon the drawings, the words "As required", "As permitted," or words of like import are used, it shall be understood that the direction, requirements or permission of the Engineer is intended; and similarly, the words "approved", "acceptable" and "satisfactory", or words of like import, shall mean approved, acceptable or satisfactory to the Engineer.

NOTE: The above terms and definitions apply in all chapters of these specifications.

B. EXCAVATION, GRADING AND BACKFILLING

Care will be exercised to prevent undercut lower than the required subgrades.

Where existing grades require the use of fill to reach the required section elevation, suitable spoil material shall be used. Such spoil material shall be free from debris, roots, trash, stones or other harmful substance, and shall be placed in successive layers of loose material not more than six (6) inches in depth. Each layer shall be spread uniformly by the use of a road machine or other approved device and rolled with an approved tamping machine until thoroughly compacted to ninety-five (95) percent of maximum density obtained at optimum moisture content, as determined by the ASTM D 698 Standard Proctor Test Method.

When any portion of the embankment is constructed on an old road bed, the existing surface shall have be scarified and manipulated in order that, when compacted, it shall have a uniform density, as specified above.

Any undercutting shall be replaced and compacted, as specified above. If the material, after excavation to subgrade, is found to be soft, spongy or unfit for use as subgrade, such unsuitable material shall be removed to a depth as directed by the Engineer and the subgrade shall be brought to proper elevation by filling with suitable spoil. The material for backfilling shall be free from all perishable and objectionable materials, such as debris, roots, trash, stones, or other harmful substance, and shall be approved by the Engineer.

If insufficient quantities of suitable spoil material are generated by grading operations, then select backfill material, approved by the Engineer, shall be used.

The Developer and Contractor are responsible for complying with all Federal, State, and local laws, including but not limited to OSHA regulation.

1. Grading and Sloping Banks

Where it is necessary to terrace or slope banks, all terracing or sloping shall be done behind the property line. In grading these banks a maximum slope of three (3) to one (1) will be held.

In the event that fill is required at the property line, this fill will be extended level with the top of the sidewalks (or level with the final grade at the property line where sidewalk is not installed) at least one (1) foot behind the property line and then carried on a maximum of three (3) to one (1) slope back on the property until it intersects the property grade.

Sloping in either cut or fill sections shall be accomplished on straight grades as near as possible and fine grading and cleaning shall be done with a hand rake. This surface shall be prepared in such a manner that it is ready for fertilizing and seeding when completed.

2. Excavation and Backfilling for Water Mains, Sanitary Sewer and Storm Drains

Excavation of trenches for all pipe lines shall be done to established lines and grades. The bedding surface shall provide a firm foundation of uniform density through the entire length of the pipe. Recesses shall be excavated to accommodate bells and joints. Class “C” shaped bottom bedding shall be used. Where unstable soil conditions are encountered as determined by the Engineer, adequate stone bedding material of minimum thickness of six-inch (6-inch) thickness shall be used. **Ref.** SD 1-07 of this chapter.

3. Undercutting

Any undercutting in good soil shall be replaced and the replacement material shall be compacted to ninety-five (95) percent of maximum density obtained at optimum moisture content, as determined by the ASTM D 698 Standard Proctor Test Method. In the event that material encountered at pipe grade is found to be soft, spongy, or in any other way unfit, the contractor shall notify the City of Wilmington Engineering Department immediately. Such unsuitable material shall be removed to a depth as specified by the Engineer and replaced with a minimum of six (6) inch stone.

4. Backfill

Before backfilling is commenced over pipes and installations, earth fill shall be solidly tamped around and above the pipe to a depth of one (1) foot above the top of the pipe. Care shall be taken to prevent any disturbance to the pipe or damage to newly made joints. The filling of the trench shall be carried out simultaneously on both sides of the pipes in such a manner that injurious side pressures do not occur.

The material for backfilling shall be free from all perishable and objectionable materials. Before placing any backfill, all rubbish, form, blocks, wires or other unsuitable material shall be removed from excavation. The back-filling shall be placed in layers not over six (6) inches thick and compacted to a minimum density of ninety-five (95) percent of the maximum dry density as determined by the Modified Proctor Compaction Test.

5. Cut-Back of Pavement Required

When pipe lines are placed under existing pavements, a cutback of the pavement of twelve (12) inches will be required on each side of the ditch line. (See Standard Detail SD 1-05 in this chapter). After the pipe line has been laid and backfilled, an eight (8) inch compacted base of marl-type rock shall be placed over the total width of the pavement cut. After compaction of this base, two (2) inches of bituminous concrete, Type I, shall then be applied in such a manner as to, when rolled, match

the grade of existing pavement. Pavement repair sections on State maintained roads shall conform to NCDOT requirements.

6. Grading and Preparation of Subgrades

a. Asphalt Pavement

After all excavation, undercutting and backfilling have been completed, the subgrade shall be properly shaped and compacted. The area to be compacted shall include all areas beneath pavement and curb and shall extend at least one (1) foot behind the back of the curb. The degree of compaction of the top six (6) inches over this entire area shall be at least ninety-five (95) percent of that obtained by compacting a sample of the soil or material with the equipment and in the manner by the Standard Proctor Method and shall be brought to a firm, unyielding condition before any base course, surface course or pavement is placed thereon.

All soft and yielding material, or any other unsuitable materials in the subgrade which will not readily compact shall be removed and replaced with suitable material which shall then be thoroughly compacted. All roots, stumps and other perishable matter encountered in the preparation of the subgrade shall be removed to a depth of not less than two (2) feet below the surface of the pavement. Any portion of the subgrade inaccessible to the roller or rolling equipment shall be thoroughly compacted with hand or mechanical tampers.

b. Curb and Gutter

The subgrade shall be constructed true to grade and cross sections. The subgrade shall be of materials equal in bearing quality to the subgrade under the adjacent roadway or street and shall be placed and compacted to conform with applicable requirements of the above paragraph. All roots, stumps and other perishable matter encountered at the subgrade shall be removed to a depth of not less than four (4) inches below the subgrade and undercut, filled and compacted with select material.

Excavation to an elevation slightly above finished subgrade shall be completed prior to setting of forms. The subgrade shall be maintained in a smooth, compacted condition, in conformity with the required section and established grade until the concrete is in place. The subgrade shall be wet down sufficiently in advance of the placing of the concrete to insure a firm and moist condition. In cold weather, the subgrade shall be so treated, protected and prepared as to produce a satisfactory subgrade entirely free from frost when the concrete is deposited.

c. Sidewalk and Driveways

The subgrade shall be constructed true to grade and cross sections. In areas where sidewalks or driveways are to be poured, the following conditions will be observed relating to compaction of the subgrade:

- (1) Where good firm material (original material, not fill) has been carefully graded, so that no undercutting has occurred, this material shall be considered acceptable subgrade.
- (2) Where fill material has been placed, where undercutting has occurred, or where loose or unsuitable material is encountered, such fill or loose material shall be compacted to ninety-five (95) percent or maximum density obtained at optimum moisture content, as determined by the Modified Proctor Compaction Test Method.
- (3) Where roots, stumps or other perishable matter is encountered at the subgrade, they shall be removed to a depth of four (4) inches below the subgrade.
- (4) In cold weather, the subgrade shall be so treated, protected and prepared as to produce and provide a satisfactory subgrade entirely free from frost when concrete is deposited.
- (5) All subgrades shall be graded and protected so as to prevent an accumulation of standing water, and consequent subgrade saturation, in the event of rain.

d. Backfill of Curb and Gutter and Sidewalks

Immediately after the removal of forms for curb and gutter, sidewalks and driveways, the space between the back of the curb and sidewalks shall be backfilled, smoothed off and maintained so as to prevent the accumulation of standing water.

e. Tree Removal

Trees within rights-of-way which are in conflict with required improvements, including trees with root systems that are substantially damaged, shall be removed. The designer shall be required to make reasonable efforts to save regulated trees. Regulated trees are defined as hardwood trees, eight (8) inches or larger in diameter; pine trees, twelve (12) inches or larger in diameter; and flowering trees, four (4) inches or larger in diameter. All trees shall be measured four (4) feet above ground elevation.

All projects shall be required to obtain a Tree Preservation Permit from the City prior to beginning any site improvements.

f. Clearing and Grubbing

The street right-of-way lines and any drainage or utility easements shall constitute the clearing and grubbing limits, provided that regulated trees not in conflict with required improvements shall be saved.

Clearing shall consist in the felling and satisfactory disposal of the trees and other vegetation.

g. Grubbing

Grubbing shall consist of the removal of all stumps and roots having a diameter of three (3) inches or larger to a depth of at least three (3) feet below the subgrade.

C. CONCRETE

All concrete work performed during cold weather shall conform with ACI-306R. In general, no concrete shall be placed when the ambient temperature is forty (40) degrees Fahrenheit, or below. Concrete shall not be deposited on frosted or frozen subgrade.

Concrete shall be placed so as to avoid segregation of the materials and shall not be dropped a distance of more than five (5) feet.

1. Finishing and Curing of Concrete

a. Finishing

Concrete for curb, curb and gutter, sidewalks and driveways shall have a broomed finish. This finish shall be accomplished as follows: the surface shall be screeded and tamped to force the coarse aggregate away from the surface, floated to bring the surface to the required finish level, steel-troweling to an even smooth surface and brooming with a fibre-bristle brush. The surface shall be of uniform texture.

b. Curing

Curing shall be accomplished by preventing loss of moisture, rapid temperature change and mechanical injury or injury from rain or flowing water for a period of seven (7) days when normal Portland cement has been used or three (3) days when high-early-strength Portland cement has been used. Curing shall be started as soon after placing and finishing as free water has disappeared from the surface of the concrete. Curing may be accomplished by the following method:

1. Membrane-Curing Method

The entire exposed surface shall be covered with an approved pigmented membrane-forming curing compound. The curing compound shall be applied in two (2) coats by hand-operated pressure sprayers at a coverage of approximately two hundred (200) square feet per gallon for both coats. The second coat shall be applied in a direction approximately at right angles to the direction of application of the first coat. The compound shall form a uniform, continuous, coherent film that will not check, crack or peel and shall be free from pinholes or other imperfections. Concrete surfaces to which membrane-curing compounds have been applied shall be adequately protected for seven (7) days from pedestrian and vehicular traffic and from any other action which might disrupt the continuity of the membrane.

c. Sampling and Testing

All sampling, curing and testing of concrete shall be in accordance with ASTM and ACI Standards, latest revisions. When the Engineer directs that the concrete be tested, not less than three (3) cylinders shall be taken at any one time. Unless otherwise directed by the Engineer, a minimum of one cylinder shall be taken for breaking in seven (7) days and a minimum of two (2) cylinders for breaking at twenty-eight (28) days from each batch. The concrete required for testing shall be considered incidental to the project and provided at no cost to the City.

TABLE I

RECOMMENDED PROPORTIONS OF AGGREGATE

Maximum Size of Course Aggregate - Inches	Ratio of Fine (*) to Total Aggregate on Basis of Dry, Compacted Volumes, Measured Separately	
	<u>Minimum</u>	<u>Maximum</u>
3/8	0.55	0.70
3/4	0.40	0.60
1 and Over	0.30	0.50

(*) NOTE: The finer the sand, the lower will be the percentage required.

TABLE II

CONCRETE PROPORTIONS AND STRENGTH REQUIREMENTS

Concrete Classification	Type of Construction	Max. Water Gals. Per Bag Cement	Min. Cement Bags Per 1 Cu. Yd. Concrete	Min. Comp. Strength, Lbs. Per Sq. In. At Age 28 Days
AA	Reinforced Piles, Thin Walls, Light Structural Members	5-1/2	6-3/4	4000
A	Reinforced Retaining Walls, Sewers, Sidewalks, Driveways, Curbs, Retaining Walls not Reinforced, and Cradles for Sewers	6-3/4	5-3/4	3000

D. CURB

Concrete for curb shall be Class “A”, three thousand (3,000) PSI concrete.

The alignment and grade of the curb shall be established by means of off-set stakes.

1. Forms

Steel forms shall be used for the construction of curb. They shall be set true to alignment and grade and substantially braced. Metal templates, not more than three-sixteenth (3/16) inch in thickness, and manufactured in accordance with the curb section, shall be set in the places provided in the forms not more than ten (10) feet apart. Templates shall be adjusted under the supervision of the Engineer so as to prevent short sections (less than five (5) feet).

Concrete shall not be placed in the forms for curb until the forms and subgrade have been tested, inspected and approved by the Engineer. At least one hundred (100) feet of forms shall, at all times, be set and grade tested and approved ahead of pouring operations.

2. Sections

Combination curb and gutter, Type “A”, shall be of the vertical curb type, conforming to the dimensions shown on Standard Detail 7-01 of this chapter. Slope curb, Type “D”, shall conform to the dimensions shown on SD 7-02. Type “H” curb and gutter shall conform to the dimensions shown on SD 7-04. Transitions from Type “D” and Type “H” curb to Type “A” curb shall conform to the dimensions shown on SD 7-03 and SD 7-05, respectively.

The curb at street corners shall be constructed on a thirty-five (35) foot radius unless otherwise directed. At driveways, the curb and gutter shall be constructed on a three (3) foot radius.

Concrete curb shall be finished in strict compliance with Section C.1.a of this chapter.

After curb and adjacent paving has been completed, that area between the curb and sidewalks shall be cleared of all construction debris and neatly graded.

E. SIDEWALKS, DRIVEWAYS, WHEEL CHAIR RAMPS & RAILROAD CROSSINGS

Sidewalks and driveways shall be constructed of Portland Cement Concrete. No other material will be allowed.

Concrete for sidewalks, wheel chair ramps and driveways shall be Class “A”, three thousand (3,000) PSI, Concrete proportioned, mixed, textured and placed, in strict accordance with Section C of this chapter.

Generally, the alignment and grade of sidewalks will be determined from the previously placed concrete curb.

The alignment for sidewalks shall be such that the back edge (property line edge) shall be located on and along the right-of-way line. Reference Standard Detail 1-02.

The grade for sidewalks shall be such that the back edge (property owner's side) shall be a minimum of one-fourth inch (1/4") per foot above the grade of the curb at a point on the curb directly opposite. All sidewalks shall be maintained with a maximum of one-fourth (1/4) inch per foot fall across the sidewalk width. Reference Standard Detail 1-02. Driveways shall connect the openings in the curb and extend across to the back edge of the sidewalks.

Concrete shall not be placed in the forms for sidewalks until the forms and subgrade have been tested, inspected and approved by the Engineer.

1. Excavation and Subgrade Preparation

Excavation and subgrade preparation for concrete sidewalk, wheel chair ramps and driveways shall be in strict compliance with these standards as stated in Section B of this chapter.

2. Forms

Forms shall be of wood or metal, straight and free from warp, and of sufficient strength to resist springing during the process of depositing and consolidation of the concrete. The width of the forms for sidewalks and driveways shall be equal to the full depth of the sidewalks. Forms shall be securely staked and braced true to line and grade.

3. Width and Thickness

All sidewalks shall be constructed to the uniform thickness of four (4) inches, and shall be constructed a minimum width according to the provisions of Table 1 of Chapter VII, Traffic Engineering, of these Standards. All wheelchair ramps shall be constructed to the uniform thickness of six (6) inches, and shall be constructed according to the City's Standard Details. Driveways shall have a uniform thickness of six (6) inches, including that section which crosses the sidewalk area, excepting that in residential areas only, where the sidewalk is pre-existing and in sound condition prior to driveway installation, the existing sidewalk will be allowed to remain at four (4) inches thickness. However, should the four-inch section fail and require replacement, it will be replaced completely at six (6) inch thickness across the entire width of the driveway. The width of driveways shall be within the limits established in Table 3 of Chapter VII, Traffic Engineering, of these Standards.

4. Construction of Sidewalks and Driveways

After the forms have been set, the Engineer shall inspect the form for proper line and grade and shall check the subgrade for proper compaction before allowing any concrete to be placed. Sidewalks shall be "scored" one (1) inch deep in sections to form squares equal to the width of the sidewalk. All "scores" shall be straight and

rounded at the surface with the proper edging tool, or as directed by the Engineer. The edges of driveways will be worked with an edging tool and will be sectioned into squares as shown on SD 8-02. An expansion joint shall be installed for every thirty (30) linear feet of sidewalk against all structures, pavement and curbs, and at such other places deemed necessary by the Engineer.

The Engineer shall require any concrete that fails to meet the required compressive strength for Class "A" concrete after twenty-eight (28) days to be removed from any portion of a sidewalk or driveway and be replaced at the owner's expense.

5. Concrete Curing and Finishing

The curing and finishing of concrete sidewalks and driveways shall be in strict compliance with Section C of this chapter.

6. Wheel Chair Ramps

Wheel chair ramps shall be installed at all street intersections and at other major points of pedestrian flow. Reference SD 8-09, SD 8-10, SD 8-11, SD 8-12 and SD 8-13 of this chapter.

New wheelchair ramps shall be constructed with cast-in-place detectable warning tiles such as "Armor-Tile," as manufactured by Engineering Plastics, Inc., "Alert-Cast," as available through Detectable Warning Systems of Wilmington, NC, or other City-approved equal. Cast-in-place tiles shall be brick red in color, except in designated historic areas, where black tiles shall be used. New wheelchair ramps constructed within NC DOT rights-of-way shall comply with NC DOT specifications.

Existing wheelchair ramps shall be retrofitted with flexible surface-applied detectable warning mats such as "Alert-Mat," as available through Detectable Warning Systems of Wilmington, NC, or other City-approved equal. Surface-applied mats shall be black in color. Wheelchair ramps to be retrofitted with surface-applied detectable warning mats within NC DOT rights-of-way shall comply with NC DOT specifications.

7. Railroad Crossings

Railroad crossings shall include the installation of a permanent type crossing system. Fab-Ra-Cast, as manufactured by Plant City Steel Company, Division of Hasco Corporation, or T-Core, as manufactured by True-Temper Corporation, or approved equals shall be used for these installations.

F. BASE COURSE MATERIALS

Base course for bituminous concrete pavement shall be fine and course aggregate, consisting of crushed stone and crushed gravel so proportioned as to meet the grading requirements as specified below using AASHTO Method T-88.

<u>Sieve Designation</u>	<u>Percentage by Weight Passing</u>
1-1/2 inch	100
1 inch	80-95
1/2 inch	60-75
No. 4	40-55
No. 10	28-43
No. 40	15-27
No. 200	5-12

The material passing the No. 200 sieve shall be not more than two-thirds (2/3) the percentage passing the No. 40 sieve.

1. Weather Limitations

Stabilized aggregate base courses shall not be constructed unless the atmospheric temperature is at a minimum of thirty-five (35) degrees Fahrenheit and rising. Any areas of completed base course that are damaged by freezing shall be reconditioned, reshaped and re-compacted.

2. Preparation of Subgrade

Prior to construction of the base course, the previously constructed subgrade shall be dry and clean of all foreign substances. The surface of the subgrade will be inspected by the Engineer for adequate compaction and surface tolerances. Any ruts or soft-yielding spots that may appear in the subgrade and any areas having inadequate compaction shall be corrected by loosening, removing and adding approved material, reshaping re-compacting the affected areas to line and grade, and to the specified density requirements.

3. Manipulation and Compaction

After sufficient material has been placed on the subgrade to obtain the specified thickness of base, it shall be well rolled and machined until thoroughly compacted. Frequent template checks shall be made to ensure that a minimum amount of patching is necessary after complete compaction is secured. If patching is required, the base material in place shall be scarified to a minimum depth of four (4) inches to secure adequate bonding of previously placed base and new material. The base course shall be compacted its full depth to at least ninety-five (95) percent of the density at optimum moisture, as determined by ASTM D 698, latest revision.

4. Thickness

Compacted thickness of base course shall be a minimum of six (6) inches for local streets, cul-de-sacs, and alleys. Other classifications of streets, such as collector streets, minor and major thoroughfares, frontage roads, expressways, freeways, and others intended for heavier usage, shall have a base thickness in accordance with the standards of the NCDOT for such classifications, and in no cases shall the base thickness be less than six (6) inches. Base course material shall be installed under all paved areas. Along collector higher classified streets, and where directed by the Engineer, the base course shall extend one (1) foot behind and under all curb sections.

No base material shall be placed on unstable and/or pumping subgrade. Where such soils exist, the material shall be removed and replaced with suitable fill material and compacted in accordance with Section B of this chapter. Where the seasonal high water table is within three (3) feet of the proposed top of subgrade, additional measures will be required, which could include sub-drains, the use of bituminous coated base course (per NCDOT specifications), additional fill, etc. The developer's engineer shall recommend to the City proposed sound engineering solutions. Approval by the Engineer will be required prior to the implementation of the proposed designs. On residential local streets, the stone under and one foot behind the curb may be eliminated with the approval of the Engineer.

5. Maintenance

Traffic shall be kept off the base between final compaction and surfacing.

G. ASPHALT PAVING

1. General

The bituminous surface course shall consist of fine and course mineral aggregate and mineral filler uniformly mixed with hot bituminous material in an approved plant placed and compacted on a prepared base course to a minimum depth of two (2) inches for local streets, cul-de-sacs and alleys. Other classifications of streets may have additional thickness as required by the Subdivision Review Board.

The design for bituminous mixture shall be either a Marshall Mix design or a Superpave Mix design. The design mix shall be the latest NCDOT design mix for southeastern North Carolina. The surface course for local streets, cul-de-sacs and alleys shall be I-2 for a Marshall mix or S-9.5A for a Superpave mix, provided the City Engineer may review and approve other classification mix(es) when appropriate. The mix design for all other street shall be reviewed on a case by case basis.

2. Transportation of Bituminous Mixture

Transportation of bituminous mixture from the paving plant to the site shall be in trucks having tight, clean and smooth beds. Each load shall be covered with canvas or other suitable material of ample size to protect it from the weather and to prevent the loss of heat. The mixture shall be delivered to the area to be paved in such manner that the temperature at the time of dumping into the spreader will not be less than two hundred and twenty-five (225) degrees Fahrenheit. Any loads wet excessively by rain will be rejected. Hauling over freshly laid material will not be permitted.

3. Placing Asphaltic Surface Course

No surface course shall be laid unless the temperature is a minimum of forty (40) degrees Fahrenheit and rising. Prior to delivery of surface course materials, the base course shall be completed for receiving the surface course material, and shall be kept free from traffic, with the exception of the mixture vehicles and those other vehicles

necessary for the placing of the pavement. The pavement shall be placed only when weather conditions are suitable. The mixture shall be laid by an approved type paving machine and finished to the proper grade for rolling. Asphalt mixtures that have temperatures of less than two hundred and twenty-five (225) degrees Fahrenheit, when ready to dump into the mechanical spreader, will be rejected.

Contact surfaces of curb and gutters, manholes, etc., shall be painted with a thin uniform coating of cut-back asphalt just before the surface mixture is placed against them. Immediately adjacent to headers, flush curbing, gutters, liners and other structures, the surface course mixture shall be spread uniformly high so that after final compaction it will be approximately one-eighth (1/8) inch above the edge of such structures.

4. Compaction of Asphalt Surface Course

The compression and compaction of the surface course shall be secured with a ten (10) ton tandem roller and shall be kept in continuous operation during the placing and finishing of the asphalt surface course until cooled. Rolling will start longitudinally at the side and proceed towards the center of the pavement, overlapping on successive trips at least one-half (1/2) the width of the roller. The pavement surface shall, after initial compaction, be subjected to diagonal rolling in a weaving fashion so that all areas are rolled in two (2) directions in addition to the initial longitudinal scaling. Rolling shall be continued until all roller marks are eliminated. The motion of the roller shall at all times be slow enough to avoid displacement of the hot mixture.

Rolling shall proceed immediately after placing in order to obtain maximum compression and density and, in the event that the rolling operation is not able to properly keep up with the placing, the finishing machine shall be stopped and no pavement shall be laid until the rolling is caught up.

5. Joints

a. General

All joints shall present the same texture, density and smoothness as other sections of the course. The joints between old and new pavements or between successive days' work shall be carefully made in such manner as to ensure a continuous bond between old and new sections of the course. All contact surfaces of previously constructed pavements shall be painted with a thin, uniform coat of hot bituminous material just before the fresh mixture is placed.

b. Transverse

The roller shall pass over the unprotected end of the freshly laid mixture only when the laying of the course is to be discontinued or when delivery of mixture is interrupted to the extent that the unrolled material may become cold. In all cases, the edge of the previously laid course shall be cut back to expose an even vertical surface for the full thickness of the course.

c. Longitudinal

In all cases the edges of cold longitudinal joints shall be cut back to expose an even, vertical surface for the full thickness of the course prior to constructing the adjacent pavement.

6. Protection and Testing of Asphaltic Surface Course

Sections of newly placed and compacted surface course shall be barricaded and protected from all defects for a period of at least eight (8) hours until they have become properly hardened by cooling.

a. Pavement Samples

The owner shall furnish test samples cut from the completed work when and as required by the Engineer. The areas of base and surface courses so removed shall be replaced with new mixture and finished so as to conform with the surrounding pavement.

b. Tack Coat

A tack or squeegee coat of hot asphalt grade RS-1h shall be applied to existing pavement surface, as directed by the Engineer, prior to placing the surface course thereon. This coat shall be applied in quantity not to exceed 1/10 gallon per square yard and in a manner which has been approved by the Engineer. All castings, the gutter edge and other surfaces which pavement rests against shall be painted with tack coat material by way of a hand brush prior to the placing of the surface course. All asphaltic cement or other materials which discolor the surface of concrete structures shall be removed at the Contractor's expense, and his inability to remove such foreign and disfiguring stains shall result in the complete removal of the structures so stained or disfigured. Such removed structures shall be replaced at the Contractor's expense. Particular care shall be taken to prevent tack coat from getting on gutter areas.

When resurfacing existing pavements, the existing pavement shall be tacked with RS-1h asphalt at the rate of 0.03 gallon per square yard to 0.10 gallon per square yard. Application of the tack coat shall be made by an approved asphalt distributor. The tack coat shall be allowed sufficient time to "break" prior to beginning the resurfacing operation. The cost of tack coat shall be included in the unit price bid for bituminous concrete surface course as shown in the proposal.

H. MATERIALS

1. Cement

Portland: ASTM-C-150, latest revision, Type I or III.

Asphaltic: Shall be 85-100 penetration petroleum asphalt to meet AASHTO M-20-42, latest revision.

2. Mortar

Mortar shall be prepared from cement, sand and water of an approved source. The mortar shall consist of one (1) part by volume of Portland cement and three (3) parts by volume of sand. Water shall be from a source approved by the Engineer.

3. Clay Brick

Bricks shall be whole brick of standard size with straight and parallel edges and square corners. They shall be of compact texture, full weight and entirely true, free from injurious cracks and flaws, tough, strong and shall have a clear ring when struck together.

4. Clay Brick for Manholes

None but whole, sound, hard, straight, thoroughly burned brick, uniform in structure, with true and even faces shall be used. The brick shall be entirely free from injurious defects.

5. Concrete Brick

Whole, concrete brick uniform in structure with true and even faces shall be permitted for manhole and catch basin construction. The brick shall be entirely free from injurious defects.

6. Precast Concrete Manholes

Precast concrete manhole units shall be four (4) feet, zero (0) inch diameter with a six (6) inch extended monolithic base, four thousand (4,000) psi, five (5) inch walls meeting ASTM Specification C-478. Precast concrete manholes shall be placed on twelve (12) inches of washed stone. Precast manholes shall use precast adjustment rings, with the minimum adjustment height of two (2) inches and a maximum adjustment height of twelve (12) inches. The other material requirements are as follows:

- H-20 Highway Loading
- One pour monolithic base section base extends 6 inches beyond outside wall for manholes smaller than 5 feet I.D., and all manholes deeper than 8 feet.
- Reinforced steel - ASTM A-185
- Steel reinforced Copolymer Polypropylene Plastic steps
- Flexible boot connector ASTM C-928 with cast iron or stainless steel hardware.
- Section joint sealant - Butyl rubber sealant AASHTO M-198, ASTM C-990, and Fed. Spec. SS-S-210A.

7. Gray Iron Castings

a. Requirements and Methods of Testing

All iron castings for manhole and well hole frame and covers, inlet frames, covers and traps, and for other sewer appurtenances, unless otherwise specified in the plans, shall conform to the requirements of Gray Iron Castings of the American Society for Testing Materials.

b. Manhole Castings

Manhole castings shall conform to ASTM “Gray Iron Casting” and be marked “Sanitary Sewers” or “Storm Drain” and shall be East Jordan Iron Works, No. V-1384, Ennis Enterprises, No. MH-GRE-24, Vulcan Foundry, No. V-2384 (Ref. SD 14-02 in Chapter IV), or an approved equal.

8. Storm Drain Manhole Steps

Manhole steps shall be East Jordan Iron Works, No. 8500, Neenah Foundry Co, No R-1980-I, Vulcan Foundry No. 1999-6, or an approved equal.

9. Sanitary Sewer Manhole Steps

Sanitary sewer manholes shall not be furnished with manhole steps unless directed by the Engineer. Specifications on the manhole steps will be provided on a case by case basis when required.

10. Sanitary Sewer Pipe

a. Sanitary Sewer Mains

1. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe

PVC pipe shall have integral wall bell and spigot push-on joints and shall meet the requirements of ASTM-D-3034, Type PSM, SDR 35 or SDR 26 for pipe sizes 8” to 15”. Where pressure pipe is required or specified, the PVC pipe shall meet the requirements of ASTM-D-2241. Fittings shall be push-on joint PVC fittings furnished by the pipe manufacturer.

2. Ductile Iron Pipe (DIP)

Push joint ductile cast iron pipe shall be Class 51. The pipe shall be centrifugally cast and shall be made of ductile cast iron 60-42-10 grade in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51. The ductile cast iron pipe shall be designated for the rated working pressure of 350 psi, plus surge pressure of 100 psi per ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50 and for the indicated cover shown on the plans in a flat bottom trench with tamped backfill to the center line of the pipe based on 42,000 psi tensile strength and 90,000 psi modulus of rupture. Factor of safety shall be 2.0. The pipe shall be designed for internal pressure or external load or 3% maximum deflection, whichever requires the greatest metal thickness as determined by flexible pipe design methods, per ASME 62-WA-353. Metal thickness shall include .08-inch corrosion allowance and .05-inch foundry tolerance for 3-inch through 8-inch diameter pipe, .06-inch foundry tolerance for 10-inch through 12-inch diameter pipe, and .07-inch foundry tolerance for 14-inch through 42-inch. The pipe shall be furnished in nominal 16-foot to 20-foot laying lengths. All pipe shall have an interior ceramic epoxy coating, 40 mils thick, equal to Protecto 401, and bituminous coated outside in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4. Pipe shall be furnished complete with gaskets and lubricant, per ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4.

3. Transition Fittings

Transiting fittings for connection between pipes of dissimilar material shall be adjustable repair couplings meeting ASTM C 564, and manufactured by Mission Rubber Company Inc., Fernco - (rigid band), Romac, or equal.

4. PVC pipe, with push-on joints and elastomeric gaskets, conforming to the standards of AWWA C900, Class 150 or AWWA C905, Class 150 for pipes larger than 14-inches, shall be required when the depth of main, measured from the invert of the pipe to finished grade, equals or exceeds ten (10) feet. All PVC mains shall be fully encased in stone bedding when the depth equals or exceeds eight (8) feet.

b. Sewer Services

1. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe

PVC pipe for sewer service lines and stacks (4-inch and 6-inch diameter) shall be integral wall bell and spigot push-on joints and shall meet the requirements of ASTM-D-3034, type PSM, SDR-26.

2. Cast Iron Pipe (CIP)

CIP for sewer services shall be heavy-duty cast iron soil pipe complying with Federal Specifications WWP-401.

11. Reinforced Concrete Pipe and Joint Material

- a. Concrete pipe used for storm drain shall conform to the requirements of ASTM-C-76, latest revision, Class III.
- b. Concrete pipe for use as casement pipe shall conform to the requirements of ASTM-C-76, latest revision, Class IV.
- c. Concrete pipe joint material shall meet AASHTO M-198, ASTM D-482, Fed. Spec. SS-S-210A.

12. Corrugated Metal Pipe

- a. All corrugated metal pipe (CMP) shall be manufactured in accordance with the appropriate ASTM Specifications. Corrugated metal pipe shall be galvanized (zinc coated) in accordance with ASTM A-760 and AASHTO M-36 latest revisions and shall be fully bituminous coated. Pipe sizes of 54 inches or less shall have the invert paved with bituminous concrete. Pipe sizes larger than 54 inches shall be fully paved with bituminous concrete (smooth flow). All placement of bituminous concrete in CMP shall be in accordance with AASHTO M-190. All CMP shall be furnished in accordance with the gage and corrugation specified on SD2-13 listed with the Standard Details in Chapter V.

- b. Corrugated metal (CM) arch pipe shall meet all of the specification for the equivalent diameter round CMP. When the invert of CM arch pipe is required to be paved, the pavement shall extend across the entire invert.
- c. Corrugated metal pipe joints, fittings, and bands shall be manufactured, coated, and installed as specified by the pipe manufacturer. The joints, bands, and fittings shall receive the same coatings as the pipe and shall be designed and installed to minimize infiltration. To accommodate the corrugated bands, helically corrugated pipe shall be re-rolled at the ends to provide two annular corrugations. The inner corrugations shall accommodate two closed cell neoprene O-ring gaskets. Other methods of providing a water tight joint shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval.

13. Aluminum Corrugated Pipe

Aluminum corrugated pipe shall be used only on risers and barrels for water quality and retention/detention basins. Specifications for aluminum corrugated pipe shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval.

Aluminum corrugated pipe joints shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation and shall provide a water-tight seal at all joints. Specifications for joints and fittings for aluminum corrugated pipe shall be submitted to the Engineer for review and approval prior to installation.

14. High Density Polyethylene Pipe (HDPE)

HDPE pipe shall not be permitted under any roadways. When drainage is being installed in open areas away from traffic, HDPE pipe may be permitted on a case-by-case basis. HDPE pipe shall also be allowed for driveway culverts. In all cases, a minimum of two (2) feet of cover shall be required and the ends of the HDPE pipe must be located in a structure or have a concrete headwall constructed to protect the ends of the pipe. HDPE pipe shall be limited to a maximum diameter of 24-inches. HDPE pipe joints shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and shall provide a water-tight seal.

15. Flared End Sections

Flared end sections (FES) shall be installed at locations shown on the plans or as directed by the Engineer. FES's shall be manufactured of the same material as the pipe to which it is being connected and shall be manufactured and installed with the same type of joint as the pipe. (The exception to this is that HDPE pipe must transition to concrete and use a reinforced concrete flared end section.)

a. Reinforced Concrete Flared End Sections

Reinforced concrete flared end sections shall be manufactured in accordance with plans that have been approved by the North Carolina Department of Transportation. The concrete used in FES's shall attain a strength of 3500 psi when tested in accordance with AASHTO T22. Where grates are to be installed on FES's, provisions for mounting the grate shall be provided.

b. Corrugated Metal Flared End Sections

Corrugated metal FES's shall be manufactured in accordance with plans provided by the manufacturer and approved by the Engineer. FES's on which the coatings have been damaged or broken, either in the shop or in shipping, shall be repaired in accordance with applicable specifications. All corrugated FES's shall be fully bituminous coated and shall have bituminous concrete paved inverts.

16. Subdrain Pipe

Subdrain pipe shall be six (6) inch perforated pipe with the perforations on the bottom of the pipe. Metal subdrain pipe shall be galvanized Helcor pipe or equal. PVC subdrain pipe shall be Schedule 40 meeting the requirements of ASTM Specification D-1785.

17. Water Pipe and Fittings

Pipe for water mains shall be ductile iron pipe (DIP) or Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) pipe meeting the specifications below. All mains along thoroughfares and other major roadways and in all industrial areas shall be DIP. Mains in other areas, sizes 2-inch through 12-inch may be PVC or DIP. All mains larger than 12-inch shall be DIP.

All PVC mains shall include the installation of a continuous strand of 10-gage copper wire along the main. The insulation shall be removed at all valves and fittings and connected to the valve and/or fittings. The wire shall connect to the fire hydrants so that the locator signal can be connected at the hydrant. Where hydrants are spaced greater than 1000 feet apart, provisions shall be made for connection to the locator wire. The Engineer shall review and approve the design and location of the additional tracer wire connection points.

a. Push Joint Ductile Iron Pipe

Push joint ductile cast iron pipe shall be Class 51. The pipe shall be centrifugally cast and shall be made of ductile cast iron 60-42-10 grade in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C151/A21.51. The ductile cast iron pipe shall be designated for the rated working pressure of 350 psi, plus surge pressure of 100 psi per ANSI/AWWA C150/A21.50 and for the indicated cover shown on the plans in a flat bottom trench with tamped backfill to the center line of the pipe based on 42,000 psi tensile strength and 90,000 psi modulus of rupture. Factor of safety shall be 2.0. The pipe shall be designed for internal pressure or external load or 3% maximum deflection, whichever requires the greatest metal thickness as determined by flexible pipe design methods, per ASME 62-WSA-353. Metal thickness shall include .08-inch corrosion allowance and .05-inch foundry tolerance for 3-inch through 8-inch diameter pipe, .06-inch foundry tolerance for 10-inch through 12-inch diameter pipe, and .07-inch foundry tolerance for 14-inch through 42-inch. The pipe shall be furnished in nominal 16-foot to 20-foot laying lengths. All pipe shall be cement mortar lined and seal coated inside, and bituminous coated outside in accordance with

ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4. Pipe shall be furnished complete with gaskets and lubricant, per ANSI/AWWA C111/A21.11.

b. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Pipe

PVC pipe for water mains sizes 4-inch through 12 inches shall conform to AWWA C900, class 150, with push-on joints. Elastomeric gaskets shall conform to ASTM F477. Pipe shall be furnished complete with gasket and lubricant.

PVC pipe for water mains smaller than 4 inches shall be SDR-26, push-on joints and shall conform to ASTM -D-2241-80. The pipe shall include the seal or mark of the laboratory indicating that the pipe is suitable for the transport of potable water.

c. Fittings

All fittings for mains 4 inches and larger shall be ductile iron meeting the specification below. Fittings for mains smaller than 4 inches shall be PVC meeting the specifications below.

1. Ductile Iron Fittings

The fittings shall be standard mechanical joint fittings made of ductile iron in accordance with ANSI/AWWA C110/A21.10. Compact ductile iron fittings meeting ANSI/AWWA C153/A21.53-94 shall also be acceptable. Standard mechanical accessories shall be furnished for each bell opening consisting of HSCI bolts, cast iron glands, and plain rubber gaskets in accordance with ANSI/AWWA A21.11-90. Fittings shall be cement mortar lined and seal coated inside per ANSI/AWWA C104/A21.4-90. Where flanges are indicated on fittings they shall be F and D 125 pound per ASME/ANSI B 16.42-87.

2. Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings

PVC fittings shall be used only for mains less than 4 inches in diameter. PVC fittings shall be push-on fittings with elastomeric ring gaskets which shall conform with ASTM D 3139-77. The fittings shall be supplied by the pipe manufacturer and shall be certified for use in the transport of potable water. Fittings shall be rated for a minimum operating pressure of 250 psi.

d. Water Services

1. 3/4-inch and 1-inch house water services

3/4-inch and 1-inch house water services shall be Type K soft copper tubing, complying with Federal Specifications WW-T-799 and ASTM B-88.

2. 1-1/2-inch and 2-inch water services

1-1/2-inch and 2-inch water services shall be installed with Type K soft copper tubing, complying with Federal Specification WW-T-799 and ASTM B-88, or with brass pipe fittings. Brass pipe shall be red brass pipe conforming to ASTM B43-62.

3. For services larger than 2-inch, the materials shall be the same as stated above, or shall be ductile iron pipe and fittings.

e. Valve Boxes and Extensions

Valve boxes and extensions shall be Wilmington Standard Telescoping valve box and extension, as per SD14-07 in Chapter III of these Standards.

- f. Water Service Fittings:** Taps and service laterals shall be 1-inch and 2-inches. The services shall be reduced to the desired standard size at the meter location. For services larger than 2-inches, materials and installation will be reviewed on an individual basis.

1. Copper Services: USE ONLY AS DIRECTED BY ENGINEER)

Service saddle shall have double stainless (ss) straps and factory coated corrosion resistant body. Service saddle shall be Smith-Blair 317, Romac 202S, JCM 406, Mueller DR2S or equal. Curb stops shall be Mueller H 15174, Ford B21, McDonald 6100 series, or equal. Corporation stops shall be Mueller H 15000, Ford F600, McDonald 4701 series, or equal. City will allow compression fittings for copper pipe service of 1" diameter. Each curb stop shall be furnished with a IMP brass bushing, 1"x 3/4", and brass meter coupling equal to McDonald 4620, Ford meter coupling, or Mueller H 10890. The brass meter yoke shall be as specified in T-14.15.2. The meter box shall be as shown on Standard Details SD 4-12 or SD 4-13.

- 2. Polyethylene Service Fittings:** Service saddles shall be as specified in T-14.15.1. Corporation stop shall be 1" or 2", CC x CTS, equal to Mueller P15013 w/ss stiffener, Ford FB 1000 w/ss stiffener or McDonald 4701-22 w/ ss stiffener. Curb stops shall be equal to Ford B61-444 w/ss stiffener, Mueller B-25172 w/ss stiffener, or McDonald 6102W-22 w/ss stiffener. Each curb stop shall be furnished with an IMP brass bushing, 1"x 3/4", and brass meter coupling equal to McDonald 4620, Ford 600, or Mueller H 10890. Each service shall be furnished with a brass meter yoke with lock stop, 7-inch riser, 5/8" x 3/4" size unless directed otherwise, equal to Mueller B 24118, McDonald 18-207WX, or Ford V41-7. The meter yoke shall be furnished with a brass meter coupling as specified above. The meter box shall be as shown on Standard Details SD 4-12 or SD 4-13

g. Meter Boxes

1. Cast iron meter boxes shall conform to the requirements for Gray Iron Castings of the American Society for testing materials. The cast iron meter

box shall be Ennis Enterprises No. MBX-1, Vulcan Foundry No. MBX-1, or an approved equal.

2. PVC meter boxes shall be 11-34/ inches x 17 inches at the top and taper to 16-1/2 inches x 19 inches at the bottom. The box shall be a minimum of 12 inches deep and shall require a standard drop-in lid, an iron reader lid, two 3-inch x 4-inch pipe slots, cover snap-in locking recess and snap lock tab.

i. Valves

All valves shall conform to AWWA Specification C500, latest revision, gate valves for ordinary water works service except as hereinafter stated and shall have mechanical joint ends. All valves shall be resilient wedge gate valves, open right and shall have a two (2) inch square head nut upon the end of the stem, with the direction arrow clearly and plainly cast thereon. Valves shall be as manufactured by Clow Corporation, Darling Valve Manufacturing, ~~or~~ Mueller Company, Henry Pratt Company, American AVK Company's Series 25, or equal. The City will accept interior and exterior coating of fusion bonded epoxy, normal coating 6-8 mils, meeting the requirements of AWWA/ANSI C550-01.

1. Vertical Gate Valves

Vertical gate valves shall be used on all lines twelve(12) inches or smaller and shall be open right, non-rising stem type, 175 psi working pressure and 300 psi test pressure with "0" ring stem seals. Valves shall be Resilient Wedge Gate or double disc type with cast iron body and bronze disc seats, stems and wedges. In the open position, the area of the opening shall be equal or greater than the area of the nominal pipe diameter.

2. Horizontal Gate Valves

Horizontal Gate Valves shall be used on all lines sixteen (16) inches in diameter and larger. Valves shall be 150 psi working pressure and 300 psi test pressure. All valves shall have conventional packing. Valves shall be equipped with bevel gear, non-rising type, with grease case of the totally enclosed type and shall be provided with suitable rollers, track, scrapers, and a guide for a disc mechanism through its entire travel length. Horizontal gate valves shall open right and have a bypass valve with a non-rising stem. Valves shall be double disc, with cast iron body and bronze disc seats, tracks and stem. Area of opening in the open position shall be equal to or greater than the nominal pipe diameter.

3. Butterfly Valves

Butterfly valves may be used on all mains 16 inches and larger and shall meet the full requirements of AWWA C504-80, or the latest revision, for class 150B service. All valves shall open right, have mechanical joint connections and have a 2-inch square operating nut. The manufacturer shall have manufactured tight-closing, rubber-seat butterfly valves for buried

service for a period of at least five (5) years. All butterfly valves shall be Henry Pratt Company's "Groundhog", Mueller "Lineseal III", American-Darling "ABC Butterfly valve" or an approved equal.

j. Tapping Sleeve and Valves

Sleeve shall be cast iron or stainless steel 150 psi working pressure, mechanical joint. Valves shall be open right vertical type with "O" ring seals, mechanical joint outlet end and flange end for connection to tapping sleeve. Flange end shall have machined projections to ensure correct alignment. Seat opening of valve shall be slightly larger than nominal size to provide for full diameter cut to be made. Sleeve shall be furnished by valve manufacturer.

k. Hydrants

Hydrants shall be improved type conforming to AWWA C-502, latest revision. Fire hydrants for ordinary waterworks service, approved by American Insurance Association, with four and one-half (4-1/2) inch valve opening; two (2) each, two and one-half (2-1/2) inch hose nozzles with City of Wilmington, North Carolina, standard thread and four and one-half (4-1/2) inch pumper connection. Hydrant shall have breakable barrel and operating stem, and shall be equipped with six (6) inch mechanical joint bottom hub with strapping lugs and one and two-thirds (1-2/3) inch solid pentagonal operating nut and "O" ring seals. Hydrants shall open right and be rated at 150 psi working pressure and 300 psi test pressure. Hydrant shall have two (2) coats of aluminum paint. Hydrant shall be dry-barrel type and be provided with drain outlet for draining when valve is closed. Hydrant shall be Mueller Centurion, Kennedy Guardian, American Darling Mark 73, American AVK Company Model 27/80 Dry Barrel, or approved equal.

1. Fire Hydrant Paint

Paint shall be applied using two coats of the specified paint according to the manufacturer's recommendation. The final coat must be applied after final installation. All hydrant barrels shall be painted with heavy-duty aluminum paint for industrial or commercial use, by Rustoleum, Glidden, Sherwin Williams, Tnemec, or approved equal.

Fire hydrants on 6-inch and 8-inch diameter mains shall have the nozzle caps and bonnet painted with industrial or commercial-use alkyd, safety yellow color by Rustoleum, Glidden, Sherwin Williams, Tnemec, or approved equal.

Fire hydrants on lines greater than 10-inch diameter shall have the nozzle cap and bonnet painted with industrial or commercial-use alkyd, safety green color by Rustoleum, Glidden, Sherwin Williams, Tnemec, or approved equal.

2. Hydrant Laterals

Hydrant laterals shall be ductile iron pipe (D.I.P.). All D.I.P. and fittings shall conform to specification outlined in Section H, 17.a. and H, 17.c.1. of this chapter.

1. **Restraint Gland for DIP:** The mechanical joint gland style restraint for mechanical joint fittings used on ductile iron pipe may be used for fire hydrant installations and any other location required by the Engineer to be restraint joint fittings. This type of restraint system can be used in lieu the restraint system using tie bolts and restraining rods as shown on the standard detail SD 4-02. The gland style restraint shall be a follower gland, which uses a series of individual actuated gripping wedges to positively engage the pipe surface while allowing joint deflection both before and after installation. This wedging action offers high pressure restraint capacity for mechanical joint fittings, valves, hydrant and pipe with 3” through 16” being rated at 350 psi and larger size rated at 250 psi. All sizes are tested to a minimum of 2:1 safety factor. The mechanical joint restraint glands shall be equal to Megalug, Series 1100 manufactured by Ebaa Iron, Inc., Stargrip Series 3000 manufactured by Star Pipe Products, or RomaGrip by Romac Industries, Inc.

- m. **Restraint Gland for PVC:** The mechanical joint gland style restraint for mechanical joint fittings used on PVC pipe can be used at locations required by the Engineer to be restraint joint fittings. This type of restraint system may be used in lieu of the restraint system using tie bolts and restraining rods as shown on Standard Detail SD 4-02. The gland style restraint shall be a follower gland, which uses a series of individual actuated gripping wedges to positively engage the PVC pipe surface while allowing joint deflection both before and after installation. This wedging action offers high pressure restraint capacity for mechanical joint fittings, valves, and pipe with 3” through 16” being rated at 350 psi and larger size rated at 250 psi. All sizes are tested to a minimum of 2:1 safety factor. The mechanical joint restraint glands shall be equal to Megalug, Series 2000PV manufactured by Ebaa Iron, Inc., PVC Stargrip Series 4000 manufactured by Star Pipe Products, or PVC-RomaGrip by Romac Industries, Inc.

18. **Concrete Membrane Curing Compound**

The membrane curing compound used in concrete curing shall be white and as specified in AASHTO Specification M-148-49.

19. **Expansion Joint Filler (for Concrete Construction)**

Expansion joint filler for concrete construction shall be bituminous, preformed, non-extruding joint filler, as specified in AASHTO M33-48.

I. TESTING

<u>TEST/SPECIFICATION</u>	<u>SECTION/REFERENCE</u>	<u>SCOPE</u>
1. AASHTO M 20-42	H - Materials Asphaltic Cement	Specification covers asphalt cements which have been prepared from petroleum.
2. AASHTO M 33-48	H - Materials Expansion Joint Filler	Specification covers bituminous expansion joint filler for concrete.
3. AASHTO M 36		Specification covers corrugated metal pipe intended to be used for the construction of culverts
4. AASHTO M 148-49	H - Materials Concrete Membrane Curing Compound	Specification covers liquid, membrane forming curing compounds suitable for spraying on horizontal and vertical surfaces to retard the loss of water during the early hardening period.
5. AASHTO T 11	G - Asphalt Paving General	Method of test outlines the procedure for determining the total quantity of material finer than a standard No. 200 sieve in aggregates.
6. AASHTO T 88	F - Base Course Materials	Method describes a procedure for the quantitative determination of the distribution of particle sizes in soils.
7. AASHTO T 99 (Standard)	B - Excavation, Grading and Backfilling	Method of test is intended for determining the relationship between the moisture content of soils and resulting densities.
8. AASHTO T 99 (Modified)	B - Excavation, Grading and Backfilling, Backfilling pipe installations	Method of test is intended for determining the relationship between the moisture content of soils and resulting densities.
9. ASTM A 48	H - Materials Manhole Castings	Specification covers manufacturing and performance requirements for gray iron castings

<u>TEST/SPECIFICATION</u>	<u>SECTION/REFERENCE</u>	<u>SCOPE</u>
10. ASTM A 339	H - Materials Water Pipe and Fittings	Specification covers castings made of ductile iron, also known as spheroidal or modular iron, which is defined as cast iron with graphite substantially spheroidal in shape and essentially free of other forms of graphite.
11. ASTM B 88	H - Materials Copper water house services	Specification covers seamless copper tubes especially designed for plumbing purposes, underground water services, etc.
12. ASTM C 76	H - Materials R.C. pipe and joint materials	Design, manufacturing and strength requirements for Class III and Class IV reinforced concrete pipe intended for the conveyance of storm water.
13. ASTM C 150	H - Materials Cement	Specification covers physical and chemical requirements for Portland Cement.
14. ASTM D 482	H - Materials R.C. pipe and joint materials	Specification covers joints for circular concrete sewer and culvert pipe.
15. ASTM C 478	Storm Drains Precast manholes	Specification covers precast reinforced concrete manhole riser sections and appurtenances such as grade rings, tops and special sections up to 72 inches in diameter.
16. ASTM D 698	B/F - Base Course Manipulation and compaction	Test covers the procedures for determining the moisture/density relationships in soils.
17. ASA 21.1-1957	H - Materials Push joint ductile cast iron	Specification covers required design tolerances for water hammer in push joint ductile cast iron pipe.

<u>TEST/SPECIFICATION</u>	<u>SECTION/REFERENCE</u>	<u>SCOPE</u>
18. AWWA C 500	H - Materials Valves	Specification covers manufacturing and performance requirements for gate valves for ordinary water works service.
19. AWWA C 502	H - Materials Hydrants	Specification covers manufacturing and performance requirements for fire hydrants for ordinary water works service
20. AWWA C 600-64		Specification covers allowable leakage test requirements for mechanical joint and push joint pipe.
21. Federal Specification WW-P 421 C	H - Materials Push Joint D.I. Pipe	Specification covers cast iron (gray iron and ductile iron) pressure pipe for conveying water, sewage and other liquids.
22. Federal Specifications WW-T 799	H - Materials Copper water house services	Specification covers seamless copper water tubing in sizes suitable for general plumbing and commonly used with solder flared or compressed type fittings.

*Latest revision of above specifications shall apply.

V

STORM WATER MANAGEMENT

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>SECTION</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
A. <u>GENERAL</u>	5-1
B. <u>STORM WATER MANAGEMENT POLICY</u>	5-1
C. <u>PLAN SUBMITTALS</u>	5-1
D. <u>MINIMUM DESIGN STANDARDS</u>	5-2
1. <u>PIPED DRAINAGE SYSTEMS</u>	5-2
2. <u>INLET DESIGN</u>	5-4
3. <u>OPEN CHANNELS</u>	5-4
4. <u>DETENTION FACILITIES</u>	5-6
E. <u>DETERMINATION OF RUNOFF</u>	5-8
F. <u>PIPE SYSTEM DESIGN</u>	5-17
G. <u>OPEN CHANNEL DESIGN</u>	5-41
H. <u>STORM WATER DETENTION PONDS</u>	5-49
I. <u>INFILTRATION SYSTEM</u>	5-58
J. <u>CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS</u>	5-59
K. <u>MAINTENANCE</u>	5-63
STANDARD DETAILS	5-70
CHARTS AND TABLES	5-71

A. GENERAL

This section is intended to set forth performance, design and construction standards for storm water management systems, the plan submittal requirements of the City of Wilmington, and design procedures for use by the designer. The methods and procedures presented are intended to simplify the design and review process for residential and commercial storm water management systems in the City of Wilmington. It is not required that the methods presented be used by the designer, however, these methods, charts and procedures will be used by the City to determine adequacy of storm water management systems.

B. STORM WATER MANAGEMENT POLICY

It is the policy of the City of Wilmington that all developed land within the City have adequate storm water facilities and controls to ensure the protection and safety of life and property. The City may accept a storm water management system for maintenance if the system provides drainage for streets that have been accepted for maintenance by the City Council and has been designed and constructed in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 20 of the City Code and this Chapter.

C. PLAN SUBMITTALS

One set of site plans shall be submitted to the City Engineering Department for review and approval, and shall include:

All applicable items scheduled in the “Checklist for the City of Wilmington Storm Water Standards”. A copy of this checklist is provided at the end of the technical standards.

1. Certification Requirements

The following certifications shall appear on all plans:

a. Designers Certification

“I hereby certify that this plan has been prepared in accordance with the latest Wilmington Standards and Specifications for Storm Water Management and Chapter 20 of the Code of Ordinances of the City of Wilmington.”

Signature:

Printed Name and Title: _____

Date: _____ Registration Number: _____

b. Owner's/Developer's Certification

“I/We hereby certify that any clearing, grading, construction or development, or all of these, will be done pursuant to this plan and that the applicable Stormwater Management conditions and requirements of the City of Wilmington, the State of North Carolina and the Federal Government and its agencies are hereby made part of this plan.”

Signature: _____

Printed Name and Title: _____

Date: _____

D. MINIMUM DESIGN STANDARDS

1. Piped Drainage Systems

a. Piped Collection Systems

Piped collection systems shall be designed for the 10-year frequency storm event. The system low points shall be analyzed for the 50-year frequency storm event to check the system for flooding.

b. Areas Requiring Piping

Open streams, channels and ditches contained in or partly contained within the property being developed shall be piped by the developer unless the pipe designed exceeds 48 inches in diameter. The City Engineer may approve some of these ditches to remain open in extenuating circumstances and/or when they are designed to improve water quality. The designer shall consider all off-site areas which will drain through the project site for ultimate development in accordance with current zoning designations. Channels which remain open shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section G- Open Channels.

1. Where there are existing open channels that are vegetated, stable and non-erosive, and where the existing channel can carry the estimated design flows (both from the development site and the offsite drainage area that flows through the channel), including streams where less than a 48 inches in pipe diameter is needed to carry the design flow, the channels may be left in their natural state. Sufficient easement shall be provided to access and maintain the channel. Where minor modifications to these channels are require to accommodate the total design flow, but most of the natural vegetation and natural banks can be preserved, the channel modifications will be allowed and the channel will not be required to be piped. Additionally, the channel shall be analyzed for the 100-year storm to ensure that there is sufficient area to carry the 100-year storm flow.

Where piped systems discharge into open channels, a vegetative channel or other appropriate BMP shall be required. This channel shall be designed to handle the 10-year storm and analyzed for the 100-year storm. The length of the vegetative channel shall be a minimum of 100 feet.

NOTE: The intent/purpose of analyzing the 100-year storm is to verify that no structures will be flooded by the 100-year event and that any flooding that occurs within streets is at an acceptable level as determined by the staff of the governing authority. It is not the intent that the channel or pipe contain the 100-year event, but that buildings are not flooded nor streets made impassable by the flooding.

c. Minimum Size Pipe

The minimum size storm drain pipe shall be 12 inches unless the pipe will be part of the NCDOT system, in which case NCDOT minimum pipe size requirements shall apply.

d. Subdrains

Where considered necessary by the City Engineer subdrains shall be installed. Reference SD-2.04 of this chapter. The ditch shall be at least three (3) feet, six (6) inches in depth and the stone shall completely encircle the perforated pipe for a minimum distance of six (6) inches from the pipe in all directions. The stone shall be #467M washed stone. The pipe shall be six (6) inch perforated pipe selected from those listed in Chapter II, Section H, paragraph 16. A non-woven filter fabric shall be installed as per SD-2.04 and in strict accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation. The City Engineer shall approve the non-woven filter fabric.

e. Minimum and Maximum Velocity

The minimum allowable velocity for a pipe segment for the design storm shall be 2.5 feet per second unless authorized by the City Engineer. The maximum velocity shall vary per specific situation, but shall be designed such that scour or other deteriorative conditions will not exist.

f. Minimum Cover

The minimum cover over a storm drainage pipe shall be 2.0 feet. Cover shall be measured from the top of the pipe to the bottom of the base course in roadways. For alternative materials a greater minimum cover may be required, as determined by the manufacturer. In the event lesser cover requirements are determined to be necessary, specific approval of the City Engineer will be required.

g. Easements

Piped systems to be dedicated public shall be located within the public rights-of-way as shown in SD-15.05 of this chapter, where possible. Where this is not possible, a dedicated drainage easement will be required with a width determined by the following equation, rounded to the nearest five (5) foot increment except that in no case shall the easement be less than twenty (20) feet:

$$\text{Width} = (2 \times \text{depth}) + \text{Dia.} + 12'$$

The easement shall be continuous along the pipe to a point of junction with an existing public right-of-way or easement.

h. Manhole Spacing

Manholes shall be required at changes in grade and/or alignment and at pipe junctions. The maximum spacing between two manholes in any instance shall be 400 feet. Spacing in excess of 400 feet on pipelines greater than 54 inches in diameter may be approved on a case-by-case basis by the City Engineer.

i. Headwalls

Headwalls or flared end sections shall be required at the inlet and outlet of all pipe systems.

j. Energy Dissipaters

Energy dissipaters shall be designed and constructed at the outlets of all pipe systems to prevent erosion in the receiving water course. These shall be designed for the 10-year storm.

k. Existing Systems

Where feasible, the piped drainage system shall connect to an existing piped drainage system.

2. Inlet Design

a. Design Storm Event

Curb inlets and catch basins shall be designed for the 10-year storm. Inlets in low points shall be analyzed for the 50-year storm to identify potential hazards.

b. Inlet Locations

1. Curb inlets shall be located such that the gutter flow spread does not exceed eight (8) feet or 1/3 of the street width, whichever is less, during a 10-year storm event with a maximum spacing of 400 feet.
2. Curb inlets shall be located at all low points to prevent ponding water.
3. Curb inlets shall be located on the upstream sides of intersecting streets to prevent flow across the intersecting street.
4. No curb inlets shall be constructed in the radius of curbing at intersections. The minimum distance from the end of radius (PC/PT) to the center of a catch basin is five (5) feet.

3. Open Channels

a. Design Storm Event

Open channels, where allowed, shall be designed for the peak run-off produced by a 10-year frequency storm. Analyses shall also be provided for the 50-year frequency storm. The designer shall include in his calculations the run-off from the off-site areas assuming ultimate development in accordance with the current zoning regulations, as well as the run-off from the property being developed. Tailwater conditions at the channel outlets

shall be evaluated in the design of the open channels. Hydraulic grade line calculations shall be included in the submittals. Hydrographs shall be routed through channel reaches using the convex or other accepted method when channel reaches exceed 500-feet. Open channels, streams and ditches, requiring pipe less than 48 inches in diameter shall be piped unless authorized by the City Engineer.

b. Side Slopes

It is the intent that all side slopes for vegetated channels be designed such that the soils and slopes of the banks will support stable vegetation growth unless armored or designed in another approved manner. The side slopes for vegetated channels shall be 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) or flatter. The side slopes should be 3 to 1 where mowing is necessary. Where the side slopes are protected with riprap, fabric form, or other approved armoring, side slopes of 2 to 1 will be permitted. Steeper slopes may be approved by the City Engineer on a case-by-case basis.

c. Bottom Width

The minimum bottom width for an open channel shall be three (3) feet.

d. Maximum Velocities

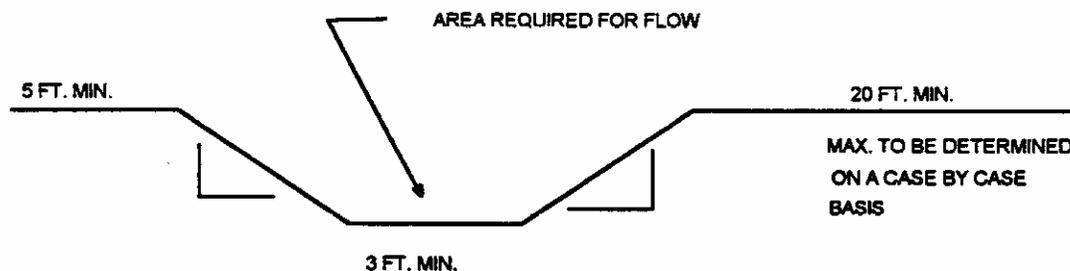
The maximum velocities for a channel are dependent upon the type of lining used. Refer to Section G for maximum allowable velocities for various linings.

e. Alternative Solutions

The linings referred to in Section G are not intended to limit the designer in his choice of linings. Innovative techniques used in design of channels are encouraged. Proposed innovative linings shall be approved by City engineering staff prior to use. Complete supporting documentation shall be submitted for approval of alternative lining methods in these situations.

f. Rights-of-way and Easements

In order to maintain municipally-owned unlined storm water management systems in public or private developments, rights-of-way and easements will be required by the City for all open ditches, swales, or other systems dedicated to the City located outside of public rights-of-way. Such rights-of-way or easements shall be provided in accordance with the following sketch, and shall be continuous to a point of junction with a public right-of-way where possible:



NOTE: See paragraph b. above for allowable side slopes.

Widths in excess of the X-section shown may be necessary and required by the City Engineer on a case-by-case basis.

NOTE: The designer should refer to the N.C. Department of E.H.N.R. “Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual” for supplemental information.

g. Swales

Swales shall have a minimum bottom width of 3 feet. Swales shall be considered as a secondary drainage system while open channels shall be considered primary drainage systems. Preferred side slopes are 5:1 unless otherwise approved by the City/County Engineer. For slopes steeper than 5:1 stabilization may be required using sod, geotextile fabric, erosion control fabric, or other approved erosion control material.

4. Detention and Wet Retention Facilities

Storm water detention facilities shall be designed to meet two goals. The first goal is to control the post development peak discharge from the site for the 2-yr, and 10-yr storms to not exceed the pre-development peak runoff discharge rate for the same storm. The second goal is to detain a sufficient volume of runoff from the site in order to release it over a two (2) to five (5) day period for the purpose of minimizing impacts on water quality and downstream flooding conditions. In addition to the COD requirements, a minimum of the first 1-inch of rainfall shall be detained for at least two (2) days and no more than five (5) days. The City can require a larger amount if site conditions dictate. An emergency spillway shall be provided such that it can handle the 50-year storm assuming the principle spillway is obstructed or not operating properly. The elevation of the dam shall be a minimum of 0.5 feet above the peak surface elevation for the 50-year storm.

However, the City suggests that the developer or owner incorporate storm water controls into the overall site as an amenity and/or visual enhancement. The following are minimum requirements for detention/retention facilities:

a. Minimum Slopes

It is the intent that all vegetated slopes be designed such that the soils and slopes of the banks will support stable vegetation growth unless armored or designed in another approved manner. Side slopes where vegetation is used for stabilization shall be 3 (horizontal) to 1 (vertical) or flatter. The side slopes should be a minimum of 3 to 1 where mowing will be necessary. Where the side slopes are protected with riprap, fabric form, or other approved armoring, side slopes of 2 to 1 will be permitted. Steeper slopes may be approved by the City Engineer on a case-by-case basis.

b. Vegetation

Vegetation for stabilization of side slopes shall be a hearty round cover such as the following listed in order of best overall suitability:

- 1) Tall Fescue
- 2) Bermuda Grass
- 3) Pensacola Bahiagrass
- 4) Reed Canary Grass

All of these are well suited for flooding tolerance and waterways and channels. The bahiagrass is excellent for sandy sites. The others spread by rootstocks making a well anchored and stable ground covering.

The designer shall consult with the appropriate staff regarding landscaping standards such as selection, spacing, location, and planting requirements of all grasses and plants which are to be incorporated in the system. Approval of a landscaping plan by the appropriate staff will be required prior to issuance of a construction permit. The approved landscaping plan must include the planting for the vegetative shelf for wet ponds.

c. Outlet Structures

Outlet structures shall be constructed out of concrete or masonry. The minimum barrel size shall be twelve (12) inches. A hinged trash rack with appropriate sized openings shall be provided over all outlet structure openings to avoid the pipe clogging. The outlet structure is to be accessible for maintenance.

d. Drain

The design of the pond should incorporate a method of draining all water by use of a valve assembly. Where this is not possible, a well defined low point shall be constructed to allow for pumping out the facility.

e. Overflow

An emergency outlet or overflow designed according to the following parameters:

1. Minimum of six (6) inches higher than the top of the outlet structure but in no case lower than the water surface elevation that restricts the discharge to the 25-year pre-development flow rate.
2. Sized to pass the 100-year storm event;
3. It shall have appropriately designed stabilization material from the top of the spillway down to natural grade.

f. Other Utilities

No other utilities shall be constructed within five (5) feet of the storm water detention/retention pond unless specifically approved by the City Engineer.

g. Landscaping

Open basins shall be provided with a minimum 5-foot landscaped zone around the periphery of the ponds which have a surface area up to 0.5 acres as measured at the top bank. A minimum 10-foot landscaped zone as measured outward from the top of the bank shall be provided for ponds larger than 0.5 acres. A typical storm water facility landscaping plan is shown on SD-16 located in Chapter VI, Landscaping.

h. Access

A stable access and maintenance shoulder with a minimum width of ten (10) feet measured from the top of bank shall be provided sufficient to allow the periodic removal of sediment from the system. This access shall be coordinated with the landscaping zone around the basin. The landscaping zone shall not be incorporated in the access/maintenance way.

i. Fencing

Fencing for private facilities shall be at the option of the developer.

j. Flooding of Parking Areas

The flooding of parking areas for providing storm water storage volume is discouraged. When this method is used, no more than 25% of the required parking may be flooded by three (3) inches or more for the ten-year storm. The storm water system shall be designed to completely drain from the parking lot within two hours after the storm.

Dams constructed as part of storm water facilities which are regulated by the N.C. Department of Environment, Health, and Natural Resources, shall obtain a dam safety permit, prior to the City Engineer's approval.

E. DETERMINATION OF RUNOFF

One of the most frequently used methods for determining the peak rate of runoff for small watersheds is the Rational Method. The Rational Method is presented below as a guide to the designer. Other methods such as the SCS Curve Number Method should be utilized where the Rational Method is less appropriate. The Rational formula is expressed as:

$$Q=CIA$$

where **Q** is the maximum rate of runoff from the drainage area expressed in cubic feet per second (cfs); **C** is a runoff coefficient, which is unitless; **I** is the rainfall intensity, expressed in inches per hour; and **A** is the drainage area expressed in acres. These components to the Rational formula are explained in detail in the following sections.

The designer should be cautious in the use of the Rational Method and only with the understanding of the inherent limitations. Some of the more critical limitations are described below:

- This method uses one coefficient to describe the surface conditions in a watershed that may have greatly varying surfaces and soils. The use of a composite runoff coefficient is normally used to represent the variations in surface conditions.

- The return period for the resulting runoff is assumed to be directly related to the rainfall event regardless of the watershed conditions. An attempt to compensate for the antecedent moisture conditions is usually made in the determination of the runoff coefficient.
- The Rational Method assumes the rain event to have a constant intensity throughout the storm.

1. Runoff Coefficient

There are several factors to be considered in the determination of the runoff coefficient “C”. The drainage area slope, soil type, land use, imperviousness, and antecedent moisture condition are the major factors to be considered. The designer shall use a composite or weighted “C” to reflect the variations encountered within a drainage area. Chart E-1 gives typical values of “C” for the Wilmington area. This table should be used as a guide to develop a composite “C” for the drainage area in questions.

2. Drainage Area

The area that contributes runoff to the point of interest for storm drainage design can be determined by utilizing a suitable topographic map. The ridge lines of the drainage basin are first delineated on the map. The area defined can then be measured by a planimeter or other suitable method.

CHART E-1

Runoff Coefficient for Various Land Uses

Typical Values **

Slope	Land-Use	Sandy Soils		Clay Soils	
		Min.	Max.	Min.	Max.
Flat (0-2%)	Woodlands	0.10	0.15	0.15	0.20
	*pastures, grass, & Farmland	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.25
	Rooftops and pavement	0.95	0.95	0.95	0.95
	Single family Residential:				
	1/2 acre lots and larger	0.30	0.35	0.35	0.45
	Smaller lots	0.35	0.45	0.40	0.50
	Multi-family Residential:				
	Duplexes	0.35	0.45	0.40	0.50
	Apartments, townhouses, and condominiums	0.45	0.60	0.50	0.70
	Commercial and Industrial	0.50	0.95	0.50	0.95
Rolling (2-7%)	Woodlands	0.15	0.20	0.20	0.25
	*Pastures grass, & Farmland	0.20	0.25	0.25	0.30
	Rooftops and pavement	0.95	0.95	0.95	0.95
	Single family Residential:				
	1/2 acre lots and larger	0.35	0.50	0.40	0.55
	Smaller lots	0.40	0.55	0.45	0.60
	Multi-family Residential:				
	Duplexes	0.40	0.55	0.45	0.60
	Apartments, townhouses, and condominiums	0.50	0.70	0.60	0.80
	Commercial and Industrial	0.50	0.95	0.60	0.95

* Coefficients assume good ground cover and conservation treatment.

** Weighted coefficient based on percentage of impervious surfaces and green areas must be selected for each site.

Source: Storm water Design Manual, Town of Mount Pleasant, S.C.

3. Rainfall Intensity

The rainfall intensity “I” is a function of storm duration and return frequency. The storm duration used for design is normally equal to the time of concentration, or the time for water to travel from the most remote point in the watershed to the point of design. The first step to determine the applicable rainfall intensity is to estimate the time of concentration, T_c. Two methods for use in determining the T_c are described below.

- a. **Kirpich Method** - The Kirpich method should be limited in use for watersheds 20 acres or less. The time of concentration can be determined using the nomograph labeled Chart E-2. To use the nomograph, the length of travel and the difference in elevation from the most remote point in the watershed to the point in question shall be determined. A straight line is drawn to connect the length and elevation difference determined above and extended to the intersection with the time of concentration line and T_c is read in minutes. The following equation can also be used:

$$T_c = T_t = \frac{\left(\frac{L}{H}\right)^3}{128}^{0.385}$$

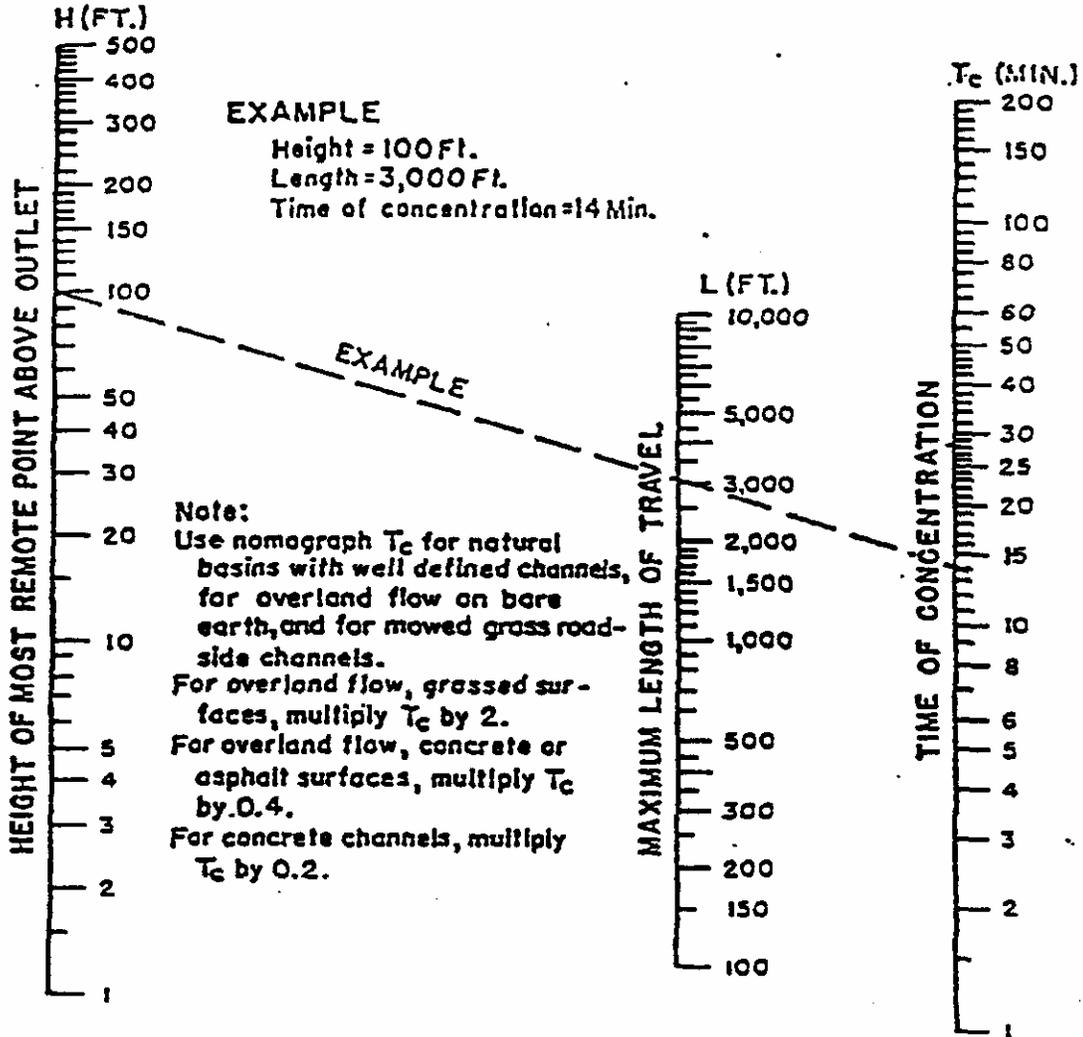
where:

L is hydraulic length from most remote point in the watershed measured in feet, **H** is the height of the most remote point above the point of interest in feet.

- b. **TR-55 Method** - This method should be used for watersheds larger than 20 acres up to 1300 acres. The TR-55 approach to determining the time of concentration is a method of estimating the velocity of flow through the different parts of the watershed including sheet flow, shallow concentrated flow, and flow in open channels or conduits. Using the velocity and length of travel through the different segments, the travel time is determined and summed to obtain the time of concentration, T_c. The following are steps taken to estimate T_c for the three flow types:

- 1) **Sheet Flow** - Sheet flow normally occurs at the head water of streams in the drainage basin. The flow is usually over plane surfaces for a maximum length of approximately 300 feet. Manning’s “n” values are used to compensate for the various types of surfaces. Chart E-3 gives “n” values for normally encountered surfaces. The time of travel for sheet flow is computed using the following formula:

CHART E-2



Based on study by P.Z. Kirpich,
 Civil Engineering, Vol 10, No. 6, June 1940, p.362

$$T_t = \frac{.007 (n L)^{0.8}}{P_2^{0.5} S^{0.4}}$$

where

T_t is travel time in hours

n is Manning's roughness coefficient

L is length of flow in feet

P₂ is 2-year 24-hour rainfall in inches

s is the land slope in ft/ft

CHART E-3

Roughness coefficients (Manning's n) for sheet flow

Surface Description	n
Smooth surfaces (concrete, asphalt, gravel, or bare soil)	0.011
Fallow (no residue)	0.05
Cultivated soils:	
Residue cover <20%	0.06
Residue cover >20%	0.17
Grass:	
Short grass prairie	0.15
Dense grasses 0.24	
Bermuda grass	0.41
Range (natural)	0.13
Woods:	
Light underbrush	0.40
Dense underbrush	0.80

*Source: (Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, USDA-SCS 210-VI-Tr-55, Second Ed., June 1986)

2) **Shallow Concentrated Flow** - After 300 feet, sheet flow usually becomes shallow concentrated flow. The average velocity for this type of flow can be found by using Chart E-4 or by using the following formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Unpaved } V &= 16.1345(s)^{.05} \\ \text{Paved } V &= 20.3282(s)^{.05} \end{aligned}$$

where s = slope

Once the average velocity is determined, the travel time can be computed as:

$$T_t = \frac{L}{3600V}$$

3) **Open Channel Flow** - For open channel flow, the travel time is computed using an estimated velocity of flow in the channel section. The velocity is estimated using Manning's equation expressed as follows:

$$V = \frac{1.49}{n} r^{2/3} s^{1/2}$$

where

V is velocity in feet per second (fps)

r is the hydraulic radius which is equal to the channel area divided by the wetted perimeter or the perimeter length of sides and bottom below the line of flow.

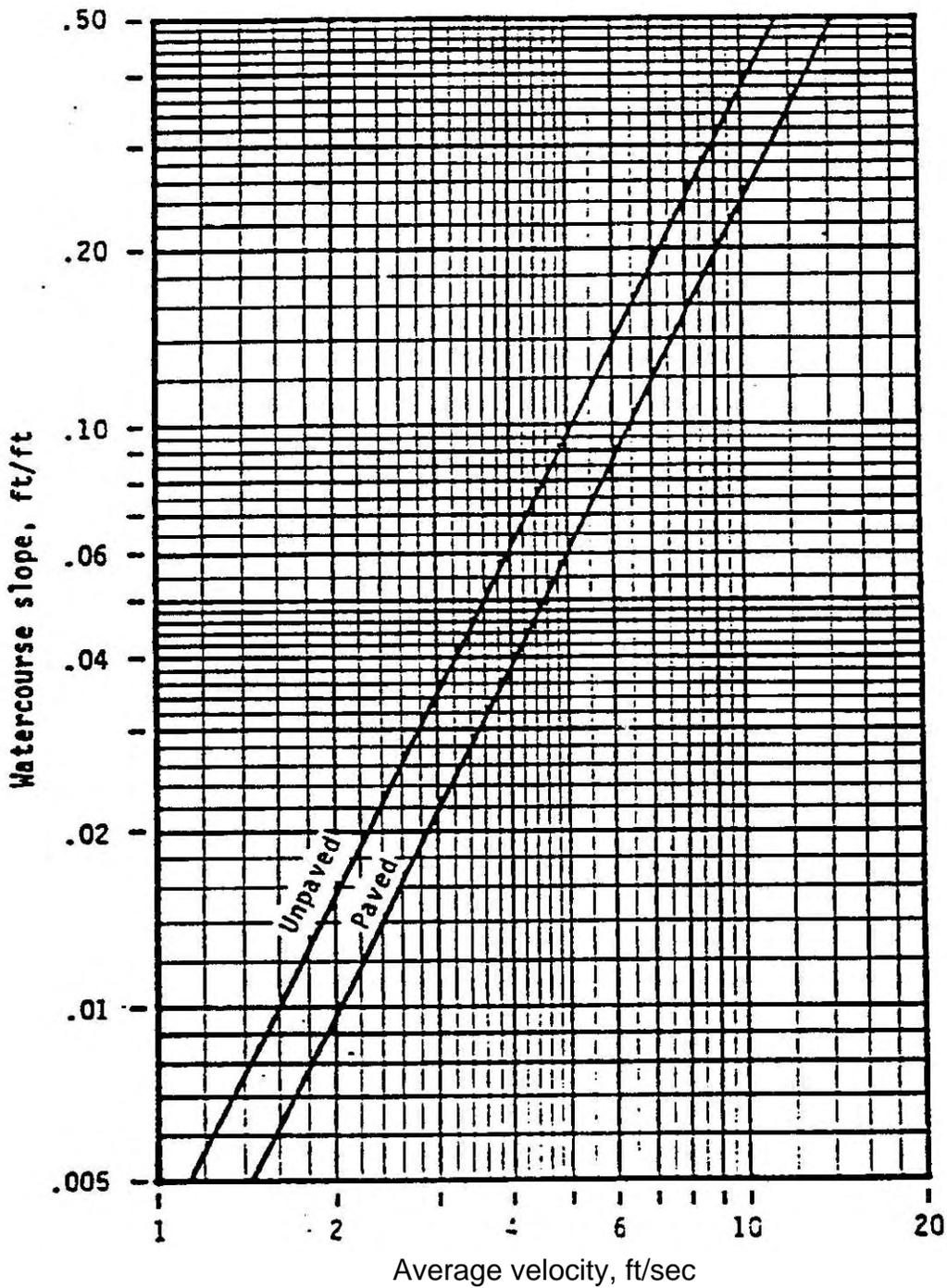
s is the slope of the hydraulic grade line or channel slope in ft/ft and **n** is the Manning's roughness coefficient

Once the average velocity is determined from the above equation, the travel time can be computed as in 2 above.

The time of concentration, **T_c**, is a summation of the three travel times computed in the preceding steps.

The rainfall intensity for design can be obtained from the Intensity-Duration Frequency Table or the equations provided on Page 5-17. The return period for design in the City of Wilmington for storm water management systems is the 10-year return frequency event.

CHART E-4



(210-VI-TR-55), Second Ed., June 1986

CHART E-5

Depth Duration Frequency Table

Location: Wilmington, NC

Return Period						
Duration	2-yr [in]	5-yr [in]	10-yr [in]	25-yr [in]	50-yr [in]	100-yr [in]
5 min	0.49	0.55	0.60	0.68	0.74	0.80
10 min	0.84	0.96	1.05	1.19	1.30	1.41
15 min	1.09	1.24	1.36	1.54	1.69	1.83
30 min	1.58	1.90	2.12	2.46	2.72	2.98
60 min	2.10	2.58	2.92	3.41	3.80	4.18
2 hr	2.36	2.93	3.34	3.92	4.37	4.82
3 hr	2.63	3.29	3.76	4.42	4.94	5.46
6 hr	3.30	4.20	4.82	5.71	6.40	7.09
12hr	3.90	5.00	5.77	6.86	7.70	8.55
24hr	4.50	5.81	6.72	8.01	9.01	10.00

CHART E-6

Intensity - Duration - Frequency Table

Location: Wilmington, NC

Return Period						
Duration	2-yr [in/hr]	5-yr [in/hr]	10-yr [in/hr]	25-yr [in/hr]	50-yr [in/hr]	100yr [in/hr]
5 min	5.88	6.63	7.23	8.15	8.87	9.60
10 min	5.06	5.76	6.30	7.13	7.79	8.45
15 min	4.36	4.97	5.45	6.17	6.75	7.32
30 min	3.17	3.79	4.25	4.92	5.44	5.96
60 min	2.10	2.58	2.92	3.41	3.80	4.18
2hr	1.18	1.47	1.67	1.96	2.19	2.41
3hr	0.88	1.10	1.25	1.47	1.65	1.82
6hr	0.55	0.70	0.80	0.95	1.07	1.18
12 hr	0.33	0.42	0.48	0.57	0.64	0.71
24 hr	0.19	0.24	0.28	0.33	0.38	0.42

*Source: Master Drainage Improvement and Stormwater Management Plan, Vol. 1, McKim & Creed, June 1988

Intensity-Duration-Frequency Equation

$$I=G/(H+T)$$

for T from 5 to 120 minutes

Values of G and H

<u>R</u>	<u>G</u>	<u>H</u>
2	171	24
5	219	28
10	252	30
25	300	32
50	338	33
100	376	34

Where R is return period in years

Source: Master Drainage Improvement & Storm Water Management Plan, Vol. 1,
McKim & Creed, June 1988.

F. PIPE SYSTEM DESIGN

1. Curb Inlet Design

The curb inlet design procedure is based on a standard City of Wilmington curb inlet with a 4-foot opening. The following procedure is used to locate inlets, however, other factors shall be considered such as location of low points, intersections and layout of pipe system.

- a. Determine maximum gutter flow from the nomograph “flow in triangular gutter sections.’ The known values of street longitudinal slope, S; street cross slope, Sx; allowable spread, T=8 feet; and roughness coefficient, n: are used to solve for the gutter capacity, Q.
- b. Determine location of inlet using the rational formula rearranged such that:

$$A=Q/CI$$

Locate first inlet by trial and error with planimeter and topographic map such that gutter flow does not exceed capacity determined above. Check selection of “C” and “T” for the actual area determined.

- c. The next inlets are located utilizing Charts F-1 and F-2. Determine the required curb opening length, Lt and enter in Chart F-2, with the ratio L/Lt where L is the actual curb opening of 4 feet for City standard curb inlets. This will yield the percentage of flow intercepted by each basin. The remainder of this flow shall be considered in determining the location of the next downstream inlet. This procedure is repeated as

necessary. The designer is encouraged to use the Catch Basin Design and Data Sheet, Chart F-4.

2. Pipe Design

After curb inlets have been preliminarily located, the pipe system may be designed. Use City of Wilmington standards for materials, minimum sizes, slopes, etc. Pipes shall be designed based on Manning's equation for gravity pipe flow.

Determine area, intensity, and runoff coefficients for the rational formula to obtain the design flow for each section of pipe. (Note - that the design is based on the sum of individual areas runoff and not the sum of the individual catch basin capacity). The designer is encouraged to use the Storm Drainage Design Data Sheet (Chart F-5) included in this manual.

Required pipe size may be determined by solving the following equation:

$$D = 16 \left[\frac{Qn}{\sqrt{S}} \right]^{3/8}$$

where

D is minimum pipe diameter in inches

Q is design flow in cfs

n is Manning roughness coefficient

S is pipe slope in feet per foot

Check the preliminary design to ensure that velocity is within acceptable range.

The following example demonstrates use of the modified Manning's equation solution.

Given Q 20 cfs

Available slope is .4%

Pipe is concrete

Using n = .012 for concrete

$$D = 16 \left[\frac{20 \times 0.012}{\sqrt{0.004}} \right]^{3/8}$$

D = 26.38, therefore use 30" pipe

Storm Water Drainage Design

The columns of the table on page 5-27 are treated as follows:

- (1) FROM -- The designation of the structure at the upper end of the pipe.
- (2) TO -- The designation of the structure at the lower end of the pipe.
- (3) SUB TOTAL AREA -- The drainage area contributing to the upstream end of the pipe, listed by designation. (ac)
- (4) TOTAL AREA -- The total area (ac) draining to the upstream end of the pipe.
- (5) INLET TIME -- Flow time (min) on the ground to the most remote inlet on the longest flow path (in terms of time) to the pipe being sized.
- (6) PIPE TIME -- Sum of flow times (min) in pipe along the longest flow path (in terms of time) to the pipe being sized.
- (7) TIME OF CONC. -- Col 5 + Col 6. This is the longest flow time of all possible paths from the most remote point in the system to the upstream end of the pipe being sized. It is the time of concentration (min).
- (8) INTENSITY -- The rainfall intensity (in/hr) for the design storm of interest and the time of concentration (Col 7), taken from the applicable Intensity-Duration-Frequency Chart (See Page T-2-15), or computed from an IDF equation.
- (9) RUNOFF COEF. -- The composite runoff coefficient for the areas in Col 3. This usually changes for the individual areas.
- (10) DISCHARGE -- The design discharge (cfs). $Q = CIA$. (Col 9)^{*}(Col 8)^{*}(Col 4)
- (11) SLOPE -- Invert of pipe (ft/ft), as decide within profile constraints.
- (12) DIA. theo. -- Theoretical minimum pipe diameter (in), from the following equation:

$$D = 16 \left[\frac{Qn}{\sqrt{s}} \right]^{(3/8)}$$

- (13) SIZE -- Standard pipe size (in), as selected
- (14) V full -- Full-flow average cross-sectional velocity (ft/sec), computed from the following equation:

$$V = \frac{\sqrt{s}D^{2/3}}{8.9n}$$
- (15) LENGTH -- Length (II) of pipe segment of interest, from map or given data.
- (16) SEGMENT TIME -- Row time (min) through pipe segment of interest, (Col 15)/((Col 14)*60)
- (17) UPPER INVERT -- Invert elevation of the upper end of the pipe of interest, set by reference to upstream pipes and cover requirements.
- (18) LOWER INVERT -- Invert elevation of the lower end of the pipe of interest, set equal to (Col 17)-((Col 11)*(Col 15)). Check for adequate cover; revise slope (Col 11) if necessary.
- (19) TOP ELEVATION -- Ground elevation at upstream end, for reference.

3. Culvert Design

Whenever open channels are used to convey storm water, it may be necessary to cross under a roadway using a culvert. The culvert shall be designed to meet several hydraulic conditions based on headwater depth, full or partial flow, roughness, slope, entrance and exit types, and tail water depth.

Laboratory tests and field observations have determined that all these conditions can be grouped into two control conditions, inlet and outlet. Both types shall be considered separately in the design of culverts.

a. **Inlet Control**

Inlet control exists when the culvert barrel is not flowing full the entire length. The discharge capacity is controlled at the entrance by the depth of headwater (depth from culvert invert) and entrance geometry. Nomographs for inlet control are provided on Charts F-6 through F-10.

b. **Outlet Control**

Outlet control exists when the culvert barrel is flowing full the entire length, or only part of the length. This is why it is necessary to design for both types of control. The controlling factors in outlet control are tail water elevation in the outlet channel, slope, roughness, and length of culvert barrel.

Nomographs for outlet control are provided on Charts F-11 through F-15. In order to use these it is necessary to determine the coefficient of entrance loss, K_e . The Table on the following page is provided in order to determine the value of K_e .

To use the nomographs, enter the chart with a known pipe length and entrance coefficient on the curved portion and a trial pipe size. Extend a line between these two points on the respective graphs and mark the intersection with the Turning Line. Using the known flow, draw a line from the flow graph through the mark on the Turning Line and extend to the Head graph. Read head value, H , from the chart and use the following equation to compute headwater, HW for the given situation:

$$HW = H + h_o - sL$$

where

H is Head as determined from the nomograph

h_o is the tail water depth at the culvert outlet

s is the pipe slope, and

L is the length of the culvert

Compare the headwater values determined from the inlet control and outlet control procedures. The larger of the two is the controlling factor in culvert capacity.

Entrance Loss Coefficients*

<u>Type of Structure and Design of Entrance</u>	<u>Coefficient, Ke</u>
Pipe, Concrete	
Projecting from fill, socket end (groove-end)	0.2
Projecting from fill, sq. cut end	0.5
Headwall or headwall and wingwalls	
Socket end of pipe	0.2
Square-end	0.5
Rounded (radius = 1/12D)	0.2
Mitered to conform to fill slope	0.7
End section conforming to fill slope	0.5
Pipe, or Pipe-Arch, Corrugated Metal	
Projecting from fill (no headwall)	0.9
Headwall or headwall and wingwalls	
Square-edge	0.5
Mitered to conform to fill slope	0.7
End section conforming to fill slope	0.5

*Source: Design of Culverts, NRCD-Land Quality, August 1986

The following example demonstrates the use of the Nomographs provided:

Given:

Q=89c1s

Length of culvert =100ft

Pipe Slope = 2.0%

Inlet Type - Square Edge with Headwall

Pipe Type - Use RCP

Sizing for inlet control from the Chart F-6, a concrete pipe 48 inches in diameter has a headwater depth (HW/D) of 1.15 diameters or 4.6 feet. Check the embankment height to ensure at least one foot of free board remains. If inlet control design is satisfactory, check the 48-inch pipe for outlet control.

Determine entrance loss coefficient, Ke, from the preceding table. For concrete pipe with square edge and headwall, Ke is shown to be 0.5. Find the length of pipe on Chart F-11 for Ke = 0.5. Draw a line from this point to the size of pipe, which for this example would be 48". Mark the intersection of this line with the

Turning Line. Next, draw a line from the know discharge of 89 cfs through the Turning Line at the mark previously made and extend to the line which gives a value of head in feet. For this example, the value of head, H, is 1.5 feet. Assume since no information is available that the tail water depth, ho, is equal to the diameter of the culvert. Compute the actual headwater depth as follows:

$$HW = H + h_o - sL$$

$$HW = 1.5 + 4.0 - (0.2)(100)$$

$$HW = 3.5$$

Therefore inlet control is limiting actual flow since headwater depth is 4.6 feet. Use of 48" culvert is acceptable in this example.

When culverts are flowing full and the outlet is under tailwater conditions, outlet control charts should be used. The friction coefficient and other values for the pipe section should be estimated and the elevation (Za) of the upstream point on the HGL should be determined. This elevation should become the reference elevation (Zb) of the next section upstream.

4. **Energy Dissipaters**

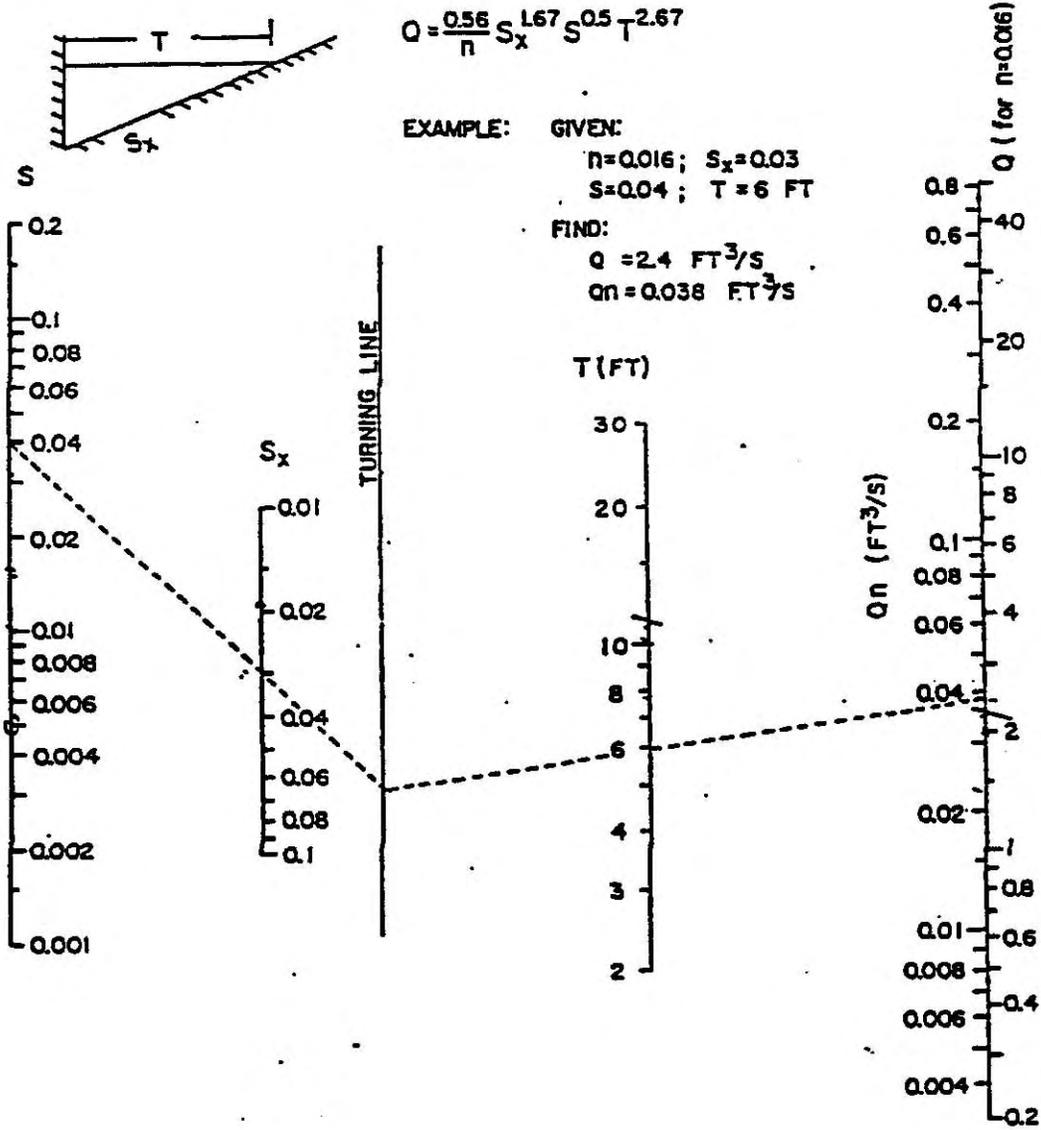
Energy dissipaters are de-energizing devices and/or erosion resistant channel sections provided between storm drain or culvert outlets and existing downstream channels, to provide for stable flow transitions and reduce the velocity of storm water discharges sufficient to prevent erosion of the receiving channel.

These devices are needed for any storm drain outlet, culvert outlet, or channel outlet where the receiving channel or discharge area is subject to erosion.

Size of riprap as well as length and width of apron are controlled by the velocity of the outgoing water from the culvert. A simple and widely used method for estimating the stone size and dimensions for culvert aprons is provided in Charts F16, F-17, and F-18.

The velocity of flow can be determined by dividing the known flow (**Q**) by the culvert area: $V=Q/A$. Follow the steps on the charts to determine apron length to prevent scour at the outlet in questions The width of stone apron at the downstream edge should be approximately equal to the length except where conformance to the receiving channel is necessary. Chart F-17 is included as a guide to determine stone size, however, readily available stone sizes may be used with judgment.

CHART F-1



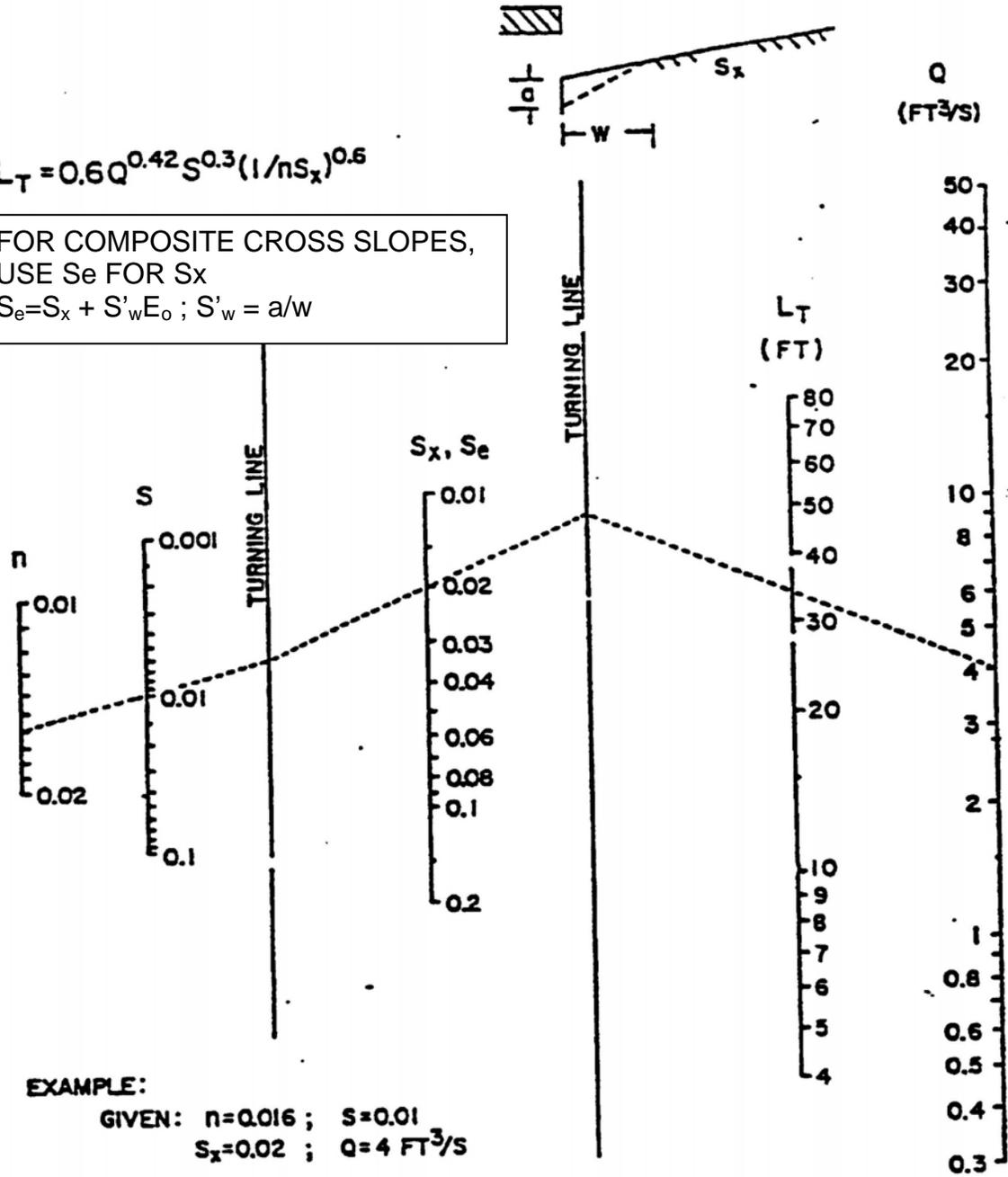
Source: FHWA-TS-84-202

Flow in triangular gutter sections.

CHART F-2

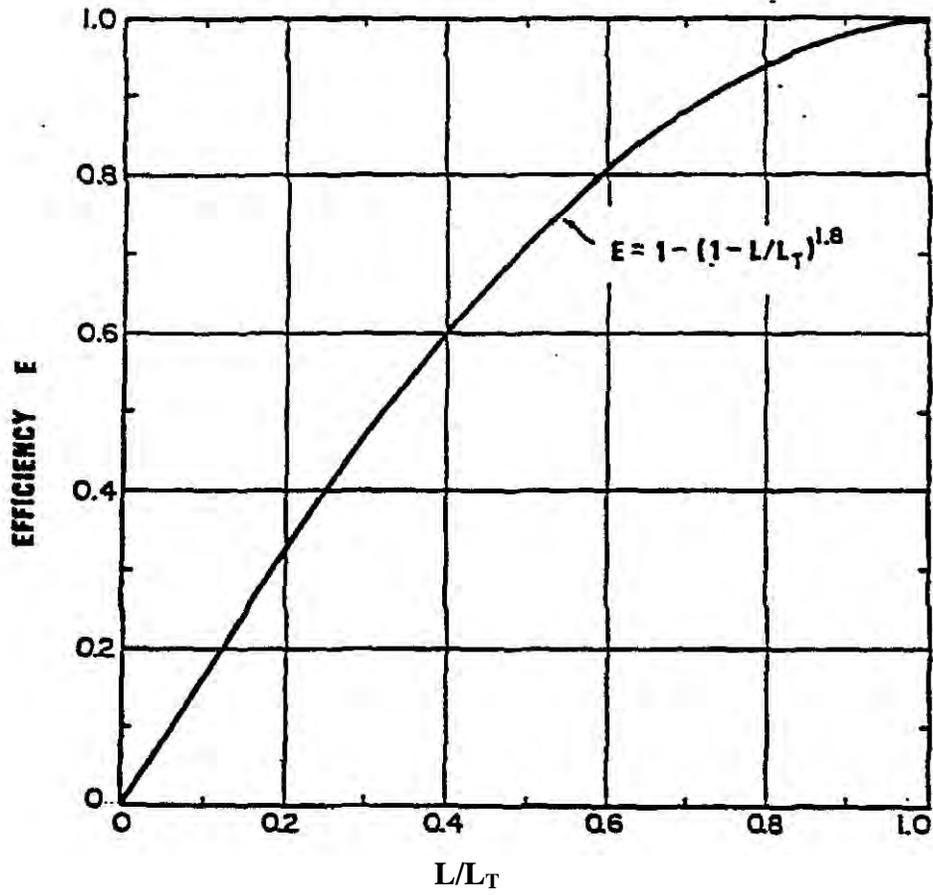
$$L_T = 0.6Q^{0.42} S^{0.3} (1/nS_x)^{0.6}$$

FOR COMPOSITE CROSS SLOPES,
USE S_e FOR S_x
 $S_e = S_x + S'_w E_o$; $S'_w = a/w$



Source: FHWA-TS-84-202

CHART F-3



Source: FHWA-TS-84-202

CHART F-5

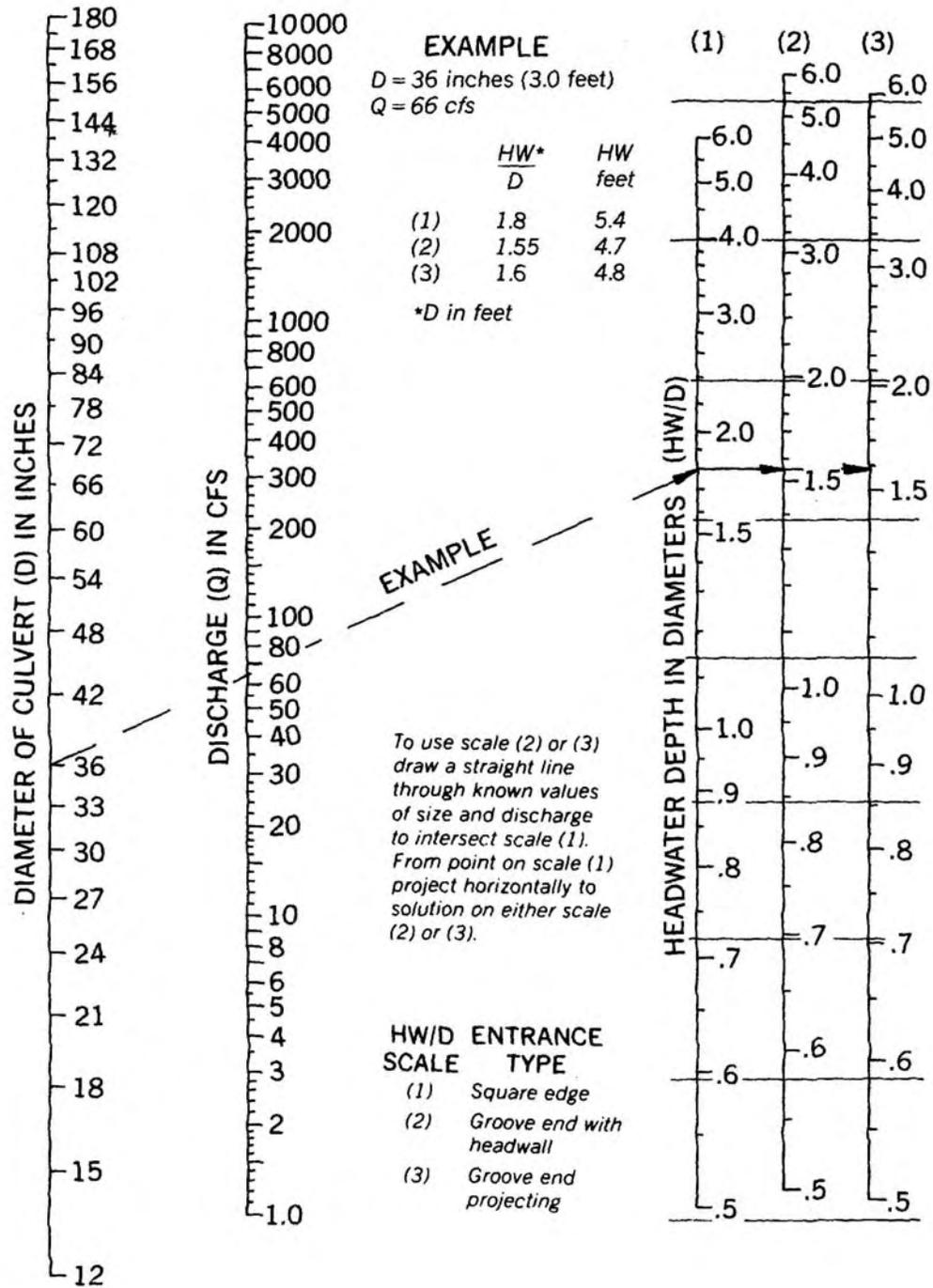
STORM DRAINAGE DESIGN DATA SHEET

PROJECT: _____		COMPUTED BY: _____		DATE: _____	
LOCATION: _____		CHECKED BY: _____		SHEET _____ OF _____	
STORM FREQUENCY _____ YRS		S = _____		h = _____	
PIPE TYPE: _____		PIPE TYPE: _____		N: _____	
AREA		Tc		PIPE DATA	
SUB TOTAL (acres)		TIME OF CONC. (min)		SLOPE DIA. theo. (in)	
TO TOTAL (acres)		PIPE TIME (min)		% (in)	
FROM		INLET TIME (min)		Q=C/A (cfs)	
1		8		C RUNOFF COEF.	
2		9		I INTENSITY (in/hr)	
3		10		V full (fps)	
4		11		LENGTH (ft)	
5		12		SEGMENT TIME (min)	
6		13		UPPER INVERT (ft)	
7		14		LOWER INVERT (ft)	
8		15		UPSTRM TOP EL. (ft)	
9		16			
10		17			
11		18			
12		19			
13		20			
14		21			
15		22			
16		23			
17		24			
18		25			
19		26			
20		27			
21		28			
22		29			
23		30			
24		31			
25		32			
26		33			
27		34			
28		35			
29		36			
30		37			
31		38			
32		39			
33		40			
34		41			
35		42			
36		43			
37		44			
38		45			
39		46			
40		47			
41		48			
42		49			
43		50			
44		51			
45		52			
46		53			
47		54			
48		55			
49		56			
50		57			
51		58			
52		59			
53		60			
54		61			
55		62			
56		63			
57		64			
58		65			
59		66			
60		67			
61		68			
62		69			
63		70			
64		71			
65		72			
66		73			
67		74			
68		75			
69		76			
70		77			
71		78			
72		79			
73		80			
74		81			
75		82			
76		83			
77		84			
78		85			
79		86			
80		87			
81		88			
82		89			
83		90			
84		91			
85		92			
86		93			
87		94			
88		95			
89		96			
90		97			
91		98			
92		99			
93		100			

C=RUNOFF COEFFICIENT
 H=HEIGHT ABOVE INLET OF MOST REMOTE POINT
 L=LENGTH OF DRAINAGE AREA
 I=INTENSITY
 N=COEFFICIENT OF FRICTION
 S=SLOPE (%)
 Q=FLOW (CFS)

NOTE: DESIGN IS BASED ON THE SUM OF THE AREAS AND NOT THE SUM OF THE DISCHARGES

CHART F-6



HEADWATER DEPTH FOR CONCRETE PIPE CULVERTS WITH INLET CONTROL

CHART F-7

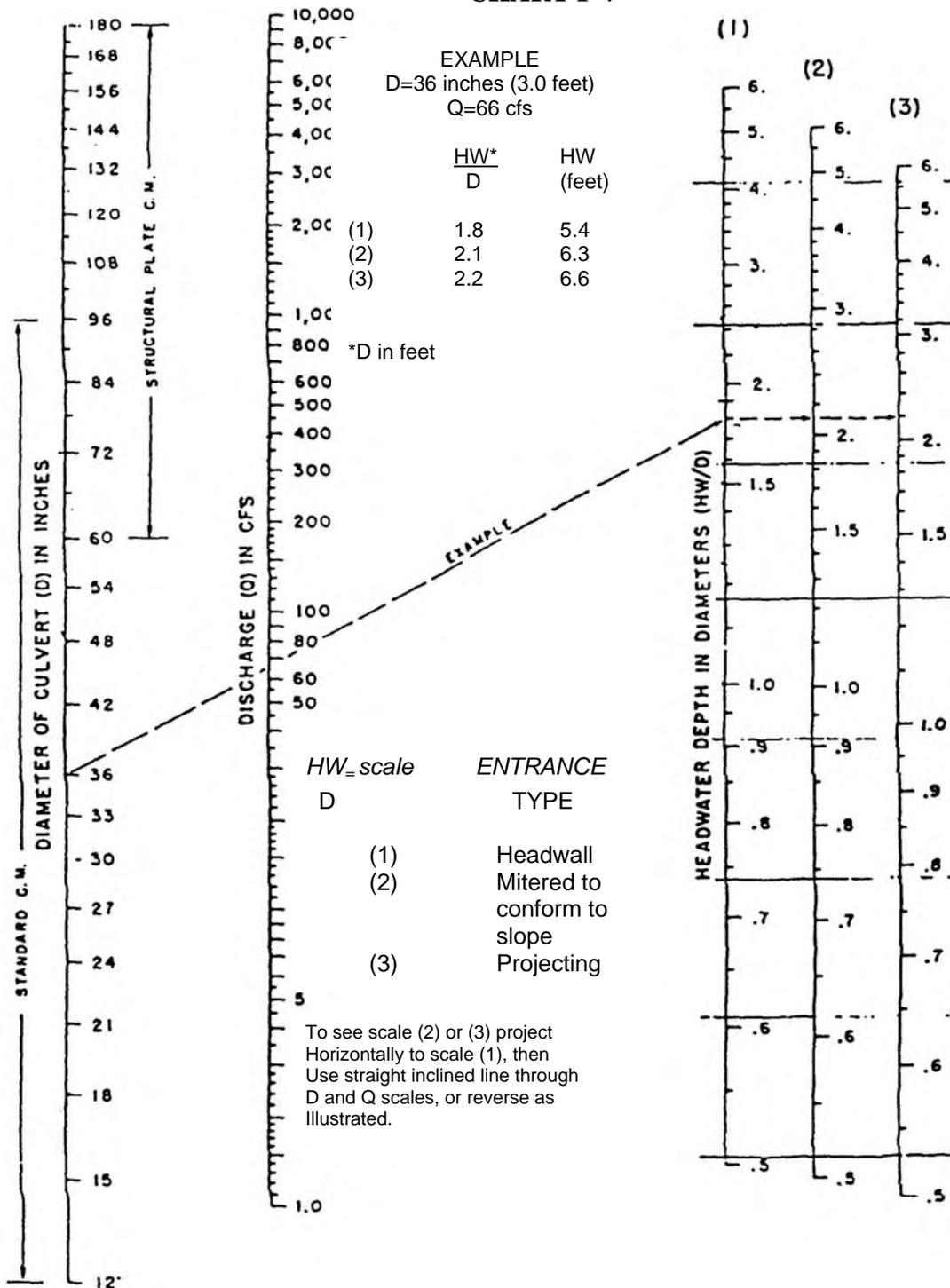
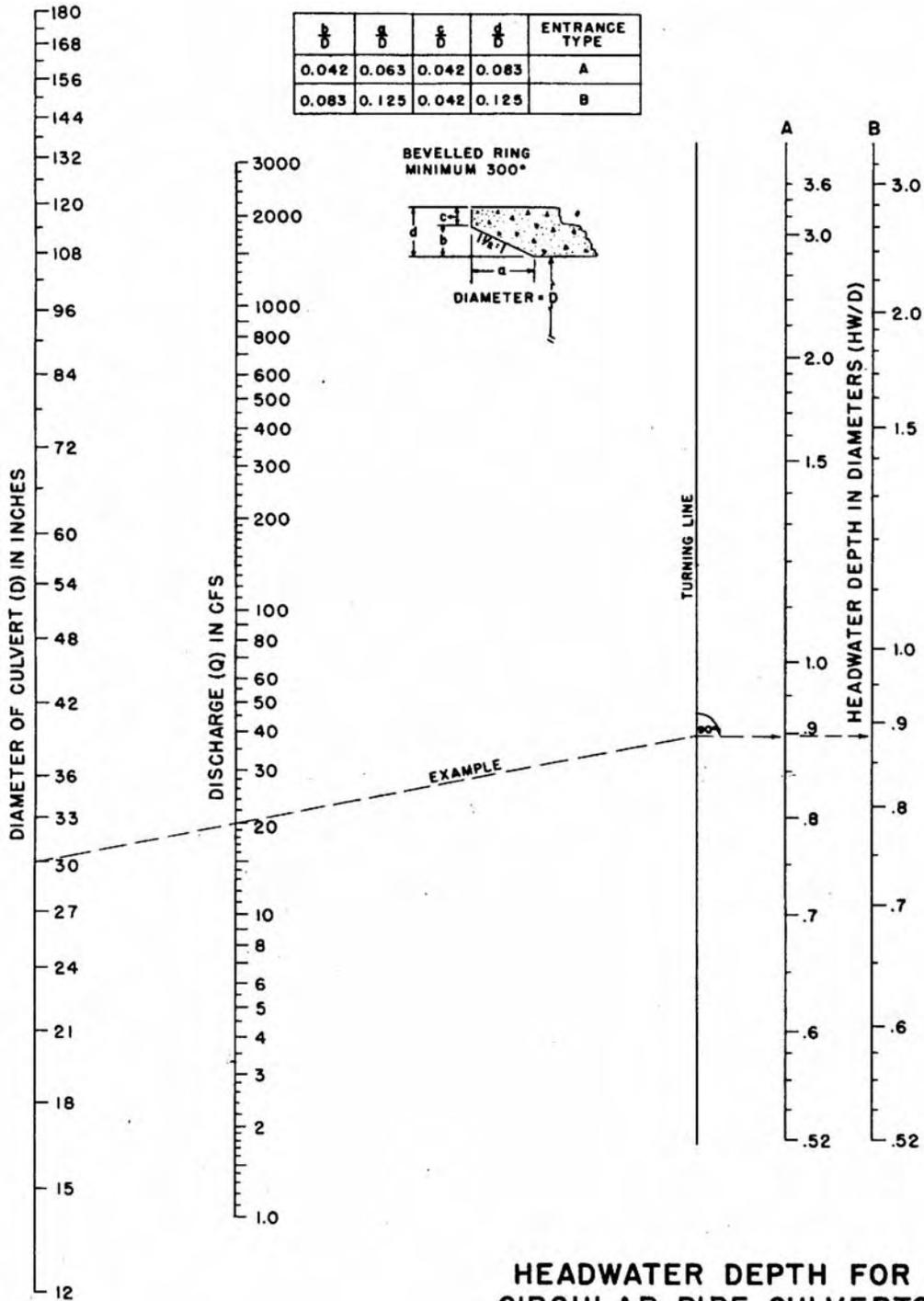


CHART F-8

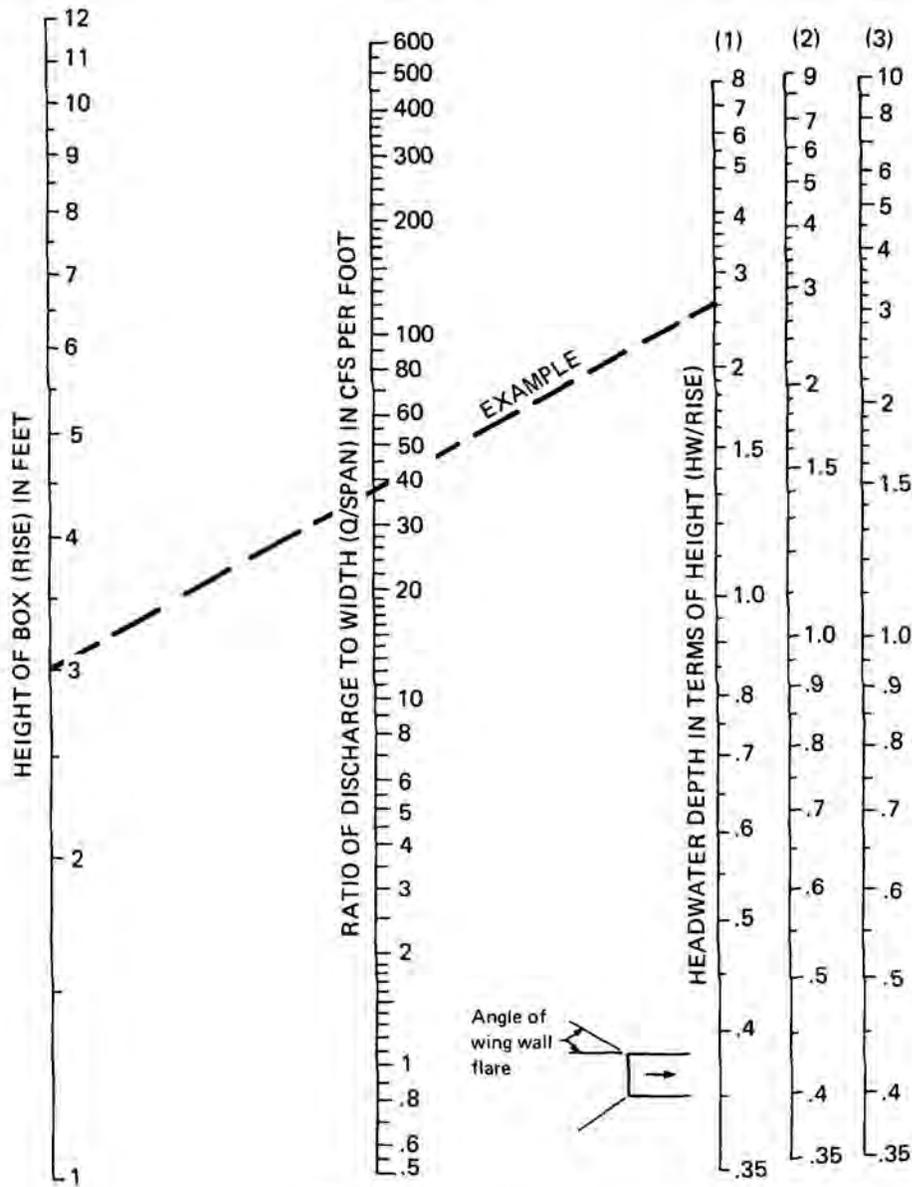
$\frac{b}{D}$	$\frac{g}{D}$	$\frac{e}{D}$	$\frac{d}{D}$	ENTRANCE TYPE
0.042	0.063	0.042	0.083	A
0.083	0.125	0.042	0.125	B



HEADWATER DEPTH FOR
CIRCULAR PIPE CULVERTS
WITH BEVELLED RING
INLET CONTROL

FEDERAL HIGHWAY ADMINISTRATION
MAY 1973

CHART F-9



EXAMPLE
 6' x 3' Box $Q = 225$ cfs
 $Q/\text{Span} = 37.5$ cfs/ft

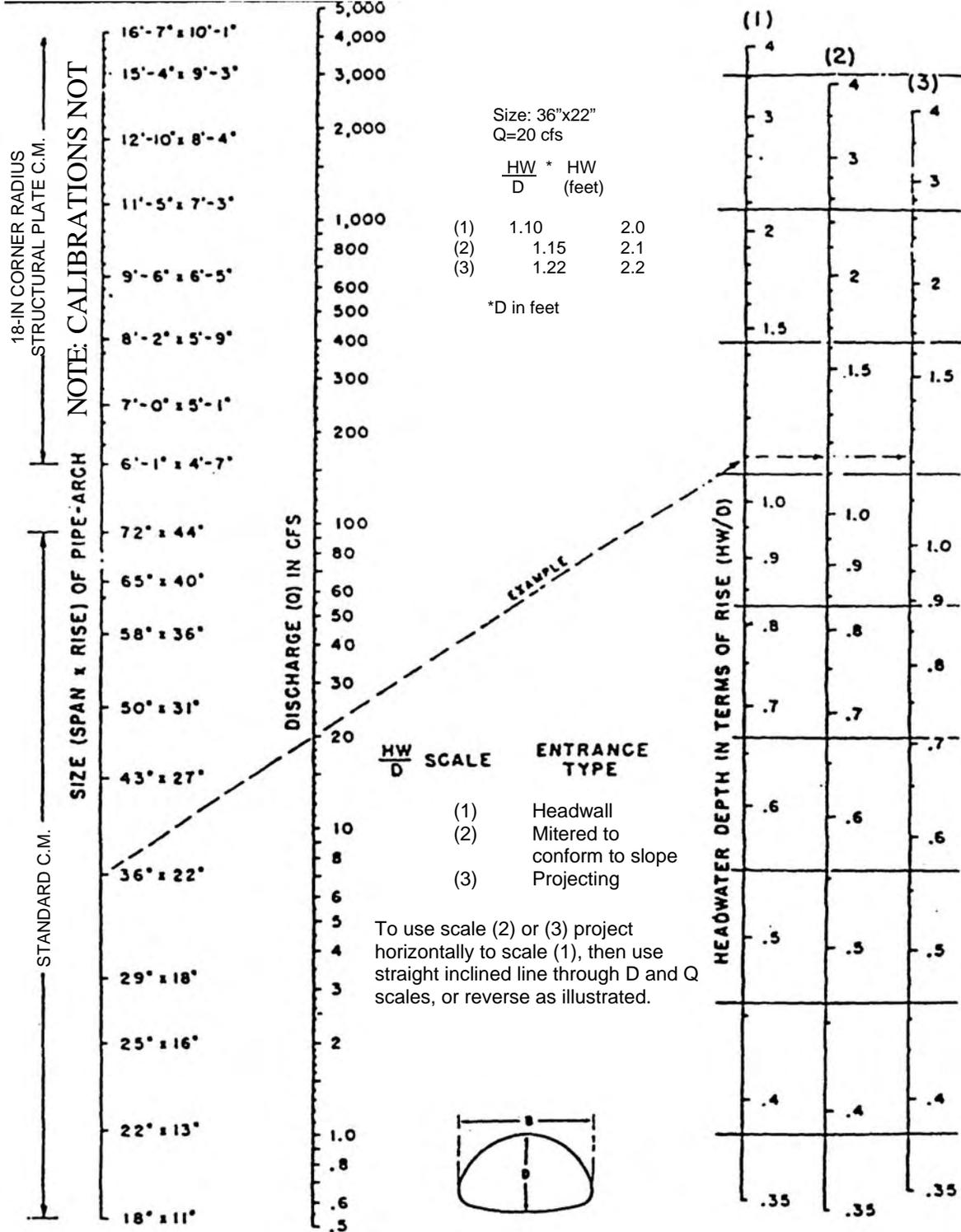
Inlet	$\frac{HW}{\text{Rise}}$	$\frac{HW}{\text{ft}}$
(1)	2.6	7.8

$\frac{HW}{\text{Rise}}$	SCALE	WING WALL FLARE
(1)		30° to 75°
(2)		90° and 15°
(3)		0° (extensions of sides)

To use scale (2) or (3) project horizontally to scale (1), then use straight inclined line through rise and Q scales, or reverse as illustrated.

BUREAU OF PUBLIC ROADS - JAN 1963

CHART F-10



*ADDITIONAL SIZES NOT DIMENSIONED ARE LISTED IN FABRICATOR'S CATALOG
BUREAU OF PUBLIC ROADS JAN. 1963

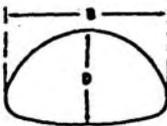
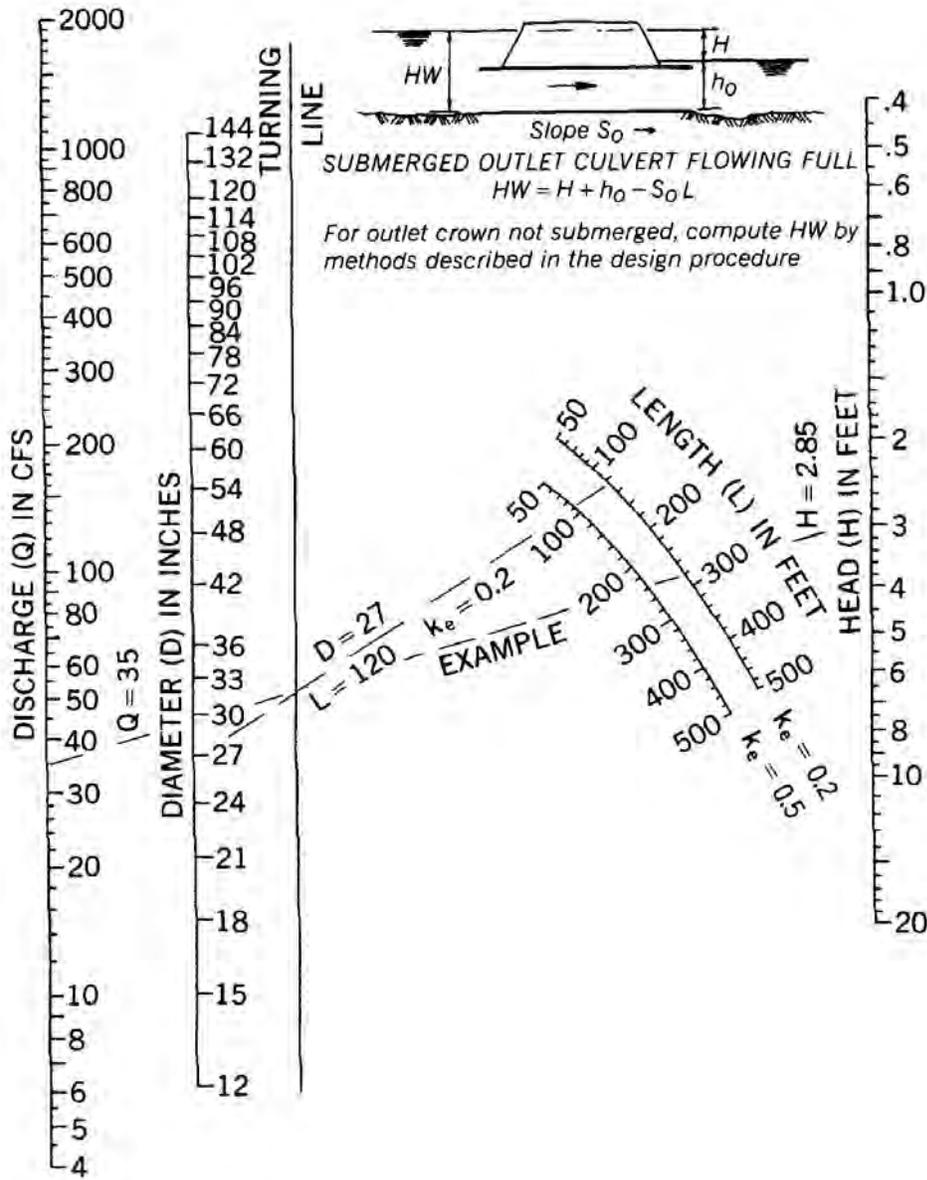


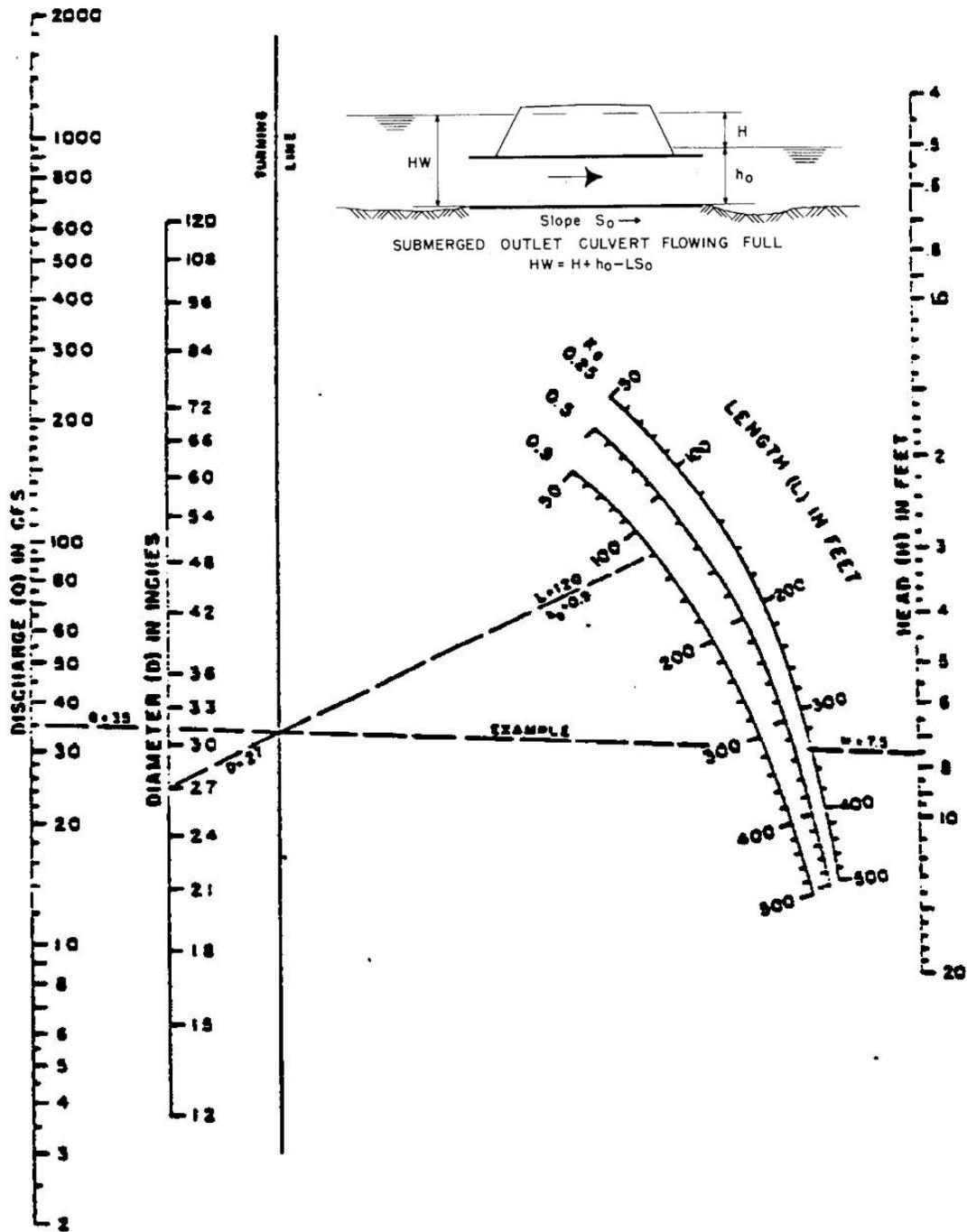
CHART F-11



HEAD FOR CONCRETE PIPE CULVERTS FLOWING FULL N=0.012

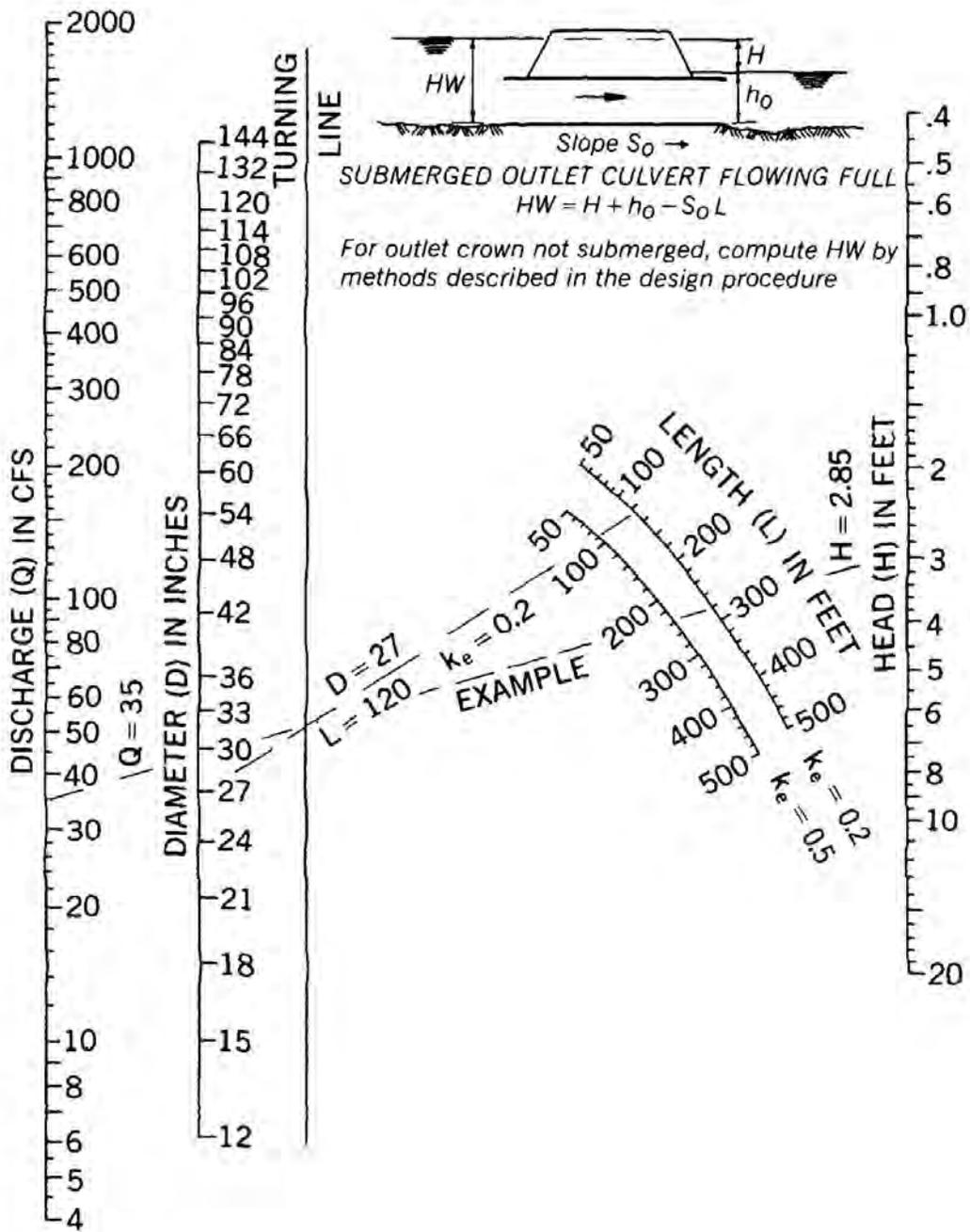
BUREAU OF PUBLIC ROADS JAN. 1963

CHART F-12



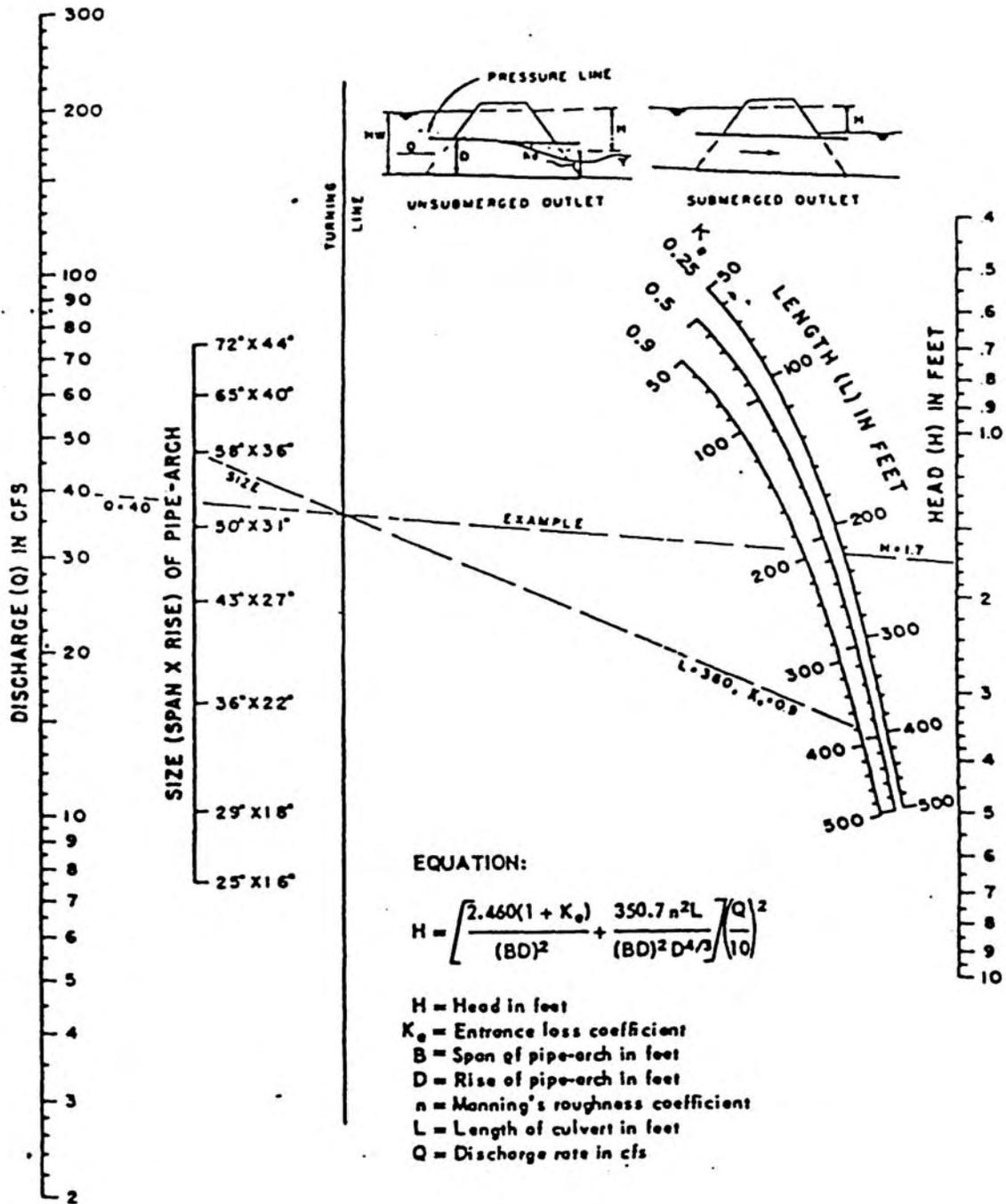
HEAD FOR
 STANDARD
 C. M. PIPE CULVERTS
 FLOWING FULL
 $n = 0.024$

CHART F-13



**HEAD FOR
 CONCRETE BOX CULVERTS
 FLOWING FULL
 N=0.012**

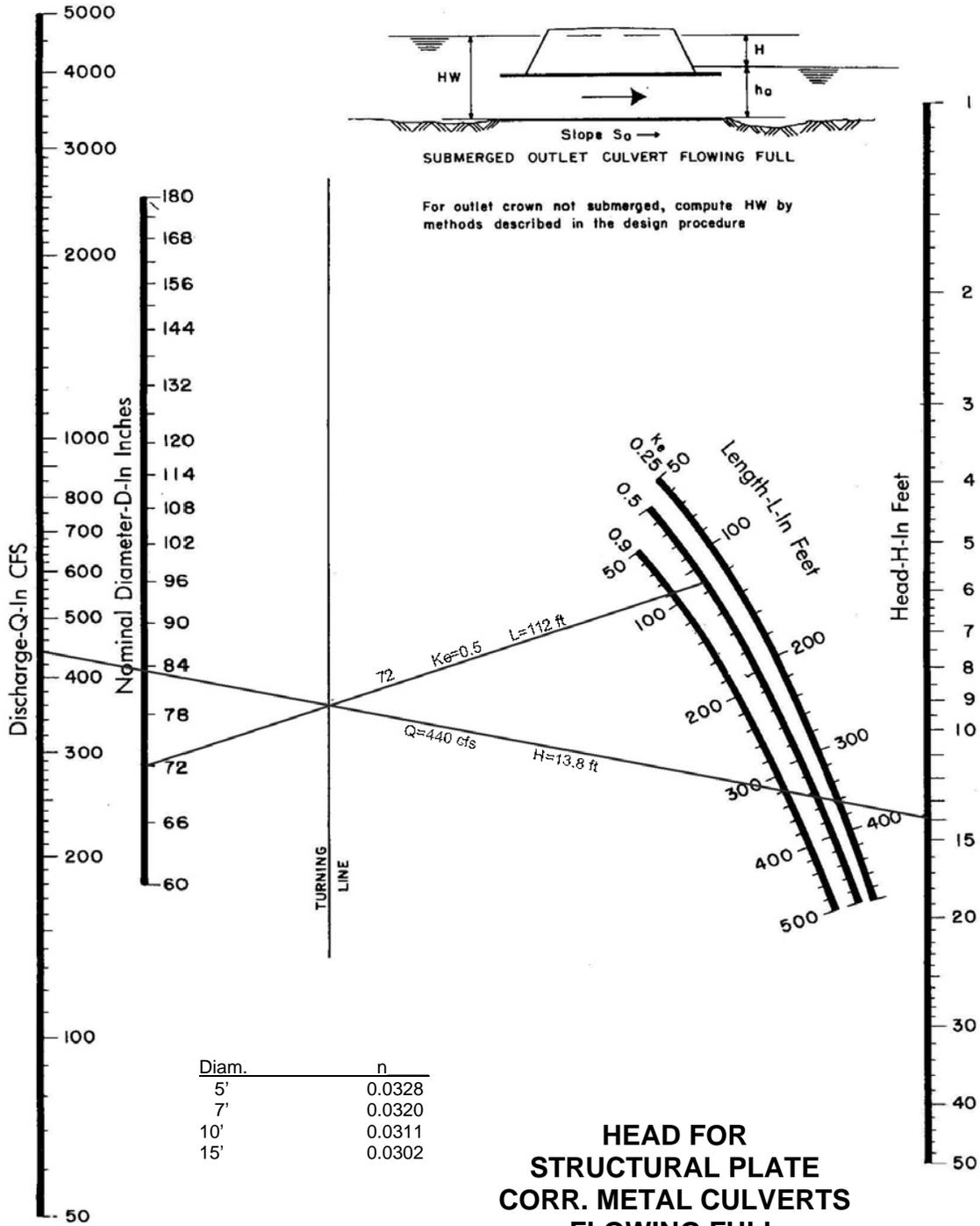
CHART F-14



HEAD FOR
 STANDARD C. M. PIPE-ARCH CULVERTS
 FLOWING FULL
 n = 0.024

PREPARED BY
 BUREAU OF PUBLIC ROADS
 JANUARY 1963

CHART F-15



Diam.	n
5'	0.0328
7'	0.0320
10'	0.0311
15'	0.0302

**HEAD FOR
 STRUCTURAL PLATE
 CORR. METAL CULVERTS
 FLOWING FULL
 N=0.0328 TO 0.0302**

CHART F-16

NEW YORK DOT DISSIPATER METHOD FOR USE IN DEFINED CHANNELS

(Source: "Bank and Channel Lining Procedures", New York Department of Transportation, Division of Design and Construction. 1971)

Note: To use the following chart you must know:

- 1) Q full capacity
- 2) Q_{10}
- 3) V full
- 4) V_{10}

Where Q =discharge in cfs and V = Velocity in FPS.

ESTIMATION OF STONE SIZE AND DIMENSIONS FOR CULVERT APRONS

Step 1) Compute flow velocity V_o at culvert or paved channel outlet.

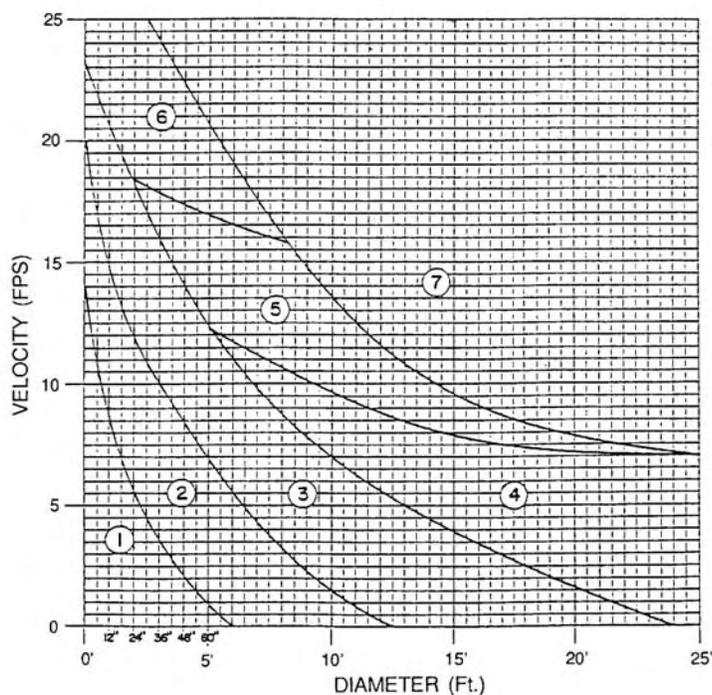
Step 2) For pipe culverts D_o is diameter

For pipe arch, arch and box culverts, and paved area channel outlets,

$D_o=A_o$, where A =cross-sectional area of flow at outlet.

For multiple culverts, use $D_o=1.25 \times D_o$ of single culvert.

Step 3) For apron grades of 10% or steeper, use recommendations for next higher zone.
(Zones 1 through 6).



Source: Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual, NC Department of NCRD, Land Quality Section, September 1988, Rev. 12/93.

CHART F-17

LENGTH OF APRON

ZONE	APRON MATERIAL	TO PROTECT CULVERT L1	TO PREVENT SCOUR HOLE USE L2 ALWAYS L2
1	STONE FILLING (FINE) CLASS A	3xDo	4xDo
2	STONE FILLING (LIGHT) CLASS B	3xDo	6xDo
3	STONE FILLING (MEDIUM) CLASS 1	4xDo	8xDo
4	STONE FILLING (HEAVY) CLASS 1	4xDo	8xDo
5	STONE FILLING (HEAVY) CLASS 2	5xDo	10xDo
6	STONE FILLING (HEAVY) CLASS 2	6xDo	10xDo
7	SPECIAL STUDY REQUIRED (ENERGY DISSIPATERS, STILLING BASIN OR LARGER SIZE STONE)		

Width = 3 times pipe diameter (min.)

DETERMINATION OF STONE SIZE FOR DUMPED STONE CHANNEL LININGS AND REVETMENTS

Step 1) Use figure F-18a to determine maximum stone size (e.g. for 12 Fps = 20" or 550 lbs.)

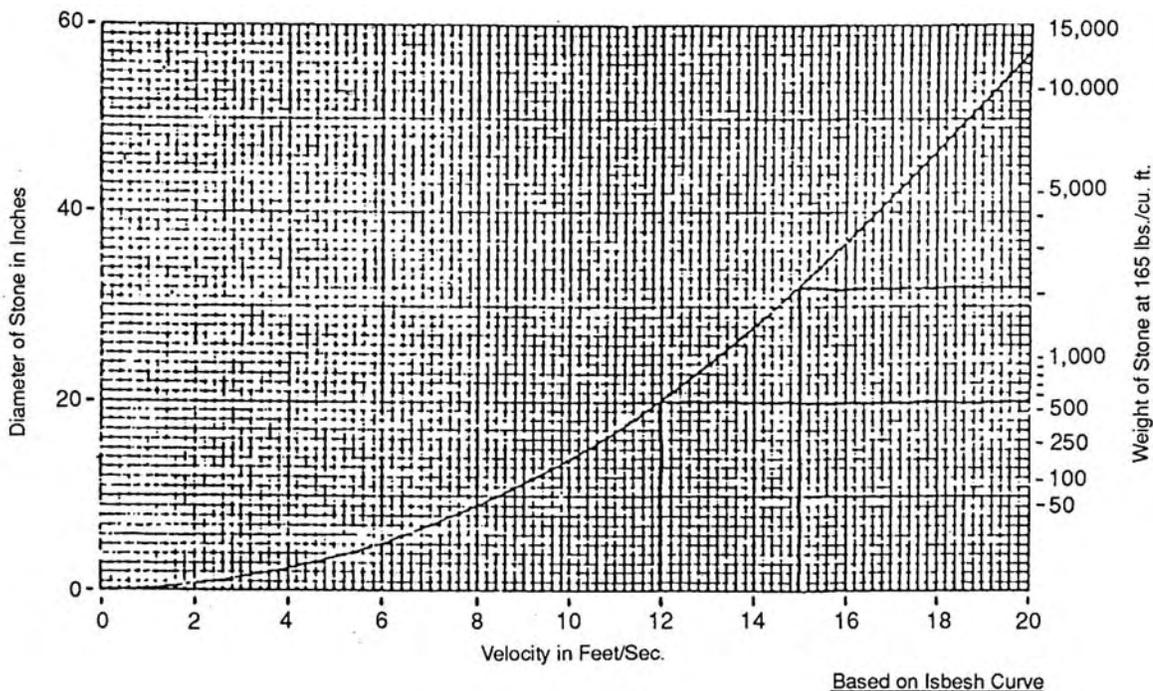
Step 2) Use figure F-18b to determine acceptable size range for stone (for 12 FPS it is 125-500 lbs. for 75% of stone, and the maximum and minimum range in weight should be 25-500 lbs.)

NOTE: In determining channel velocities for stone linings and revetment, use the following coefficients of roughness:

	Diameter (inches)	Mannings "n"	Minimum thickness of lining (inches)
Fine	3	0.031	9
Light	6	0.035	12
Medium	13	0.040	18
Heavy	23	0.044	30
			(Channels)
			(Dissipaters)

Source: Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual, NC Department of NRCD, Land Quality Section, September 1988, Rev. 12/93.

CHART F-18



F-18a Max. Stone Size for Rip Rap

Maximum weight of stone required	Minimum and maximum range in weight of stones	Weight range of 75% of stones
(lbs.)	(lbs.)	(lbs.)
150	25 - 150	50 - 150
200	25 - 200	50 - 200
250	25 - 250	50 - 250
400	25 - 400	100 - 400
600	25 - 600	150 - 600
800	25 - 800	200 - 800
1,000	50 - 1,000	250 - 1,000
1,300	50 - 1,300	325 - 1,300
1,600	50 - 1,600	400 - 1,600
2,000	75 - 2,000	600 - 2,000
2,700	100 - 2,700	800 - 2,700

F-18b Gradation of Rip Rap

Source: "Band and Channel lining procedures." New York Department of Transportation, Division of Design and Construction, 1971.

Source: Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual,
NC Department of NRCD, Land Quality Section, September 1988. Rev. 12/93.

G. OPEN CHANNEL DESIGN

In this area, proper consideration and design of the channel is of utmost importance, due to the high degree of potential erosion caused by the loose, non-cohesive soils native to the area.

Typical linings used to protect channel slopes include grasses, grass reinforced with a stabilization mat, stone riprap, paved slopes, and concrete fabric-form. The City encourages any introduction of new proven methods for lining channels. Alternative linings shall be approved by the City Engineer or his authorized representative.

1. Vegetative Channels

Typical channel cross sections include the trapezoidal cross section, triangular cross section, and the parabolic cross section. Chart G-2 may be used to determine geometric and hydraulic properties. Note that open channels to be dedicated to the City shall meet the geometric requirements stated in Section D. The triangular and parabolic section design guide is included for sites where these will be used as on-site water quality features for filtering and conveying storm water.

Channel capacity shall be computed using the Manning's equation and trial and en-or solution. The basic equation is:

$$Q = \frac{1.486ar^{\frac{2}{3}}s^{\frac{1}{2}}}{n}$$

where:

Q is flow in cubic feet per second (cfs).

a is flow area in square feet (ft),

r is hydraulic radius which is equal to the channel area divided by the wetted perimeter,

s is the slope of the hydraulic grade line or channel bottom in ft/ft, and

n is the roughness coefficient of the channel.

Steps for determining channel design for using a vegetative lining proceeds as follows:

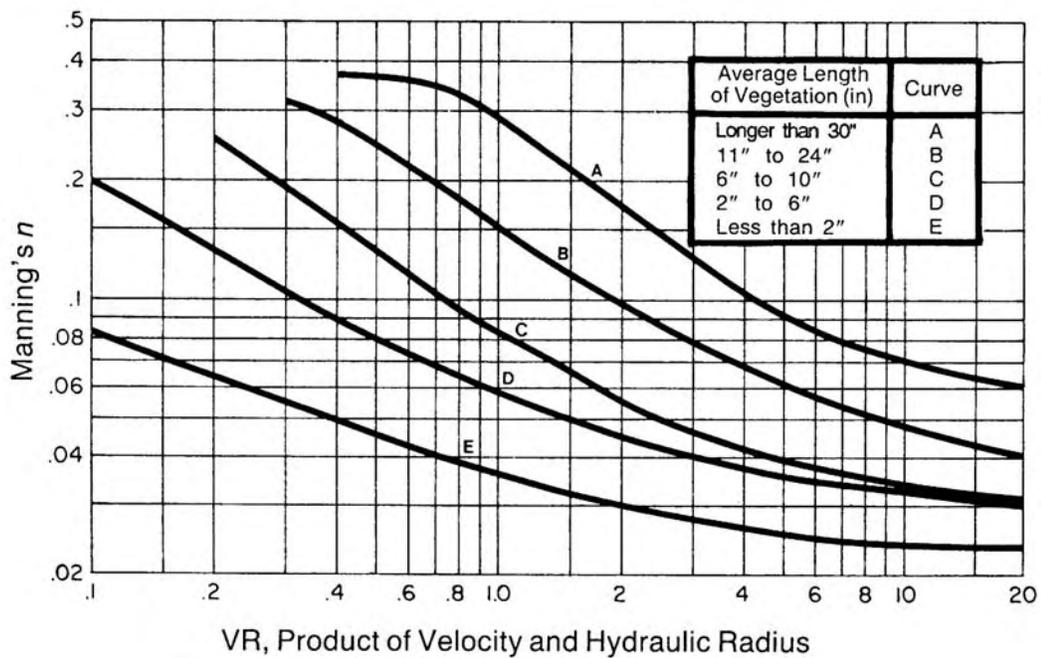
- a. With the known flow rate, Q, and channel slope, s, select channel geometry type and lining type.
- b. Determine permissible velocity from Chart G-3.
- c. Estimate channel size by dividing Q by the permissible velocity. Then estimate channel width, depth and side slope to fit site conditions.
- d. Compute the hydraulic radius of the trial channel configuration.
- e. Determine Manning's n using vegetative retardance class from Chart G-4 and the graph below using the permissible velocity and hydraulic radius. It is

recommended to use at least one retardance class higher than the one determined from the chart.

- f. Calculate velocity and flow using Manning's equation. Compare results with permissible velocity and required capacity.
- g. Repeat the above steps as necessary adjusting channel geometry to obtain required capacity within velocity limitations.

The nomograph on the following page provides for the solution of Manning's equation for a trapezoidal channel with side slopes from 1 to 6 horizontal to 1 vertical. An example is shown in the lower right corner of the nomograph.

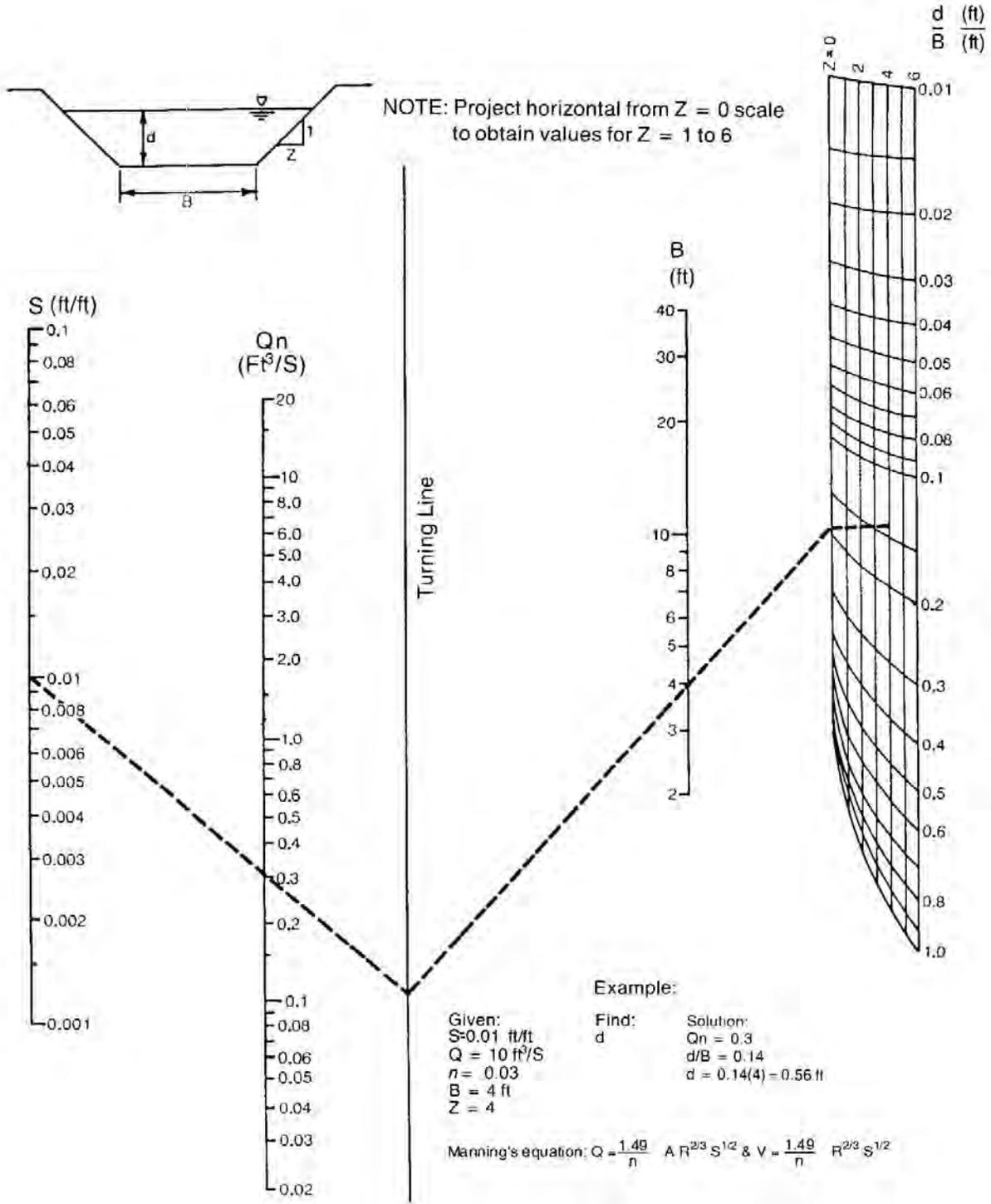
If the channel velocity exceeds 2 fps, a temporary lining may be required to stabilize the channel prior to the vegetation establishing. The procedure for designing temporary linings is the same as shown for riprap lined channels.



Manning's n related to velocity, hydraulic radius, and vegetal retardance.

Source: Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual,
 NC Department of NRCD, Land Quality Section, September 1988.

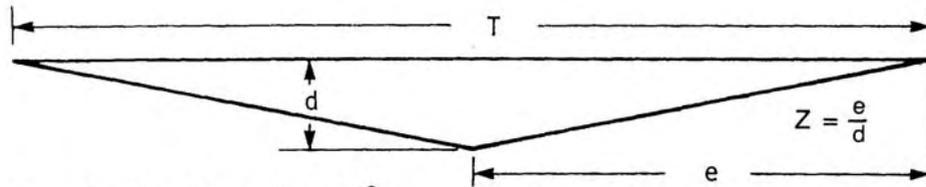
CHART G-1



Solution of Manning's equation for trapezoidal channels of various side slopes.
Adapted from: FHWA-HEC. 15, Pg 40-April, 1988.

*Source: Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual, NC Department of NRCD, Land Quality Section, September, 1988.

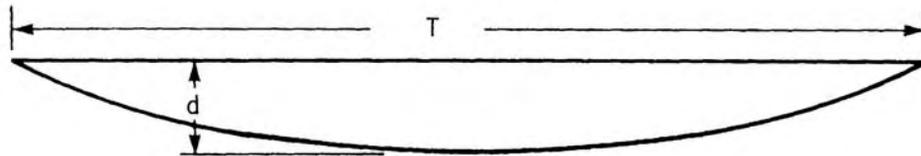
CHART G-2
V-Shape



Cross-Sectional Area (A) = Zd^2
Top Width (T) = $2dZ$

Hydraulic Radius (R) = $\frac{Zd}{2\sqrt{Z^2 + 1}}$

Parabolic Shape

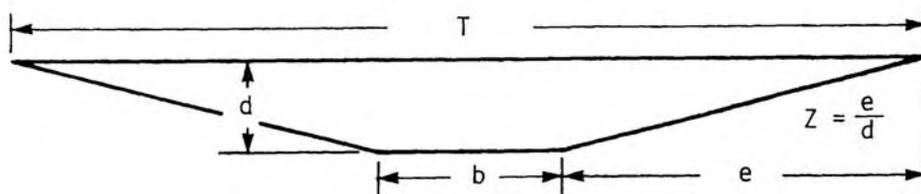


Cross-Sectional Area (A) = $\frac{2}{3} Td$

Top Width (T) = $\frac{1.5 A}{d}$

Hydraulic Radius = $\frac{T^2 d}{1.5T^2 + 4d^2}$

Trapezoidal Shape



Cross-Sectional Area (A) = $bd + Zd^2$
Top Width (T) = $b + 2dZ$

Hydraulic Radius = $\frac{bd + Zd^2}{b + 2d\sqrt{Z^2 + 1}}$

Channel geometries for v-shaped, parabolic and trapezoidal channels.
Source: Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual,
NC Department of NRCD, Land Quality Section, September 1988.

CHART G-3

Maximum Allowable Design Velocities for Vegetated Channels¹

Typical Channel Slope	Soil Characteristics ²	Grass Lining	Permissible Velocity ³ for Established Grass Lining (ft/sec)
0-5%	Easily Erodible Non-plastic (sand & silts)	Bermudagrass	5.0
		Tall Fescue	4.5
		Bahiagrass	4.5
		Kentucky bluegrass	4.5
		Grass-legume mixture	3.5
	Erosion Resistant Plastic (clay mixes)	Bermudagrass	6.0
		Tall Fescue	5.5
		Bahiagrass	5.5
		Kentucky bluegrass	5.5
		Grass-legume mixture	4.5
5-10%	Easily Erodible Non-plastic (sands & silts)	Bermudagrass	4.5
		Tall Fescue	4.0
		Bahiagrass	4.0
		Kentucky bluegrass	4.0
		Grass-legume mixture	3.0
	Erosion Resistant Plastic (clay mixtures)	Bermudagrass	5.5
		Tall Fescue	5.0
		Bahiagrass	5.0
		Kentucky bluegrass	5.0
		Grass-legume mixture	3.5
>10%	Easily Erodible Non-plastic (sand & silts)	Bermudagrass	3.5
		Tall Fescue	2.5
		Bahiagrass	2.5
		Kentucky bluegrass	2.5
	Erosion Resistant Plastic (clay mixtures)	Bermudagrass	4.5
		Tall Fescue	3.5
		Bahiagrass	3.5
		Kentucky bluegrass	3.5

* Source: USDA-SCS Modified, Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual, NC. Department of Natural Resources and Community Development Land Quality Section, May 1994.

NOTE: ¹Permissible Velocity based on 10-yr storm peak runoff.

²Soil erodibility based on resistance to soil movement from concentrated flowing water.

³Before grass is established, permissible velocity is determined by the type of temporary liner used.

CHART G-4

Retardance Classification for Vegetal Cover

Retardance	Cover	Condition
A	Reed canarygrass	Excellent stand, tall (average 36")
	Weeping lovegrass	Excellent stand., tall (average 30")
B	Tall Fescue	Good stand, uncut, (average 18")
	Bermudagrass	Good stand, tall, (average 12")
	Grass-legume mixture (tall fescue, red fescue, sericea lespedeza)	Good stand, uncut
	Grass mixture (timothy, smooth bromegrass or orchardgrass)	Good stand, uncut (average 20")
	Sericea lespedeza	Good stand, not woody, tall (average 19")
	Reed canarygrass	Good stand, cut (average 12-15")
	Alfalfa	Good stand, uncut (average 11")
C	Tall Fescue	Good stand, (8-12")
	Bermudagrass	Good stand, cut (average 6")
	Bahiagrass	Good stand, uncut (6-8")
	Grass-legume mixture summer (orchardgrass, redtop and annual lespedeza)	Good stand, uncut (6-8")
	Centipede grass	Very dense cover (average 6")
	Kentucky bluegrass	Good stand, headed (6-12")
	Redtop	Good stand, uncut (15-20")
D	Tall Fescue	Good stand, cut (34")
	Bermudagrass	Good stand, cut (2.5")
	Bahiagrass	Good stand, cut (3-4")
	Grass-legume mixture fall-spring (orchard- grass, redtop and annual lespedeza)	Good stand, uncut (4-5")
	Red fescue	Good stand, uncut (12-18")
	Centipede grass	Good stand, cut (34")
	Kentucky bluegrass	Good stand, cut (3-4")
E	Bermudagrass	Good stand, cut (1.5")
	Bermudagrass	Burned stubble

Modified from: USDA-SCS. 1969, Engineering Field Manual

2. Riprap Lined Channels

The important consideration in design of riprap linings is that the velocity is not so great that the stones become dislodged.

Chart G-5 is provided to determine Manning's 'n' coefficient at different depths of flow.

The method in choosing the size riprap and depth is trial and error. The basic equation for use in design is:

$$\text{Equation } T = (y) (d) (s)$$

where:

T is shear stress in lb/ft,
y is 62.4 lb/ft, density of water,
d is flow depth in feet, and
s is channel slope.

The value of "d" is determined by the procedure described above or by using the nomograph for trapezoidal channels. Once the depth is determined, the assumed roughness coefficient should be checked with Chart 0-5. With the known channel slope, s, compute T using the above equation. This computed value should be less than T as shown in Chart G-6.

CHART G-5

Manning's Roughness Coefficient

Lining Category	Lining Type	n-value		
		n-value for Depth Ranges		
		0-0.5 ft (0-15cm)	0.5-2.0 ft (15—60cm)	>2.0 ft (>60cm)
Rigid	Concrete	0.015	0.013	0.013
	Grouted Riprap	0.040	0.030	0.028
	Stone Masonry	0.042	0.032	0.030
	Soil Cement	0.025	0.022	0.020
	Asphalt	0.018	0.016	0.016
Unlined	Bare Soil	0.023	0.020	0.020
	Rock Cut	0.045	0.035	0.025
Gravel Riprap	1-inch (2.5-cm) D ₅₀	0.044	0.033	0.003
	2-inch (5-cm) D ₅₀	0.066	0.041	0.034
Rock Riprap	6-inch (15-cm) D ₅₀	0.104	0.069	0.035
	12-inch (30-cm) D ₅₀	--	0.078	0.040

CHART G-6

Permissible Shear Stresses for Riprap and Temporary Liners

<u>Lining Category</u>	<u>Lining Type</u>	<u>Permissible Unit Shear Stress, Td (lb/ft²)</u>
Temporary	Woven Paper Net	0.15
	Jute Net	0.45
	Fiberglass Roving:	
	Single	0.60
	Double	0.85
	Straw with Net	1.45
	Curled Wood Mat	1.55
	Synthetic Mat	2.00
Gravel	d ₅₀ Stone Size (inches)	
	1	0.33
	2	0.67
	3	2.00
Rock Riprap	6	3.00
	9	4.00
	12	5.00
	15	6.00
	18	7.00
	21	7.80
	24	8.00

* Source: Erosion and Sediment~ Control Planning and Design Manual, NC Department of NRCD, Land Quality Section, December 1993.

3. Alternative Liners

When the velocity in an open channel exceeds permissible velocities for vegetation shown in Chart G-3, it becomes necessary to use a permanent protective lining on the slopes and bottom. Riprap linings have been discussed in the previous section, and does provide a very economical and dependable protection for most flows if sized properly.

There are several other linings available which may be preferred due to cost, appearance, maintenance, and dependability. Among some available sources are fabric-form, concrete paving, gabions, brick or a combination of any of these, i.e. paved channels with grassed side slopes, if site conditions warrant.

Chart G-7 provides the Manning’s roughness coefficient “n” to assist in the analysis of open channels.

CHART G7

<u>Values of “n” in Manning Formula</u>	
<u>Lining</u>	<u>n</u>
Brick	.013-015
Concrete	
Trowel Finish	.013
Float Finish	.015
Unfinished	.017
Concrete, Bottom Float Finished, with Sides of	
Dressed Stone	.017
Random Stone	.020
Cement Rubble Masonry	.025
Dry Rubble or Riprap	.030
Fabric-Form (Uniform Cross-Section)	.015
Fabric-Form (Filter Points)	.025-030
Gabions	.030-035
Gravel, Bottom, with Sides of	
Random Stone	.023
Riprap	.033

*Sources: F. E. McJunkin and PA Vesilind, “Practical Hydraulics for the Public Works Engineer”, Reprinted from Public Works Magazine

Fabric Forms for Concrete, Tri-State Consultants, 1988
 The Rena Mattress, Maccaferri Gabions, 1983

H. STORM WATER DETENTION PONDS

1. Design Objective

Storm water detention ponds shall be designed such that the peak discharge from the site in the 10-year storm after development shall not exceed the peak discharge from the same site in the 10-year storm prior to development. An emergency spillway shall be provided such that it can handle the 50-year storm assuming the principal spillway is obstructed or not operating properly. The elevation of the top of the dam shall be a minimum of 0.5 feet above the peak water surface elevation for the 50-year storm.

2. Submission Requirements

The information outlined below shall accompany storm water detention facilities designs submitted for approval based on the size of watershed.

- a. Information required for facilities where the watershed is one acre or greater.
 1. A plan showing the drainage area of the watershed in sufficient detail to confirm the area and composition.
 2. A site plan showing the detention basin with complete construction details.
 3. Detailed computations of design discharges, including the peak 10-year discharge prior to development, the peak 50-year discharge after development, and the peak 10-year discharge after development.
 4. Detailed computations of the stage-storage relationship, including a graph or table of water-surface elevation versus volume of storage.
 5. Detailed computations of the stage-discharge relationship, including a graph or table of water-surface elevation versus total discharge through the outlet system.
 6. Detailed computations of flood routing for the 10-year storm, in suitable time increments, including a table showing at least the four columns of elapsed time, accumulated storage, stage, and discharge.
 7. Supporting calculations for the arrangement of the emergency spillway, particularly showing the determination of the elevations of the crest and top of dam, and the length of the spillway.
 8. Detailed calculations for energy dissipaters design and outlet velocities for the 10-year storm.
 9. Evaluation of composite hydrographs in downstream system, when required by the City.

- b. Information required for facilities where the watershed is less than one (1) acre.
 1. A plan showing the drainage area of the watershed in sufficient detail to confirm the area and composition.
 2. A site plan showing the detention basin with complete construction details.
 3. Computations of the peak 10-year discharge prior to development and the 10-year discharge after development. The designer should also evaluate the system for the peak 50-year discharge after development.
 4. Calculations of available storage and outlet structure hydraulics necessary to show that the post development discharge will be no greater than the predevelopment discharge based on a 10-year storm.
 5. Calculations for energy dissipation of the outlet of the system for the 10-year storm.
 6. The volume shall be calculated using the equation for estimated volume of required storage as written in Section H.3.

3. **System Analysis**

The methods described below are the methods that will be used by the City to review the design. Other methods may be used by the designer to design or to analyze the pond and system. In cases where the designer proposes to use computer programs or desktop methods not recognizable by the City Engineer, the designer shall show that the pond adequately performs according to the following analysis.

a. **Hydrograph Formulation**

The three important aspects of the design hydrograph are the magnitude of the peak discharge the volume of run-off (area under the hydrograph), and the hydrograph shape. A simplified method of hydrograph formulation, based on these aspects, acceptable for analyzing detention pond designs from watersheds of less than one square mile. (For background, see Malcom, 1987.) For larger watersheds, detailed hydrologic modeling shall be done by accepted methods. The simplified method for hydrograph formulation is:

1. **Estimate the Peak**- The peak discharge of the hydrograph of the 10-year storm may be estimated by applying the Rational method as described in Section E, with the following provisions:
 - (a) Determine C, the composite run-off coefficient, in the conventional way
 - (b) Compute I, the applicable rainfall intensity (in/hr), for the 10-year storm at the appropriate time of concentration. Determine time of concentration by the Kirpich equation Determine the rainfall intensity by the equation or graph given in Section E.
 - (c) Measure the watershed area contributory to the pond as delineated on a suitable topographic map.

2. **Estimate the Volume of Run-off**- The volume of run-off may be estimated by applying the run-off estimation methods of the Soil Conservation Service to an appropriate design storm. In this application, the design storm is taken to be the 10-year storm of six hours duration, which is a depth of 4.8 inches in Wilmington. (The six-hour duration is selected in this method to yield a hydrograph comparable in size to that produced in SCS TR-55, Corps of Engineers HEC-1 and similar methods.) The total volume of the run-off is the run-off depth multiplied by the watershed area The volume estimate may be made as follows:
 - (a) Estimate the effective SCS Curve Number for the watershed under fixture development conditions. Refer to the SCS Soil Survey of New Hanover County to determine the soil types distributed in the watershed. Use Tables H-1 and H-2 to estimate the effective Curve Number for the watershed from observed soil types and cover conditions, or use SCS publications. Calculate a composite CN if the site should require one.
 - (b) From the six-hour, 10-year rainfall and the applicable SCS Curve Number, compute the run-off depth by the SCS procedure:

TABLE H-1
Hydrologic Soil Groups for Local Soil Types

Map Symbol	Hydrologic Soil Group	Soil Type
Ba	D	Bayboro
Be	A	Baymeade
Bh	*	Baymeade-Urban Land Complex
Bp	*	Borrow Pit
Cr	C	Craven
DO	D	Dorovan
JO	D	Johnston
Ke	A	Kenansville
Kr	A	Kureb
Ku	*	Kureb-Urban Land Complex
La	A	Lakeland
Le	B/D	Leon
Lo	*	Leon-Urban Land Complex
Ls	C	Lynchburg
Ly	B/D	Lynn Haven
Mp	*	Mine Pits
Mu	A/D	Murville
Nh	A	Newhan
No	B	Norfolk
On	B	Onslow
Pm	D	Pamlico
Pn	B/D	Pantego
Ra	B/D	Rains
Rm	A	Rimini
Se	A/D	Seagate
Sb	*	Seagate-Urban Land Complex
St	C	Stallings
TM	*	Tidal Marsh
To	C	Torhunta
Ur	*	Urban Land
Wa	A	Wakulla
Wo	B/D	Woodington
Wr	C	Wrightsboro

* Requires field Judgment

A/D Refers to drained/undrained.

Sources: Urban Hydrology for Small Watersheds, USDA-SCS, 210-V1-TR-55, Second Ed., June 1986.

TABLE H-2
SCS Curve Numbers for Various Cover Conditions

Cover Description	Hydraulic Soil Group				Percent Impervious
	A	B	C	D	
Fully Developed Urban Areas					
Open Space					
Poor Condition (<50% grass)	68	79	86	89	
Fair Condition (50-75% grass)	49	69	79	84	
Good Condition (>75% grass)	39	61	74	80	
Impervious areas					
Pavement, roofs	98	98	98	98	
Gravel	76	85	89	91	
Dirt	72	82	87	89	
Urban Districts					
Commercial and Business	89	92	94	95	85
Industrial	81	92	94	95	72
Residential areas (by lot size)					
1/8 acre (town houses)	77	85	90	92	65
1/4 acre	61	75	83	87	38
1/3 acre	57	72	81	86	30
1/2 acre	54	70	80	85	25
1 acre	51	68	79	84	20
2 acres	46	65	77	82	12
Agricultural areas					
Pasture, grassland					
Poor	68	79	86	89	
Fair	49	69	79	84	
Good	39	61	74	80	
Meadow (mowed)	30	58	71	78	
Brush					
Poor	48	67	77	83	
Fair	35	56	70	77	
Good	30	48	65	73	
Woods and Grass (Orchard)					
Poor	57	73	82	86	
Fair	43	65	76	82	
Good	32	58	72	79	
Woods					
Poor	45	66	77	83	
Fair	36	60	73	79	
Good	30	55	70	77	
Row Crops, straight, good	67	78	85	89	
Row Crops, contoured, good	65	75	82	86	
Small Grain, good	63	75	83	87	
Farmsteads	59	74	82	86	

Source:SCS TR-55 (SCS, 1986)

Determine the ultimate soil storage capacity, S:

$$S = \frac{1000}{CN} - 10$$

Determine run-off:

$$RUNOFF = \frac{(P - 0.2S)^2}{P + 0.8S}$$

in which P is the six hour, 10-year storm; use 4.8 inches for Wilmington

3. Set the shape of the hydrograph.

The shape is determined by a pattern function that will preserve the estimated peak and estimated volume of run-off. The time to peak, T_p , is computed by the following expression:

$$T_p = \frac{43.5 * Area * Runoff}{Q_p}$$

in which run-off is the SCS run-off depth in inches, area is the watershed area in acres, Q_p is the estimated peak discharge in cfs, and T_p is the time to peak *in* minutes.

When the values of the peak, Q_p , and the time to peak, T_p , have been set, the discharge at any time T may be determined by the pattern function (a step function):

For time T from zero to $1.25 * T_p$:

$$Q = \frac{Q_p}{2} \left[1 - \cos \left(\frac{\pi t}{T_p} \right) \right]$$

For times greater than $1.25 * T_p$:

$$Q = 4.34 Q_p \exp \left[-1.3 \left(\frac{t}{T_p} \right) \right]$$

in the step function, Q is the hydrograph discharge at the time of interest, t, in minutes. Q_p is the estimated peak discharge in cfs, and T_p is the calculated time to peak in minutes. It is important to note that the argument of the cosine is in radians. If the calculations are carried out in a manual calculator, it shall be set to calculate in radians mode.

4. Estimating Required Storage:

The required storage can be estimated using the following equation:

$$S = \frac{(Q_p - Q_a) \times T_p \times 1.39 \times 60}{2}$$

in which

S = Estimated storm water storage required (cu ft)

Q_p = Estimated peak flow (cfs) (Post development flow rate)

Q_a = Allowable maximum outflow (cfs) (Pre-development flow rate)

T_p = Estimated time to peak (min)

On sites one acre or more, the system shall be routed to verify, sufficient storage is provided to meet the design criteria. Sites less than one acre are encouraged to be routed but will not be required.

b. Stage-Storage Formulation

The stage-storage function represents the most important aspects of the size and shape of the storage container. In the submission documents, it is presented as a graph of water surface elevation versus storage volume. Plotted values are normally computed from the topographic map of the detention pond. Areas of contours within the pond are measured. From these, the incremental volumes of water storage between the contours are computed, then accumulated to yield points of volume stored below each contour. Orderly supporting calculations shall be submitted with the stage-storage plot.

The stage-storage relation can be formulated as a graph or as a mathematical expression. The latter is more useful in this application because it includes both water volume information and surface area information as they relate to depth in a pond of complex shape. Stage is the depth of water relative to the bottom of the pond. Storage is the volume of storage at a given stage.

A stage-storage function may be formulated for a given basin as follows:

Compute a set of representative storage volumes at various stages by applying the average-end method of volume computation vertically to the set of known contours that express the basin topography. Arrange them as a list of stages, Z , and associated storages, S . If one plots the logarithms of storage versus the logarithms of stage, the resulting graph is usually remarkably a straight line, even the apparently complex topography of a natural draw or swale. This observation leads to the power-curve representation described below.

The expression for the stage-storage function is:

$$S = K_s Z^b$$

in which

Z = Stage (ft above the pond bottom)

S = Storage (Cu ft)

K_s and b are constants to be determined for the basin of interest.

There are two reasonable ways to determine K_s and b from the stage-storage list. One is to use a linear regression routine applied to the logarithms of the data and back calculate the constants, K_s and b , from the regression results. The regression procedure is preferred because the shape information contained in a number of contours can be used to set the constants.

The other method is to obtain an approximation of the constants algebraically by using stage and storage values from two of the contours. It is usually best to select one point near the maximum expected water-surface elevation and the other at about mid-depth. The precision of the result can be tested and improved by trial and error.

Select two points on the stage-storage function as described above. Let the lower be point number one and the upper be point number two.

Estimate the exponent:

$$b = \frac{\ln \left[\frac{S_2}{S_1} \right]}{\ln \left[\frac{Z_2}{Z_1} \right]}$$

Estimate the coefficient:

$$K_s = \frac{S_2}{Z_2^b}$$

in which **Z** = Stage of the specified point (ft above the pond bottom)

S = Storage of the specified point (cu ft)

K_s and **b** are constants determined for the basin of interest.

Test the validity of the function by substitution of known values of storage to estimate the associated stages. If the stages agree acceptably with the actual stages (say within 0.1 ft or so), the expression is valid. For that check, the expression can be reformulated as

$$Z = \left[\frac{S}{K_s} \right]^{\frac{1}{b}}$$

in which the variables are the same as above.

Reference: (North Carolina Erosion and Sediment Control Planning and Design Manual, pp. 8.07.29 (rev 12/93), 8.07.30 (rev 12/93))

c. Stage Discharge Function

The stage-discharge function represents the most important aspects of the hydraulic behavior of the outlet system. Because there are many combinations of acceptable outlet devices, there can be no simple specification of permissible devices. The designer, having verified through analysis that the proposed outlet system is satisfactory, is expected to present the stage-discharge function as a graph of water-surface elevation versus outflow from the system. Detailed drawings of the outlet configuration and supporting hydraulic calculations shall be submitted with the stage-discharge plot.

Commonly, outlet devices are constructed as interactive systems of pipes and weirs. Pipes acting wider inlet control can be represented in calculations by the orifice equation, if the inlet is fully submerged, or by the charts published by the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA, 1985). Should the orifice equation be used, acceptable values of coefficient of discharge may be taken from Table H-3.

TABLE H-3
Values of Coefficient of Discharge (Cd)
For Pipes under Inlet Control

Reinforced Concrete	
Socket end flush with headwall	0.65
Socket end projecting from fill	0.64
Square edge in headwall	0.59
Corrugated metal pipe	
End Flush with headwall	0.59
End mitered to conform to slope	0.52
End projecting from fill	0.51

If the outlet of the pipe system can be submerged in the 10-year storm, the system shall be analyzed under outlet control, including routing, to confirm that operation is satisfactory. The FHWA outlet-control charts (FHWA, 1985) can be used as references in the analysis.

Spillway components used as weirs can be analyzed as sharp-crested weirs, with weir coefficient 3.3, or broad-crested weirs, with weir coefficient 3.0, as appropriate. Other weirs may be used provided the designer justifies the analysis of behavior by authoritative reference.

Designers are encouraged to exercise innovative planning in detention pond design to produce facilities that are effective, attractive, and easily maintained. In the interest of efficiency in design and review, designers of unusual ponds are encouraged to confer with the City Engineer early in the design process for a preliminary reaction

d. Flood Routing

The hydrograph of the 10-year storm shall be routed through the detention pond to verify that the detention objective is met.

To execute this method, one first formulates the three sets of source data described above. Then two of the sets of source data, state-storage and stage-discharge, are combined to form a plot for function called the storage-indication curve. The storage indication curve is a plot of a certain expression, twice the storage divided by the time increment to which is added the outflow, versus the outflow. The time increment shall be selected prior to formulating the storage indication curve.

Routing of the flood proceeds by time steps. At each step in time through the passage of the inflow hydrograph through the reservoir, the outflow is computed. The result is a list of values of outflow at stated time, i.e. the outflow hydrograph.

Virtually all modern texts on the subjects of hydrology or water resources engineering include a treatment of the storage-indication method or one of its variations with an illustrative example.

Other routing methods, including commercially available software, may be acceptable provided they are recognizable by the City Engineer. The test of acceptability is verification by Chain Saw Routing.

The City's preferred method of routing is the Chain Saw Method as presented in "Elements of Urban Stormwater Design" by H. Rooney Malcom, P.E. Other methods of routing, such as the storage-indication method, are acceptable.

I. INFILTRATION SYSTEM

The City encourages the use of innovative techniques and designs which will help reduce the amount of storm water runoff getting into drainage ways and streams. These facilities shall be designed for the runoff produced from the 10-year storm and checked for the 50-year storm. Detailed drawings, substantiating data, calculations and specifications shall be submitted for designs of this nature. The use of infiltration systems has not been a frequent technique for control of storm water in the City. However, minimum standards have been established and are included in this design guide.

1. Definition

An infiltration system is defined as a storm water management facility that is designed to let storm water move or infiltrate into the soil. Types of systems shall include but not be limited to infiltration basins, swales, subsurface galleries and vegetative filters.

2. Vegetation

Refer to Section D.4.b for minimum vegetative requirements that may apply.

3. Subsurface Information

The minimum distance between the bottom of the infiltration system and the surface of the seasonal high ground water table shall be two feet. Soil types and infiltration rates shall be determined in order to size the infiltration area and assess the feasibility of this type of infiltration system. This information shall be submitted as part of the storm water permit application package.

4. Storage Capacity

The infiltration system shall be designed to provide storage equivalent to the runoff volume from the 10-year storm minus the volume infiltrated during the storm.

Infiltration systems may be used in combination with other systems which allow the pre-developed runoff rate to leave the site.

5. Overflow

An emergency outlet or overflow device shall be designed such that in the event of a system failure (i.e. storm water will not infiltrate) during the 10-year storm, storm water will be conveyed to an existing drainage way or structure and not damage property. An emergency outlet or overflow device for the 50 year storm shall be provided (i.e. piped system, driveway, overland flow, etc.).

6. Access

Adequate access shall be provided for inspection and maintenance of the system in the form of cleanouts, grit chambers and inspection ports, etc.

7. Materials

The following list is the minimum requirements for materials used in infiltration systems.

Bedding Stone .No. 57 Washed Stone or manufacturer recommended bedding material.

(Geotextile Fabric- This fabric should be used to wrap the sides, bottom and top of the stone that surrounds the infiltration structures in order to prevent intrusion by fines. The top should be overlapped a minimum of 12 inches. Material should be recommended by the manufacturer.

Infiltration Chambers .Design should incorporate necessary loads that area of infiltration is expected to be subject to.

J. CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS

1. Materials for Pipe Collection System

In general, when the pipe system is to be deeded to the City for maintenance and ownership, it shall be reinforced concrete pipe. Collection systems to remain privately owned may be corrugated metal, concrete, or other. The City realizes there may be situations where corrugated metal pipe is the better alternative due to height restrictions, etc., such as when arch or elliptical shapes are needed. When the developer prefers to pipe a ditch which requires larger than a 54-inch pipe,

corrugated metal pipe may be considered. The City Engineer shall review and approved these alternatives on a case-by-case basis.

Pipe for storm water collection systems shall meet the requirements set forth in the Materials section of Chapter II of these standards and the following minimum specifications:

a. Reinforced Concrete Pipe

Reinforced concrete pipe shall conform to ASTM C-76, Class III, latest revision. Joint material shall be Butyl Rubber CPS-210 as manufactured by Concrete Products Supply Company or equal.

b. Corrugated Metal Storm Drain Pipe

Corrugated steel pipe/pipe arch shall be of an approved gauge and shall be frilly bituminous coated with a paved invert. For pipe sizes in excess of 60-inch corrugated steel, pipe/pipe arch shall be filly bituminous coated and one hundred (1000/a) percent paved and shall meet the applicable requirements of AASHTO M-36.

c. Pipe in Detention/Retention Ponds

Pipe used for detention/retention pond outlet structures shall meet the minimum specifications above or shall be Polyvinyl chloride pipe or aluminum pipe meeting the following specifications:

1. PVC pipe shall be ASTM D-1785, Schedule 40 with solvent welded joints, push-gasket joints and PVC fittings.
2. Aluminum pipe shall conform to AASHTO M-196 and shall have a gauge thickness determined in accordance with appropriate design standards.

d. Perforated Pipe

Perforated metal pipe for use as sub-drain shall be 6-inch galvanized Helcore pipe or equal. PVC pipe shall be 6-inch ASTM D-1785, Schedule 40. Perforated corrugated polyethylene tubing for use as sub-drain shall be in conformance with ASTM F-405.

e. Alternative Pipe Materials

Other pipe materials may be considered on a case-by-case basis and shall be approved by the City Engineer before use.

f. Precast Concrete Manholes

Precast concrete manholes shall be minimum 4' - 0" inside diameter, and shall have a monolithic extended concrete base. Manhole shall have minimum 5-inch wall thickness and be constructed of four thousand (4,000) psi concrete. Manholes with diameters greater than 4'-0" are not required to have extended bases. All precast manholes must have 12" of stone bedding. Inverts shall be formed to provide a definite channel of flow through the structure.

g. Brick for Manholes and Catch Basins

Brick for manholes and catch basins shall be whole, solid, uniform concrete or clay brick with straight, even faces free of injurious defects.

h. Storm Drain Manhole Steps

Storm drain manhole steps shall be Dewey Bros. No. MH. ST. I8A, Neenah Foundry Co., No. R-1980-I, Vulcan Foundry No. 1999-6, or equal. Precast manholes shall have steps cast in walls during fabrication.

i. Gray Iron Castings

Gray iron castings used for manhole frames and covers and inlet frames, grates and covers shall conform to the requirements for Gray Iron Castings of the American Society of Testing Materials. The castings shall be true to pattern and free from cracks, gas holes, flaws and other defects. All surfaces shall be thoroughly coated with a spray asphalt coating with no asbestos material. If, during handling of castings, the coating is damaged, it shall be recoated to provide a complete covering. Material shall be an asphaltic solution with no asbestos. Surface shall be smooth and free from runners, fins and other cast-on pieces. Castings shall be as specified on the applicable City Standard Details.

2. Installation

a. Bedding

Excavation for storm drainage pipe shall be to the lines and grades as shown on the plans. The bedding shall be shaped in accordance with a Class "C" bedding as shown on City Standard Detail SD 2-14. The bedding shall provide a firm foundation of uniform density along the entire length of pipe. Recesses shall be made to accommodate bells and joints. Where unstable soils are encountered, a minimum 6-inch thick bedding of stone shall be placed. The stone shall be uniformly graded from 3/4 inch to No. 4 in accordance with ASTM C-33. Care shall be taken to prevent undercutting in suitable soil. Areas undercut shall be filled with suitable soil and compacted to 95% of maximum density at optimum moisture content as determined by ASTM D 1557 Standard Test Method.

h. Laying and Joints

Storm drain pipe shall be laid to the line and grade as shown on the approved plans. Joints shall be as specified in the Materials Section and as recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Joints shall be sealed tightly to assure prevention of infiltration of groundwater, soil and other undesirable material.

c. Backfill

Backfill for storm drain pipe and appurtenances shall be free from all perishable and objectionable material including all rubbish, forms, blocks, etc. Backfill shall be placed around and above the pipe and solidly tamped to prevent movement of the pipe. Backfill shall then be placed and compacted to 95 percent as

determined by ASTM D 1557 Standard Test Method in layers not to exceed 12 inches.

d. Manholes

1. Brick manholes shall be constructed of good hard burned brick laid in with cement mortar. All brick, when set, shall be pushed to a firm seating in mortar and all joints well filled and spaded. All inlet and outlet pipes shall be placed prior to building the manhole walls and care shall be taken to ensure a tight joint around such pipe where it passes through the walls. Manholes shall be plastered with cement mortar on the outside to a thickness of three-quarters (3/4) of an inch. All manholes shall conform to the City Standard Detail SD-2.03.
2. Precast manholes shall be installed as per the manufacturer's recommendations. Manholes shall be set with 6-inch extended bases and a minimum 12-inch stone bedding. The tops shall be set to grade using a maximum of two 6-inch adjustment rings and casting. When pipe is laid into manholes, a watertight seal shall be provided at opening using concrete grout.

e. Catch Basins

Catch basins shall be constructed in accordance with City Standard Details D2.01 and 2.02. All catch basins shall be of the open throat type unless otherwise permitted. The base of the catch basins shall have a minimum thickness of six (6) inches of Class A concrete. All pipes shall be placed on the concrete base prior to beginning brick work. The brick work shall be brought up snugly around the pipes such that a tight connection is obtained.

f. Precast Catch Basins

Precast catch basins shall be installed per the manufacturer's recommendations. Precast catch basins shall be sized properly to receive City standard inlet castings. Field adjustments to accommodate the City's standard inlet casting will not be allowed. A 6-inch thick concrete base with 6-inch extended sides shall be constructed with a smooth, level surface. The precast basin shall be carefully placed on the clean surface at specified grades. Openings between wall and pipe shall be sealed with hydraulic cement to ensure a leak-free basin.

g. Detention/Retention Outlet Systems

Outlet structures for detention/retention facilities shall be provided with suitable foundation and support. Pipe systems shall be bedded as required or other suitable support provided. Outlet structures shall be properly anchored to prevent flotation.

K. MAINTENANCE

1. Responsibility

In order for the storm water management system to work properly at all times, it will be necessary to maintain all elements of the system. A system includes open channels, catch basins, pipes, ponds, outlet controls, etc. Especially important are vegetative lined systems and silt or debris retaining devices.

The City will not maintain privately owned detention/retention systems. Approval and designation of a system as private requires that the system be maintained by the owner so that the intended function of the system is unimpaired.

In order for the City of Wilmington to ensure an acceptable level of maintenance of the facilities, the following will be required to obtain approval.

a. Acceptable Entities

An acceptable entity shall be responsible for maintenance of the storm water management system. The City of Wilmington considers the following entities acceptable:

1. Governmental Units and Private Corporations

If the entity is a governmental unit or private corporation, written proof shall be supplied in an appropriate form stating that the entity will operate and maintain the facilities.

2. Non-profit corporations including homeowners associations, property owners associations, condominium associations or associations of unit owners.

The property owner or developer as applicant for site plan or subdivision plat approval is normally not acceptable as a responsible entity, especially when the property is to be sold to various third parties. However, the property owner may be acceptable if the property will be retained by the owner and will be rented, leased, or operated by the owner. The property owner shall supply evidence acceptable to the City Attorney that he will operate and maintain the facilities.

b. Powers

If a homeowners association, property owners association, or association of unit owners, is proposed for maintenance of the facilities, the applicant shall submit draft Articles of Incorporation, Declarations of Protective Covenants, Deed Restrictions, Declarations of Unit Ownership or By-laws.

1. The association shall have the general power to:
 - (a) Own and convey property;
 - (b) Operate and maintain common property;
 - (c) Establish rules and regulations;
 - (d) Assess members and enforce said assessments;
 - (e) Sue and be sued;
 - (t) Contract for services to provide operation and maintenance;
 - (g) All lot owners, all home owners or unit owners shall be members of the Association; and
 - (h) The Association shall exist in perpetuity

c. Claims of Maintenance

The Articles of Incorporation, Declaration of Protective Covenants, Deed Restrictions, Declaration of Unit Ownership or By-laws shall set forth the following:

1. That it is the responsibility of the Association to operate and maintain that portion of the storm water management system not maintained by the City. A description specifying the areas of responsibility shall be included. These areas also shall be indicated on the subdivision plat or on the site plan on non-subdivision projects.
2. A maintenance plan with schedules and work generally following the minimum guidelines provided in this section.
3. A statement that those areas to be maintained by the Association are owned by the Association or that they are common areas or common property.
4. The method of assessment and collection for operation and maintenance costs of the storm water management system.
5. The Declaration of Covenants be in effect for a minimum of 25 years with provision for renewal in accordance with law.

d. Phasing Development

If a property owner's association or association of unit owners is proposed for a development that will be constructed in phases or that will be added to in the future; the organization shall be created with the ability to accept future phases into the organization in order to ensure the continued operation and maintenance of the storm water management system for the development.

2. Operation and Maintenance for Storm water Detention/Retention Facilities

General

Storm water runoff is normally collected by a system of open channels and/or a piped collection system in the developed areas and by sheet flow and swales in the landscaped areas. In order for the system to operate in the correct manner periodic maintenance will be required.

Maintenance

As a minimum the following maintenance items shall be performed:

a. Detention Pond:

1. Grassing around any detention/retention facility shall be maintained to prevent the erosion of these areas. The areas shall be periodically mowed to maintain the aesthetic quality of the site and to prevent a reduction in capacity of the storm water system. Grass on slopes should not exceed a height of 15 inches.
2. Open ditches shall be kept free of undesirable growth and mowed or maintained to the design cross-section and area as shown on the Storm Water Management Plan approved by the City and on file in the office of the City Engineer. Growth on the slopes and bottom should not exceed a height of 8 inches.
3. Landscaping of the area around the detention/retention facility shall not reduce the capacity or binder operation and maintenance of the storm water system
4. The facility shall be routinely checked for and cleared of all accumulation of debris and the detention/retention facility outlet structure cleared of any blockage that is present
5. Storm drainage pipes and culverts shall be periodically inspected for debris and sand build-up. They shall be cleaned as necessary to provide for the free conveyance of storm water as designed.
6. The detention/retention facility shall be maintained at the design depth as shown on the Storm Water Management Plan approved by the City and on file in the office of the City Engineer. The pond shall be inspected on a regular basis but not less than every six months. Debris and sedimentation shall be removed if:
 - (a) The primary outlet capacity is impaired and/or
 - (b) The depth of the facility is more than one foot above the original facility depth or facility volume is reduced by 25% of the design impoundment volume.

7. Landscaping shall be maintained to ensure that landscape materials live and prosper.

b. Oversized Pipe:

1. The facility shall be routinely checked for and cleared of all accumulation of debris and the detention facility outlet structure cleared of any blockage.
2. Storm drainage pipes and structures shall be periodically inspected for debris and sediment build-up. They shall be cleaned as necessary to provide for the conveyance of storm water as designed.
3. The pipes installed to provide detention shall be kept free of sediment buildup. The detention facility shall be maintained in accordance with the Stormwater Management Plan approved by the City and on file in the office of the City Engineer. The pipe shall be inspected on a regular basis but not less than every six months. Debris and sedimentation shall be removed if
 - (a) The storage volume is reduced by 25% or more, and/or;
 - (b) The sediment and/or debris restricts the free flow of storm water.

c. Infiltration System:

1. The facility shall be routinely checked for and cleared of all accumulation of debris and the detention facility outlet structure cleared of any blockage.
2. Storm drainage pipes and structures shall be periodically inspected for debris and sediment build-up. They shall be cleaned as necessary to provide for the conveyance of storm water as designed.
3. The pipes and stone installed to provide infiltration shall be kept free of sediment build-up. The infiltration facility shall be maintained in accordance with the Stormwater Management Plan approved by the City and on file in the office of the City Engineer. The pipe shall be inspected on a regular basis but not less than every six months. Debris and sedimentation shall be removed if
 - (a) The infiltration capacity is impaired and/or,
 - (b) The sediment and/or debris restricts the free flow of storm water into the infiltration system and surrounding soils.
4. The infiltration system shall be removed and replaced with new material when the system no longer permits the storm water to freely infiltrate into the surrounding soils.

CHECKLIST FOR THE CITY OF WILMINGTON STORM WATER STANDARDS

APPLICATION REQUIREMENTS

- Application Form
- Application Fee
- Storm water Management Plan
 - Plan
 - Title Block
 - Development Name
 - Owner
 - Design Firm
 - Authorized Reg. Prof.'s Seal, Signature & Date
 - Legend
 - North Arrow
 - Vicinity Map
 - Scale
 - Sheet Number
 - Date
 - Revision Numbers and Dates
 - Street Address of building(s) on site
 - Topographical Features
 - Original Contours at Dot more than 2-foot intervals
 - Existing Drainage Components (streams, ponds, watersheds, etc.)
 - Property Boundary Lines
 - Existing Streets, Buildings, Utilities. etc.
 - 100 -year Flood Line and Floodway and Building Setbacks
 - Off-site Drainage Entering the Site (If so, make note on plans)
 - Where City/County Topographic Maps are used, Sufficient Checks provided
 - Soil Type
 - Wetlands
 - Wooded Area & Tree Groups
 - Site Plan
 - Existing & Proposed Structures, Roads, Buildings, Paved Areas, etc.
 - Ex. & Prop. Storm water Management System & Components include Pipe Sizes, Lengths, Inverts and Slopes (Provide a table for proposed pipes)
 - Connection to Existing System
 - Swale Information include. Location, Size, Grade, Cross Section, etc.
 - Proposed Erosion Control Measures
 - Existing and Proposed Contours
 - Typical Street Cross Section
 - Typical Driveway Detail
 - Typical Construction Entrance Detail
 - Total Impervious Area in Square Feet (Existing & Planned)
 - Soil Types
 - Work Limits & Areas to Remain Undisturbed include. Noting Square Footage to be disturbed
 - Wetlands
 - Wooded Areas and Tree Groups
 - Finish Floor Elevations
 - Provide copy of Drainage Plan with different drainage areas distinguishable from each other (for each Catch Basin or Inlet, Delineate its watershed)
(can be a red line)

- ___Certifications
 - ___Designers
 - ___Owners

___Design Calculations

- ___Piped Systems
 - ___Design for 10-yr Storm
 - ___Analyze for 50-yr Storm
 - ___Pipe Required for Streams, Ditches, Channels, etc. if Pipe Size is 48" or less
 - ___Minimum Velocity for Pipe Segments is 2.5 FPS
 - ___Minimum Cover for Pipe is 2 ft. Measured from TOP of Pipe to Bottom of Base Course
 - ___Maximum Manhole spacing is 400 Ft. for all Pipes less than 60 inches
 - ___Headwalls or Flared End Sections Required at all Inlets and Exits of Piped Systems
 - ___Energy Dissipaters Designed for 10-yr Storm
 - ___Provide Detail of Standard Catch Basin, Drop Inlet, and Manhole (Check cover requirements depending on Pipe Size)
 - ___For Piped Systems where Tailwater Conditions exist, Calculations should be provided

___Open Channels

- ___Design for 10-yr Storm
- ___Analyze for 50-yr Storm
- ___Permitted ONLY where Pipe Sizes Exceed 48 inches
- ___Side Slopes where Mowing is required shall be 3 to 1 or flatter
- ___Minimum Bottom Width shall be 3 feet
- ___Alternate Linings MAY be Permitted, Submittals Required
- ___Easements Required for Public Dedication
- ___Check Velocity for Proposed Lining
 - ___Temporary Required if Velocity exceeds 2 fps for Vegetative Channels

___Detention & Wet Retention Facilities

- ___Strong Effort to Make the Facility an Amenity to the Project
- ___Design for 10-yr Storm
- ___Analyze for 50-yr Storm
 - ___Watershed is 1 Acre or more
 - ___Plan showing entire Watershed with Sufficient Detail to Confirm Limits
 - ___Detailed Calculations for Pre-development & Post-development discharges
 - ___Detail Calculations of Stage-storage, include. Graph or Table
 - ___Detail Calculations of State-discharge, include graph or table
 - ___Detail Computations of Routing Showing at least Time, Storage, Stage, Discharge
 - ___Emergency Spillway Calculations & Design Date for the 50-yr Storm
 - ___Energy Dissipaters Design Data and Calcs. for 10-yr Storms
 - ___Watershed is less than 1 Acre
 - ___Plan showing entire Watershed with sufficient Detail to confirm Limits
 - ___Detailed Calculations for Pre-development & Post-development Discharges

- _____ Calculations of Available Storage & Outlet Structure Hydraulics
 - _____ necessary to show that Post-development Runoff will not exceed Pre-development Discharge
 - _____ Emergency Spillway Calculations & Design Date for the 50-yr Storm
 - _____ Energy Dissipaters Design Data and Cab for 10-yr Storms

- _____ Slopes for Vegetative Banks shall be 3 to 1 or Flatter
- _____ Vegetative Cover Type shall be Noted and Approved by Parks
- _____ Riser (if used)
 - _____ Riser shall be minimum of 8"
 - _____ Pipe shall be minimum of 6"
 - _____ Trash Rack required

- _____ Other Utilities shall be a Minimum of 5 ft. from Basin
- _____ Landscaping Zone
 - _____ Less than or Equal to 0.5 acres = 5 ft. Minimum Zone
 - _____ Greater than 0.5 acres = 10 ft. Minimum Zone
 - _____ Must be Approved by Parks

- _____ Access Zone Minimum Zone of 10 feet, Cannot be Landscaping Zone
- _____ Fencing: not Required. Optional for Private Facilities
- _____ Must meet NCDEHNR Requirements if Applicable

- _____ Infiltration Systems
 - _____ Plan showing entire Watershed & how Offsite Drainage will be handled
 - _____ Detailed Calculations of Pre-development & Post-development Runoff for 10-yr Storm
 - _____ Certified Engineer's Report on Soils & the Permeability Rate of the Soils
 - _____ Calculations for Sizing the Infiltration System and Required Storage
 - _____ Analyze the 50-yr Storm
 - _____ Provide an Emergency Spillway (Outlet) for the 50-yr Storm
 - _____ Soil Types & Ground Water Level

- _____ ALL Required Easements with Recording Fees
- _____ Storm water Management Maintenance Agreement with Recording Fee Current Tide Opinion
- _____ Subordination Agreement
- _____ Copies of Plans & Calculations as Needed

CHAPTER VI

LANDSCAPING

VI
LANDSCAPING

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>SECTION</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
A. <u>GENERAL</u>	6-1
B. <u>STREET/YARD PARKING FACILITY LANDSCAPING AND RESIDENTIAL STREET TREES</u>	6-1
C. <u>BUFFERYARD</u>	6-11
D. <u>STORMWATER FACILITY LANDSCAPING</u>	6-17
E. <u>TREE PROTECTION DURING CONSTRUCTION</u>	6-17
STANDARD DETAILS	6-18

A. GENERAL

All landscaping shall be in strict accordance with Article XV, Landscaping and Tree Preservation of Chapter 19 of the City Code and the requirements of this chapter.

B. STREETYARD/PARKING FACILITY LANDSCAPING AND RESIDENTIAL STREET TREES

Street Yard and Parking Facility Landscaping shall be in street accordance with Sections 19-174 and 19-175 of Article XV of Chapter 19 of the City Code. Additional information regarding Parking Facility Landscaping can be found in Chapter VII, Section D, paragraph 2(d) and SD 15-11, SD15-12 and SD15-14 of Chapter VII. Vegetation planted pursuant to Sections 19-174 and 19-175 shall be selected from the trees, shrubs, and ground cover material listed on the following pages.

Residential street tree species and placement shall conform to SD15-17 of this chapter.

STREET YARD/PARKING FACILITY

TREES	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Acer palmatum</u> Japanese Maple	D	To 20'	15-20'	S	PSH-SH	Best in partial shade. Leaves may scorch in full sun, especially in poor, dry soil.
<u>Acer rubrum</u> Red Maple	D	40-60'	30-50'	M-R	S-SH	Tolerates a wide range of condition but prefers moist soils. Moderately drought tolerant and native to this area.
<u>Acer saccharum</u> Sugar Maple	D	60-80'	40-60'	S	S-PSH	Good shade tree with bright Fall foliage but avoid planting where growth areas are restricted, i.e. planter boxes.
<u>Betula nigra</u> River Birch	D	50-60'	30-50'	M-R	S-PSH	Tolerant of many soils, especially with adequate water. Native to this area.
<u>Cercis canadensis</u> Red Bud	D	20-25'	15-20'	M	S-PSH	Will tolerate poor soils and dry locations. Flowers best in full sun. Native to this area.
<u>Cornus florida</u> Dogwood	D	20-30'	20-25'	S-M	S-SH	Best in partial shade. Will tolerate full sun only if soil is kept cool and moist. Mulch is necessary. Native to this area.
<u>Eriobotrya japonica</u> Loquat	E	15-20'	15-20'	M	S	Easy to grow. Prefers moist, well drained soil. Avoid fire blight by limiting excessive fertilizer.
<u>Fraxinus pennsylvanica</u> Green Ash	D	60-80'	40-50'	R	S	Very durable and tolerant of urban conditions.
<u>Ginkgo biloba</u> (male only) Ginkgo	D	50-80'	30'	S	S	Excellent urban tree. Very tough and easy to grow. Female trees drop messy, foul smelling fruits.
<u>Ilex x attenuata</u> 'Fosteri #2' Foster's Holly	E	20'	7-10'	M	S-SH	Has a pyramidal shape. Good in narrow spaces. Heat tolerant.

STREET YARD / PARKING FACILITY

<u>TREES</u>	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Ilex cassine</u> Dahoon Holly	E	15-20'	10-15'	R	S-SH	Good small evergreen tree.
<u>Ilex opaca</u> American Holly	E	15-30'	25-20'	M	S-SH	Best in well drained, acidic soils.
<u>Ilex vomitoria</u> Yaupon Holly	E	To 25'	8-10'	S-M	S-SH	Very tough holly. Tolerates heat, drought, wet or dry soils and exposed conditions. Native.
<u>Koelreuteria paniculata</u> Golden Rain Tree	D	25-30'	15-20'	M	S	Very adaptable and tolerant. Will grow almost anywhere, except on poorly drained sites. Striking yellow flowers.
<u>Lagerstroemia indica</u> Crape Myrtle	D	25'	12-15'	M	S	Very adaptable and drought resistant. Blooms best in full sun.
<u>Liquidambar styraciflua</u> Sweet Gum	D	80-100'	40-60'	R	S	Prefers moist sites. Not for small areas. Good Fall color. Native to this area.
<u>Liriodendron tulpiifera</u> Tulip Tree, Yellow Poplar	D	100'	60-80'	R	S	Requires adequate moisture and a large space to grow in. Native.
<u>Magnolia grandiflora</u> Southern Magnolia	D	50-60'	30-40'	S-M	S-PSH	Prefers moist sites. Subject to Magnesium deficiency. Give newly planted trees Epsom salts.
<u>Magnolia soulangiana</u> Saucer Magnolia	D	20-25'	15-20'	M	S-PSH	Prefers moist sites and blooms best in full sun.
<u>Magnolia stellata</u> Star Magnolia	D	12'	6-8'	S-M	S-PSH	Same as <u>M. soulangiana</u> above.
<u>Magnolia virginiana</u> Sweet Bay	Semi-E	20-30'	10-15'	M	S-PSH	Good on wet sites. Tolerates shade better than other Magnolias. Native to this area.

STREET YARD / PARKING FACILITY

<u>TREES</u>	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Nyssa sylvatica</u> Black Gum	D	60-100'	30-45'	M	S-PSH	Best to transplant in Spring. Native to this area. Good Fall color.
<u>Pinus palustris</u> Long Leaf Pine	E	60-100'	30-40'	S then R	S	Fairly drought resistant. Grows rapidly after 3-4 yrs. old. Native.
<u>Pinus taeda</u> Loblolly Pine	E	80-100'	30-40'	R	S	Good for fast screening. Does well on wet sites but is moderately drought resistant. Native.
<u>Pinus thunbergiana</u> Japanese Black Pine	E	20-50'	20-30'	M	S	Tolerant of many conditions.
<u>Platanus occidentalis</u> Sycamore	D	75-110'	75-100'	R	S	Tolerant of many soils if water is adequate. Give plenty of growing space. Native.
<u>Prunus coroliniana</u> Cherry Laurel	E	30-40'	20-25'	M-R	S-PSH	Good on most sites except those which are hot and dry. Native to this area.
<u>Prunus serrulata</u> 'Kwanzan' Japanese Flowering Cherry	D	20-25'	10-20'	M-R	S	Double pink blossoms very showy. Best in full sun.
<u>Pyrus calleryana</u> 'Bradford' Bradford Pear	D	30-40'	25-30'	M-R	S	Very tough and tolerant of urban conditions. Prolific blooms in Spring.
<u>Quercus acutissima</u> Sawtooth Oak	D	40-50'	25-35'	M	S	Widely adaptable, easy to grow.
<u>Quercus laurifolia</u> Laurel Oak	Semi-E	40-60'	30-40'	M	S	Very tolerant of many conditions. Native.

STREET YARD / PARKING FACILITY

<u>TREES</u>	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Quercus laurifolia</u> 'Darlington'	E	30-50'	25-30'	M	S	More compact than <u>Q. laurifolia</u> above.
<u>Quercus nigra</u> Water Oak	Semi-E	50-80'	40-50'	M-R	S	Tolerant of a wide range of soils. Similar to <u>Q. laurifolia</u> . Native.
<u>Quercus phellos</u> Willow Oak	D	70-100'	40-60'	M	S	Will grow in a wide range of soils. Transplants easily.
<u>Quercus virginiana</u> Live Oak	E	40-80'	60-100'	M	S	Adaptable to many soils. Give plenty of room as it will spread with age. Native.
<u>Taxodium distichum</u> Bald Cypress	D	50-60'	25-30'	R	S-PSH	Prefers moist soils but will tolerate dry soils also. Very wind resistant. Native to this area.
<u>Zelkova serrata</u> Japanese Zelkova	D	40-60'	30-40'	M-R	S	Prefers moist soils but is very drought and wind tolerant once established. Good urban tree.

*DECIDOUS/EVERGREEN

**S-SLOW
M-MODERATE
R-RAPID

***S-SUN
PSH-PART SHADE
SH-SHADE

STREET YARD/PARKING FACILITY

<u>SHRUBS</u>	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Abelia grandiflora</u> Glossy Abelia	E	6-10'	4-6'	M-R	S-PSH	Best in full sun; tolerates a wide range of conditions.
<u>Abelia grandiflora</u> 'Edward Goucher'	E	3-4'	3-4'	M-R	S-PSH	Very compact and blooms prolifically.
<u>Berberis julianae</u> Wintergreen Barberry	E	5-6'	5-7'	S-M	S-SH	Many cultivars available. Very tolerant of urban conditions.
<u>Berberis thunbergii</u> Japanese Barberry	E	4-5'	4-5'	S-M	S-PSH	Many cultivars available. Very tolerant of urban conditions.
<u>Camelia japonica</u> Common Camelia	E	8-10'	5-6'	S-M	PSH-SH	Best in fertile, acidic soils with adequate moisture; blooms best in partial shade.
<u>Camelia sasanqua</u> Sasanqua Camelia	E	5-8'	4-5'	M	S-SH	Will tolerate full sun if not excessively hot.
<u>Chimonanthus praecox</u> Wintersweet	D	12-15'	8-10'	S	S-PSH	Very fragrant flowers in winter.
<u>Cleyera japonica</u> Cleyera	E	10-15'	5-6'	S-M	PSH-SH	Best on east or north exposures; will not tolerate heat, high light or poorly drained soils.
<u>Elaeagnus pungens</u> Thorny Elaeagnus	E	8-12'	8-10'	M-R	S-PSH	Good under difficult conditions but may require frequent pruning.
<u>Euonymus japonica</u> Evergreen Euonymus	E	10-12'	4-5'	M-R	S-SH	Very tough, durable and adaptable.
<u>Forsythia x intermedia</u> Forsythia	D	6-9'	6-8'	M-R	S-PSH	Easy to grow; good on most sites.

STREET YARD/PARKING FACILITY

6-7

<u>SHRUBS</u>	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Ilex cornuta</u> 'Bufordi' Chinese Holly, Burford Holly	E	10-12'	6-8'	M-R	S-SH	Tolerates a wide range of soils and responds well to light fertilizing, mulch and water.
<u>Ilex cornuta</u> 'Bufordi Nana' Dwarf Buford Holly	E	3-4'	3-4'	M	S-SH	More compact than 'Bufordi'.
<u>Ilex crenata</u> 'Helleri'	E	2-3'	3-4'	M	S-SH	Moderately drought and heat tolerant.
'Rotundifolia'	E	4-6'	4-6'	M	S-SH	"
'Convexa'	E	3-5'	4-6'	M	S-SH	"
'Compacta' Japanese Holly	E	3-4'	4-5'	M	S-SH	"
<u>Ilex vomitoria</u> Yaupon Holly	E	10-15'	8-10'	S-M	S-SH	Very tough, tolerates full sun, heat and drought very well.
<u>Ilex vomitoria</u> 'Nana' Dwarf Yaupon Holly	E	2-4'	3-4'	S-M	S-SH	Compact and very good in planters.
<u>Illicium anisatum</u> Spice Plant	E	10-12'	8-10'	M	S-PSH	Has aromatic foliage.
<u>Juniperus chinensis</u> 'Blue Vase'	E	4-5'	3-4'	M-R	S	Very tough, durable and tolerant of heat and drought.
'Pfitzeriana'	E	4-6'	15-20'	M-R	S	
'Hetzi'	E	8-10'	10-12'	M-R	S	
<u>Ligustrum lucidum</u>	E	20'	5-10'	R	S-SH	Very tough, durable shrubs.
<u>Ligustrum japonicum</u>	E	6-12'	6-8'	R	S-SH	
<u>Ligustrum sinense</u> Privet	E	6-8'	4-6'	R	S-SH	

STREET YARD/PARKING FACILITY

6-8

<u>SHRUBS</u>	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Myrica cerifera</u> Wax Myrtle	E	15-25'	15-20'	M	S-SH	Tolerates a wide range of soils, sun or shade and wet sites. Native to this area.
<u>Nandina domestica</u> Heavenly Bamboo, Nandina	E	5-7'	3-5'	M-R	S-SH	Very drought resistant
<u>Nerium oleander</u> Oleander	E	6-16'	6-12'	R	S-SH	Blooms best in full sun. All parts of the plant are poisonous if eaten.
<u>Osmanthus fortunei</u> Fortune's Osmanthus	E	15'	5-7'	M	S-PSH	Best in partial shade. Has very fragrant flowers in Fall.
<u>Photinia fraseri</u> Fraser's Photinia, Red Tips	E	10-12'	8-10'	M-R	S-PSH	Will not tolerate poorly drained sites.
<u>Photinia sersrulata</u> Chinese Photinia, Red Tips	E	15-20	12-15'	M-R	S-PSH	Will not tolerate poorly drained sites.
<u>Pittosporum tobira</u> Pittosporum	E	8-10'	10-12'	M	S-SH	Very tough and durable. Tolerates high heat areas such as parking lots.
<u>Pittosporum tobira</u> 'Wheeler's Dwarf' Dwarf Pittosporum	E	3-4	3-4'	M	S-SH	Very compact.
<u>Rhaphiolepis indica</u> Indian Hawthorne	E	5-7'	4-6	S-M	S-PSH	Prefers well drained soil; moderately drought resistant; best in full sun.
<u>Rhododendron indica</u> Indica Azalea	E	6-10'	6-10'	M	PSH	Same as <u>R. obtusum</u> except will tolerate more sun.
<u>Rhododendron obtusum</u> Kurume Azalea	E	3-4'	3-4'	S-M	PSH-SH	Very sensitive to heat, drought and excessive fertilization. Best in shade and partial shade.

*DECIDUOUS/EVERGREEN

**S-SLOW
M-MODERATE
R-RAPID

***S-SUN
PSH-PART SHADE
SH-SHADE

STREET YARD/PARKING FACILITY

6-9

<u>GROUND COVERS</u>	<u>D/E</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Cotoneaster horizontalis</u> Rockspray Contoneaster	SEMI-E	3'	5'	S	S	Susceptible to fire blight.
<u>Euonymus fortunei</u> 'Radicans' Wintercreeper Euonymus	E	2'	4-6'	M-R	S-SH	Easy to grow. Will climb, especially on wooden surfaces.
<u>Festuca ovina</u> 'Glauca' Blue Fescue	E	8-12"	8-12"	M	S-PSH	Very tough, durable and tolerant of all soils except poorly drained ones.
<u>Gardenia jasminoides</u> 'Radicans' Dwarf Gardenia	E	2-3'	4'	R	S-SH	Has very fragrant flowers.
<u>Gelsemium sempervirens</u> Carolina Yellow Jassamine	E	3-4'	10-20'	R	S-SH	Has fragrant flowers. Blooms best in full sun. Native to this area.
<u>Hedera helix</u> English Ivy	E	6-10"	40-60'	R	S-SH	Best in shade or partial shade with moist soil.
<u>Hemerocallis spp.</u> Daylily	D-SEMI-E	2-3'	2-3'	R	S-PSH	Tolerates a wide range of soils. Blooms best in full sun. Many cultivars available.
<u>Hypericum calycinum</u> Aaron's Beard	SEMI-E	12-15"	12"	M-R	S-PSH	Drought tolerant. Blooms best in full sun.
<u>Juniperus conferta</u> 'Blue Pacific' 'Compacta' Shore Juniper	E	18-20" 8-10"	5-8'	R	S	Tolerant of poor soils, prefers sandy soils.

STREET YARD/PARKING FACILITY

6-10

<u>GROUND COVERS</u>	<u>D/E</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Juniperus horizontalis</u> 'Bar Harbor' 'Blue Rug' 'Plumosa" (Andorra) 'Youngstown'	E	2'	4-5'	M	S	Tolerant of heat, drought. Prefers sandy soils.
<u>Juniperus procumbens</u> Japanese Garden Juniper	E	20-24"	6-8'	M	S	Tolerates intense heat.
<u>Liriope muscari</u> Lily Turf, Monkey Grass	E	8-20"	12-18"	M	PSH-SH	Tolerates many soil types but may burn if in very dry , poor soil in full sun.
<u>Ophiopogon japonicus</u> Mondo Grass	E	8-12"	6-8"	S-M	PSH-SH	Drought tolerant.
<u>Santolina chamaecyparissus</u> Gray Santolina, Lavender Cotton	E	12-18"	24"	M-R	S	Prefers dry, sandy soils.
<u>Santolina virens</u> Green Santolina	E	12-18"	24"	M-R	S	Same as above, except green in color.

GRASSES

Bahia					S	Sow April-June 1-2#/1000 Sq. Ft.
Bermuda					S	Sow April-June 1-2#/1000 Sq. Ft.
St. Augustine					S-PSH	Sprigged or sod
Centipede					S-PSH	Sow March-May 1/4-1/2#/1000 Sq. Ft.
Rye					S	Sow Sept-Oct .-4-5#/1000 Sq. Ft.

*DECIDUOUS/EVERGREEN

**S-SLOW
M-MODERATE
R-RAPID

***S-SUN
PSH-PART SHADE
SH-SHADE

C. BUFFERYARD

Bufferyard landscaping shall be in strict accordance with Section 19-176 of Article XV of Chapter 19 of the City Code. Vegetation planted pursuant to Section 19-176 shall be selected from the trees and shrubs listed on the following pages.

BUFFERYARD

TREES	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Acer rubrum</u> Red Maple	D	40-60'	30-50'	M-R	S-SH	Tolerates a wide range of conditions but prefers moist soils. Moderately drought tolerant and native to this area.
<u>Acer saccharum</u> Sugar Maple	D	60-80'	40--60'	S	S-PSH	Good shade tree with bright Fall foliage.
<u>Betula nigra</u> River Birch	D	50-60'	20-30'	M-R	S-PSH	Tolerant of many soils, especially with adequate water. Native to this area.
<u>Fraxinus pennsylvanica</u> Green Ash	D	60-80'	40-50'	R	S	Very durable and tolerant of urban conditions.
<u>Liquidambar styraciflua</u> Sweet Gum	D	80-100'	40-60'	R	S	Prefers moist sites. Not for small areas. Good Fall color.
6-12 <u>Liriodendron tulipifera</u> Tulip Tree, Yellow Poplar	D	100'	60-80'	R	S	Requires adequate moisture and a large space to grow in. Native.
<u>Magnolia grandiflora</u> Southern Magnolia	E	50-60'	30-40'	S-M	S-PSH	Prefers moist sites. Subject to magnesium deficiency. Give newly planted trees epsom salts.
<u>Nyssa sylvatica</u> Black Gum	D	60-100'	30-45'	M	S-PSH	Best to transplant in Spring. Native to this area. Good Fall color.
<u>Pinus palustris</u> Long Leaf Pine	E	60-100'	30-40'	S then R	S	Fairly drought resistant. Grows rapidly after 3-4 years old. Native.
<u>Pinus taeda</u> Loblolly Pine	E	80-100'	30-40'	R	S	Good for fast screening. Does well on wet sites but is moderately drought resistant. Native.
<u>Pinus thunbergiana</u> Japanese Black Pine	E	20-50'	20-30'	M	S	Tolerant of many conditions.

BUFFERYARD

TREES	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Platanus occidentalis</u> Sycamore	D	75-110'	75-100'	R	S	Tolerant to many soils if water is adequate. Give plenty of space to grow. Native.
<u>Prunus caroliniana</u> Cherry Laurel	E	30-40'	20-25'	M-R	S-PSH	Good on most sites except those which are hot and dry. Native to this area.
<u>Prunus serrulata</u> 'Kwanzan' Japanese Flowering Cherry	D	20-25'	10-20'	M-R	S	Double pink blossoms very showy. Best in full sun.
<u>Pyrus calleryana</u> 'Bradford' Bradford Pear	D	30-40'	25-30'	M-R	S	Very tough and tolerant of urban conditions. Prolific blooms in Spring.
<u>Quercus acutissima</u> Sawtooth Oak	D	40-50'	25-35'	M	S	Widely adaptable, easy to grow.
<u>Quercus laurifolia</u> Laurel Oak	Semi-E	40-60'	30-40'	M	S	Very tolerant of many conditions. Native.
<u>Quercus laurifolia</u> 'Darlington'	E	30-50'	25-30'	M	S	More compact than <u>Q. laurifolia</u> above.
<u>Quercus nigra</u> Water Oak	Semi-E	50-80'	40-50'	M-R	S	Tolerant of a wide range of soils. Similar to <u>Q. laurifolia</u> . Native.
<u>Quercus phellos</u> Willow Oak	D	70-100'	40-60'	M	S	Will grow in a wide range of soils. Transplants easily.
<u>Quercus virginiana</u> Live Oak	E	40-80'	60-100'	M	S	Adaptable to many soils. Give plenty of room as it will spread with age. Native.

BUFFERYARD

TREES

Zelkova serrata
Japanese Zelkova

D/E* HGT. SPRD. GROWTH RATE** LIGHT*** COMMENTS

D 40-60' 30-40' M-R S Prefers moist soils but is very drought and wind tolerant once established. Good urban tree.

*DECIDUOUS/EVERGREEN **S-SLOW
M-MODERATE ***S-SUN
R-RAPID PSH-PART SHADE
SH-SHADE

BUFFERYARD

6-15

SHRUBS	<u>D/E*</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Abelia grandiflora</u> Glossy Abelia	E	6-10'	4-6'	M-R	S-PSH	Best in full sun; tolerates a wide range of conditions.
<u>Cleyera japonica</u> Cleyera	E	10-15'	5-6'	S-M	PSH-SH	Best on east or north exposures. Will not tolerate heat, high light or poorly drained soils.
<u>Elaeagnus pungens</u> Thorny Elaeagnus	E	8-12'	8-10'	M-R	S-PSH	Good under difficult conditions but may require some pruning.
<u>Euonymus japonica</u> Evergreen Euonymus	E	10-12'	4-5'	M-R	S-SH	Very tough, durable and adaptable.
<u>Ilex cornuta</u> 'Burfordi' Chinese or Burford Holly	E	10-12'	6-8'	M-R	S-SH	Tolerates a wide range of soils and responds well to mulch, water and light fertilization.
<u>Illicium anisatum</u> Spice Plant	E	10-12'	8-10'	M	S-SPH	Has aromatic foliage.
<u>Juniperus chinensis</u> 'Hetzi' 'Pfitzeriana' Chinese Juniper		8-10'	10-12'	M-R	S	Very tough, durable and tolerant of heat and drought.
		6-8'	15-20'	M-R	S	
<u>Ligustrum lucidum</u> <u>Ligustrum japonicum</u> <u>Ligustrum sinense</u> Privet	E	20'	5-10'	R	S-SH	All very tough, durable shrubs.
		6-12'	6-8'	R	S-SH	
		6-8'	4-6'	R	S-SH	
<u>Myrica cerifera</u> Wax Myrtle	E	15-25'	15-20'	M	S-SH	Tolerates a wide range of soils, sun or shade and wet sites. Native to this area.

BUFFERYARD

SHRUBS	<u>D/E</u>	<u>HGT.</u>	<u>SPRD.</u>	<u>GROWTH RATE**</u>	<u>LIGHT***</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
<u>Nerium oleander</u> Oleander	E	6-16'	6-12'	R	S-SH	Blooms best in full sun. All parts of the plant are poisonous if eaten
<u>Osmanthus fortunei</u> Fortune's Osmanthus	E	15'	5-7'	M	S-PSH	Best in partial shade. Has very fragrant flowers in the fall.
<u>Photinia fraseri</u> Fraser's Photinia, Red Tips	E	10-12'	6-8'	M-R	S-PSH	Will not tolerate poorly drained sites.
<u>Photinia serrulata</u> Chinese Photinia, Red Tips	E	10-12'	4-5'	M-R	S-SH	Same as <u>Photinia fraseri</u> above.
<u>Pittosporum tobira</u> Pittosporum	E	8-10'	10-12'	M	S-SH	Very tough and durable, heat tolerant.
<u>Raphiolepis indica</u> Indian Hawthorne	E	5-7'	4-6'	S-M	S-PSH	Prefers well drained soils. Moderately drought resistant. Best in full sun.

*DECIDUOUS/EVERGREEN

**S-SLOW
M-MODERATE
R-RAPID

***S-SUN
PSH-PART SHADE
SH-SHADE

D. DETENTION/RETENTION FACILITY LANDSCAPING

Landscaping for Storm water Detention/Retention Facilities shall be in accordance with the requirement outlined in Chapter V, Section D, paragraphs 4(b) and 4(g), and Standard Detail SD 15-16 of this chapter.

E. TREE PROTECTION DURING CONSTRUCTION

Measures shall be taken during the construction process to ensure the protection of existing trees which have been designated to remain on the site. Protective measures shall include the requirements as outlined on Standard Details SD 15-08, SD 15-09 and SD 15-15 of this chapter.

VII

TRAFFIC ENGINEERING

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>SECTION</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
A. DEFINITIONS	7-1
B. STREET RIGHT-OF-WAY AND GEOMETRIC DESIGN STANDARDS	7-3
C. DRIVEWAYS	7-8
D. PARKING - ON- STREET	7-16
E. PARKING - OFF-STREET	7-16
F. BICYCLE PARKING	7-20
G. TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES	7-20
H. STREET NAME SIGNS	7-21
I. PAVEMENT MARKINGS	7-22
J. STREET LIGHTING	7-22
K. RAILROAD GRADE CROSSINGS	7-23
L. BIKEWAYS	7-23
M. TRAFFIC IMPACT STUDIES	7-23
STANDARD DETAILS.....	7-28

A. DEFINITIONS

1. Apron, driveway - The paved area of a driveway between the line of the edge or gutter flow line and the near edge of the sidewalk section of the driveway.
2. Bus - The word "bus" refers to every motor vehicle designed to carry more than ten (10) passengers and used for the transportation of persons; and every motor vehicle, other than a taxicab, designed for the transportation of persons for compensation.
3. Bus Stop - The words "bus stop" refer to an area on a roadway parallel to and adjacent to the curb or edge of roadway, or elsewhere, for the use of buses while loading or unloading passengers or during layover periods in their operating schedules.
4. Corner - The word "corner" refers to the point of intersection of the lines of two (2) roadway edges or curb faces extended toward their point of intersection.
5. Curb or Curbing - The words "curb or curbing" refer to a structural element at the edge of an existing or proposed roadway or other way, generally at a higher elevation than the adjacent edge of roadway, installed to deter vehicles and water from leaving the roadway, to otherwise control drainage, to delineate the edge of existing or future roadways or driveways, to present a more finished appearance to the street, or to assist in the orderly development of the roadside.
6. Curb Return - The words "curb return" refer to that curved section of curb which extends from the gutter flow line towards the street property line, sidewalk or sidewalk area.
7. Driveway, Private - The words "private driveway" refer to the area outside a street intended to serve as ingress and/or egress for vehicular traffic between the property lines and an off-street parking area or other area outside the property lines.
8. Driveway, Public - The words "driveway" and "public driveway" refer to the way or area between the roadway of a public street and other property, designed for, or installed, serving as ingress and/or egress for vehicular traffic between such roadway and an off-street parking area or private driveway.
9. Island, Channelization - The words "channelization island" refer to an area, generally between or adjacent to traffic lanes, delineated by curbs, pavement markings or other devices, for control of vehicular movements or for pedestrian refuge.
10. Median - The word "median" refers to a channelization island located, generally, along or near the middle of a street or between two roadways or driveways and which is intended to separate opposite directions of vehicular traffic flow.

11. Parking Area or Parking Facility - The words "parking area" or "parking facility" refer to any area designed, intended or used for the stationing of a vehicle when such vehicle is not in use for transportation.
12. Parking Space, Curb - A portion of roadway where a vehicle can legally park.
13. Parking Space, Off-Street - An area outside of a street, which is designed, intended, and accessible by legal means, for use for the stationing of a motor vehicle.
14. Plaza - The word "plaza" refers to an unpaved area between a sidewalk or sidewalk area and a roadway, along which curbing is in place.
15. Shoulder - The word "shoulder" refers to an unpaved portion of a street, located between a sidewalk or sidewalk area and a roadway, and beside which curbing has not been installed.
16. Sidewalk - The word "sidewalk" refers to a paved portion of a street between the curb or edge of roadway and the adjacent property line except for any portion of same which is designated as a bikeway.
17. Sidewalk Area - The words "sidewalk area" refer to the unpaved area of a public street lying between the property line of said street and a line parallel with and five (5) feet from said property line measured toward the center of the street, and which is reserved for eventual development as a sidewalk.
18. Sidewalk Section - That portion of a driveway between the street property line and the edge of the sidewalk or sidewalk area nearest the roadway.
19. Street - The entire width between property lines of any public alley, avenue, highway, lane, path, road, way, or other public place located within the City, when any part thereof is open to the use of the public, as a matter of right, for purposes of vehicular or pedestrian traffic.
20. Street Segment - A street segment is the length of a street between intersections or between points which define a change in street configuration.
21. Taper, Driveway - The area, generally triangular in shape, by which a public driveway is made wider near the roadway than at the property line, to allow safe unhindered vehicular passage into or out of said driveway.
22. Taxi or Taxicab - The words "taxi" or "taxicab" refer to a licensed public motor vehicle for hire designed and constructed to seat not more than ten (10) persons and operating as a common carrier on call or demand.
23. Taxi Stand - The words "taxi stand" refer to an area in a roadway, adjacent to the curb or edge of roadway, or in another location, set aside for taxicabs to stand or wait for passengers while the driver remains in or at said vehicle.

24. Thoroughfare, Major – Major Thoroughfares are the primary traffic arteries of the city. The Federal-Aid Function Classification is “Arterial”. Their function is to move intracity and intercity through traffic. The streets which comprise the thoroughfare system may serve abutting property, however their major function is to carry traffic. Parking is not normally permitted on major thoroughfares. NOTE: Where this Technical Standards and Specifications Manual refers to “Thoroughfare”, it is generally referring to Major Thoroughfares.
25. Thoroughfare, Minor - Minor Thoroughfares are the larger Collectors. They have the dual role in between the local street (property access) and the major thoroughfares (through traffic).
26. Through-Street - A publicly dedicated, improved and accepted street or street segment which provides at least two means of access to a collector street or street of higher classification.
27. Traffic Engineer - The words "Traffic Engineer" shall refer to the City Traffic Engineer, or his or her designee, for those situations or locations within the jurisdiction of the City of Wilmington and shall refer to the appropriate Traffic Engineering official of the North Carolina Department of Transportation and Highway Safety,, or his or her designee, for those situations or locations within the jurisdiction of the State of North Carolina.
28. Traffic Impact Studies – Transportation impact information required when a new development requires rezoning, a special use permit, or a major development review. Initial requirement of an information sheet estimating trip generation characteristics for a.m. and p.m. peak hours for the development. For trip generations of 100 trips or more during peak hours, an additional requirement of a written traffic impact study.
29. Traffic Lane - The words "traffic lane" refer to a longitudinal section of the roadway or driveway other than a bikeway of a standard width of twelve (12) feet or of a greater or lesser width, down to a minimum width of nine (9) feet intended to accommodate a single file of moving vehicles. Traffic lanes may be delineated by pavement markings or by other devices, or may be unmarked.
27. Wheelstop - A fixed barrier placed in a parking space for the purpose of preventing passage of the vehicle past the inner end of the space and to prevent the vehicle from overhanging the end of the space.

NOTE: The above terms and definitions apply for all chapters of these specifications.

B. STREET RIGHT-OF-WAY, PAVEMENT WIDTH, ALIGNMENT AND GEOMETRIC DESIGN STANDARDS

The minimum standards for Collector Streets, Local Streets, Cul-de-sacs and Alleys in residential areas and subdivisions are shown in Table 1. Design standards for all streets in commercial and industrial areas or subdivisions and all Thoroughfares shall be determined on a case-by-case basis. Some minimum and maximum design standards are given in Table 2.

**TABLE 1
MINIMUM STANDARDS FOR NON-ARTERIAL STREETS IN RESIDENTIAL AREAS
AND SUBDIVISIONS**

		Collector		Local (Residential)		Alley	Private Access Easement
		Non- Residential	Residential	= 50 Units	= 15 Units		
R.O.W.		60'	60'	50'	40'	20'	34' Easement
Dimensions with Type "A" Curb	Asphalt (A)	33'	29'	23'	15'	16' of asphalt with 1' header curb and 1' plaza. Additional easement may be required for utilities	16' of paved surface plus 10' for utility and/or stormwater
	Plaza (P)	6'	8'	6'	5'		
	Sidewalk (S)	5'	5'	5'	5'		
Dimensions with Type "D" Curb	Asphalt (A)	N/A	N/A	26'	18'		
	Plaza (P)	N/A	N/A	5'	4'		
	Sidewalk (S)	5'	5'	5'	5'		
Dimensions with Type "H" Curb	Asphalt (A)	N/A	N/A	24'	16'		
	Plaza (P)	N/A	N/A	6'	5'		
	Sidewalk (S)	5'	5'	5'	5'		

*The number of dwelling units served by a street segment includes all units having frontage on other segments of that street or other streets which contribute to the traffic volume of that segment.

*For lots of record on the date of this amendment, the private access easement may be reduced to twelve (12) feet of paved surface with no minimum lot width or frontage if the easement serves no more than one (1) single-family residence with no garage or accessory apartments. Private access easements are prohibited from being used in a major subdivision.

**TABLE 2
MINIMUM AND MAXIMUM STREET DESIGN STANDARDS**

	<u>Minimum</u>	<u>Maximum</u>
Angle of intersection between any two or more streets	75 degrees	
Offset between centerlines of intersections on opposite sides of street (dog-leg)	200 feet (60.96 meters)	
Distance between centerlines of intersections	400 feet (121.91 meters)	1200 feet (371.86 meters)
Right-of-way diameter at end of cul-de-sac	100 feet (30.48 meters)	
Diameter of pavement edge at end of cul-de-sac	80 feet (24.38 meters)	
Radius of transition curve leading into bulb of cul-de-sac (at edge of pavement)	50 feet (15.24 meters)	
Length of cul-de-sac (from curblines of intersecting through street to bottom of bulb or end of roadway)	138 feet (42 meters) (bulb-type)	500 feet (152.4 Meters)
Radius of roadway edge at corners	35 feet (10.67 meters)	
Corner-cut off distance along property lines from their intersection	15 feet (4.57 meters)	
Tangent length between horizontal curves	100 feet (30.48 meters)	
Horizontal centerline radius - local	100 feet (30.48 meters)	
Horizontal centerline radius – collector	200 feet (60.96 meters)	

GENERAL STANDARDS

1. These standards should be considered minimum standards for normal topographic and development conditions. The standards may be increased in circumstances involving special topographic or development conditions (e.g. severe topographic or drainage conditions might require a wider street cross-section in order to ensure reliable access to all lots of a proposed residential subdivision).
2. A public street or streets shall be required to serve any multiple family development which contain 50 or more units or has any principal structure more than 500 feet away from any existing public streets.
3. Ribbon, vertical or slope face curbing or bollards may be required bordering all parking areas and driveways serving multiple family developments.
4. Minimum cul-de-sac pavement radii shall be 40', with a minimum 42' radius required for cul-de-sac with landscaped islands (the performance standard for landscaped islands is a SU-30 turning template). The landscaped islands shall be protected with vertical curbing or other approved barrier. For cul-de-sac bulb rights-of-way, the rights-of-way requirement may be reduced to 44' radius (vertical curbing) or a 46' radius (slope face curbing) on Local B streets only; this would provide room for street signs, meter boxes and small public facilities. Sidewalks are not required on the bulb portion of cul-de-sacs.
5. Parking on streets and alleys 18' or less in width is prohibited.
6. Street trees shall be provided by developers in the plazas of public rights-of-way (except alleys); root shields may be required to be installed along with the street trees to prevent the problems associated with tree roots (e.g. pavement or sidewalk movement, penetration of sewer lines, etc.). Any vegetation planted in public rights-of-way shall be subject to the review Parks, Recreation, and Downtown Services Department and other appropriate staff terms of species, minimum size and quantity.
7. A non-municipal utility easement of 10' in width shall be provided on both sides of all public streets and alleys for installation of electric, gas, telephone and cable TV lines.
8. Inverted crown design for alleys and private access easements shall be utilized due to the curbing (ribbon curbing) permitted for these two street classes in order to provide adequate drainage.
9. When a multi-family or commercial development is utilizing public streets, the street yard landscaping begins after the non-municipal utility easement.
10. When subdivisions interconnect via collector streets, the first approved subdivision will provide the collector street standard which must be maintained until a logical terminus (e.g. intersection).
11. Pavement width requirements are based on the "drivable" area of the roadway. When slope face curbing is used, therefore, the minimum pavement width should be increased by 3'.

12. One-way street and alley standards:
 - One lane, one-way street: 13' face-to-face without parking; 21' face-to-face with parking on one side.
 - One way alley – 13 feet (includes header curb)(Two way alley is 16 feet of pavement with 1 foot ribbon curb on both sides)

13. Median standards:
 - Vertical curbing is required to protect median function and landscaping.
 - For local streets: minimum median width - 10' face-to-face.
 - For collector streets: minimum median width - 13' face-to-face, to provide for possible left turns, access cuts, etc.
 - Medians are reserved for landscaping only; no decorative structures, non-traffic signs, etc. are permitted.
 - Sight distance triangle standards apply based on a case-by-case review using ASHTO stopping distance information for the rated speed of the street.
 - Minimum length of medians shall be 100 feet

NOTE: Traffic calming features may vary from these standards and must be reviewed and approved by appropriate City staff on a case-by-case basis.

14. Collector "B" streets, which serve 150 or more units, shall have their minimum pavement width increased in accordance with NCDOT standards to provide for bike lanes, however, when bike paths/facilities are located and constructed as separate facilities the extra street width is not required.

15. Maximum allowable grade on any street and all commercial and multi-family ingress and egress is 7%.

16. Design standards for Thoroughfares are usually determined by the State and/or Federal governments. City design standards for Thoroughfares will be developed on a case-by-case basis as needed. These standards also apply to new lanes added to existing facilities.

17. Street widths in commercial and industrial subdivisions or areas shall have a minimum right-of-way width of 60 feet and a minimum pavement width of 33 feet.

18. Slope curb is not allowed in commercial and industrial subdivisions or areas.

19. The number of dwelling units served by a street segment includes all units having frontage on other segments of that street or other streets which contribute to the traffic volume of that segment.

20. When more than one route of access is available to a dwelling unit, that unit shall be counted as served by the street segments most likely to provide the primary access point for that unit determined by likely logical driving behavior.

C. **DRIVEWAYS**

1. General Driveway Requirements: Driveways shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter II, Section E, Paragraphs 3 and 4 and the following requirements, tables, and Standard Details SD 8-01 through SD 8-07 of this chapter.

a. Submission of Plans; information required.

1. No driveway permit shall be issued for other than single-family or two-family residences until there is filed with the City Engineer for his approval a minimum of two copies of plans showing the location and dimensions of all proposed improvements. The scale of plans shall be a standard engineering scale no smaller than 1" = 40'. Such plans may be required for single and two-family residences if deemed necessary by the City Engineer.

2. Information that must be shown on plans submitted shall include:

- 1) Location of property, including a vicinity map
- 2) The present and proposed property use
- 3) Location of all existing and proposed buildings
- 4) Pavement and right-of-way width
- 5) For all buildings except single-family and two-family residential buildings the location of off-street loading and unloading facilities
- 6) Interior parking arrangements and traffic circulation patterns
- 7) Retaining walls, drainage, poles, hydrants and other physical features which affect the driveway location
- 8) Location of all existing driveways serving abutting property and those on the opposite side of the street(s)
- 9) Curb usage, i.e., bus stops, loading zones, parking types, traffic lanes, etc.
- 10) Wheelstops and other traffic barriers
- 11) Any intersecting street(s) within 250 feet of any perimeter property line and all traffic signals within 500 feet
- 12) Proposed driveway centerline elevations at the curblines, property line and at points twenty-six (26) feet and fifty-two (52) feet behind the property line.

b. Driveways shall conform to the dimensions and requirements contained in Tables 3, 4 and 5.

**TABLE 3
DRIVEWAY WIDTHS AT PROPERTY LINE**

<u>TYPE OF USE</u>	<u>MINIMUM</u>	<u>MAXIMUM</u>
1 or 2 Family Residential – Local	9 ft	20 ft
Collectors	10 ft	20 ft
Other		
One-way Traffic	13 ft.	30 ft., 2-lane 36 ft., 3-lane
Two-way Traffic	23 ft.	30 ft., 2-lane 36 ft., 3-lane

NOTES:

1. All driveways shall be the standard "ramp" type except where: a) no curb exists in the vicinity of the proposed driveway, a flat slab type shall be installed, and b) a "street" type entrance may be allowed or required by the City Engineer.
2. This table also applies to private driveways as defined in Section A Definitions, of this chapter, with the exception of 1 or 2 family residential.
3. The City Engineer may approve driveway widths up to 50 feet where it is deemed necessary for safe movements of a large number of large vehicles. A pavement marking plan shall be required for all driveways greater than 30 feet in width.
4. Properties within the City’s Historic District may be exempt from these standards as provided by section 19-45 of the City Code.

**TABLE 4
DRIVEWAY TAPER WIDTHS AND MINIMUM SIDE PROPERTY LINE OFFSETS**

Type of Use	Right Turn Into Driveway			Right Turn Out of Driveway		
	TAPER WIDTH (feet) (a)		Property Line Offset (ft) (b)	TAPER WIDTH (feet) (a)		Property Line Offset (ft) (b)
	Minimum	Maximum		Minimum	Maximum	
1 or 2 Family Residential	5	13	0	3	13	2
Other						
Two-way Street						
Two-way Driveway	13	c	6.5	13	c	6.5
One-way Driveway						
Entrance	13	c	6.5	3	13	16.5
Exit	3	13	16.5	13	c	6.5
One-way Street-Right Side						
Two-way Driveway	13	c	6.5	13	c	6.5
One-way Driveway						
Entrance	13	c	6.5	3	3	16.5
Exit	3	3	16.5	13	c	6.5
One-way Street-Left Side						
Two-way Driveway	3	13	16.5	3	13	16.5
One-way Driveway						
Entrance	3	3	16.5	13	c	6.5
Exit	13	c	6.5	3	3	16.5

a. See SD-8-02 for location of measurements.

b. Measured at the curb line or edge of roadway, parallel to the edge of pavement.

c. This distance may equal the perpendicular distance between the back of the curb (or edge of pavement) and the edge of sidewalk (or sidewalk area) nearest the roadway, provided that this distance is greater than thirteen (13) feet.

NOTES:

1. The maximum width of the driveway at the gutter flow line measured between the points where the curb returns or driveway apron meets the curb line or edge of roadway is sixty-two (62) feet.
2. If a single driveway is allowed to serve two adjacent residences, the property line offsets may be waived by the City Engineer and the construction, maintenance and closure costs shall be a joint responsibility of each adjacent property owner.
3. If special conditions warrant, the City Engineer may modify widths and geometric requirements on a case by case basis.

TABLE 5
MINIMUM DISTANCE BETWEEN TWO OR MORE DRIVEWAYS FROM A
SINGLE ESTABLISHMENT OR RESIDENCE ALONG THE SAME STREET

Number	Distance between curb returns or driveway aprons at curb line or Edge of Roadway
2	20 feet
3	59 feet
4 or more	Not allowed except with permission of City Engineer

NOTES:

1. In no case may the total width of all driveways for any individual property exceed fifty (50) percent of the total property frontage along the same street, measured along the property line. See SD 8-07 of this chapter.
2. The sidewalk section shall be constructed at the grade established or approved by the City Engineer.
3. The centerline of driveways shall be at right angles to the roadway or curb. Where special conditions warrant, an acute angle may be used with the approval of the City Engineer.
4. Where special pedestrian or vehicular hazards may be encountered, public and private driveways may be restricted by the City Engineer to a one-way operation. Standard ONE WAY and DO NOT ENTER traffic signs shall be installed per MUTCD standards and maintained in a standard manner on the property by the person or persons having control of such property, giving notice of such restrictions.
5. No driveway shall be permitted to conflict with any municipal facility such as traffic signals, catch basins, fire hydrants, crosswalks, loading zones, bus stops, utility poles, fire-alarm supports, meter boxes and sewer cleanouts or other necessary structures, except with the express approval of the appropriate city officials. Any adjustments to municipal facilities to avoid such conflicts shall be at the expense of the abutting property owner.
6. No driveway curb return or edge of driveway apron at its intersection with the roadway shall be allowed within twenty-six (26) feet of the point of intersection of the street property lines at an intersection or street corner, as measured along the curb line or edge of roadway. See SD 8-07 of this chapter.
7. Two one-way driveways separated by a minimum of a ten (10) foot median may be allowed as one driveway. Property line offset requirements shall apply to each one-way driveway. The minimum distance between driveways shall not apply in that the two one-way driveways will be viewed as a single drive. The City Engineer has the authority to deny the use of two one-way driveways if in the opinion of staff it creates an unsafe situation.

8. Driveways and private streets shall comply with the vision clearance (sight distance triangles) requirements of Section 19-70 of the Wilmington City Code. In accordance with the City Code, sight distances along thoroughfares must be calculated in compliance with the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials requirements.

2. Requirements for Major Thoroughfares

- a. The following requirements apply to the major thoroughfares or portions of major thoroughfares designated by City Council and listed below in the Schedule of Major Thoroughfares designed for Supplemental Design Specifications. A copy of this schedule is on file in the office of the City Clerk. These requirements apply to all driveways constructed in the right-of-way along the major thoroughfare, and all driveways along the intersecting side streets originating from corner lots with frontage on the major thoroughfare. The requirements become effective on the date of designation by City Council.

SCHEDULE OF THOROUGHFARE SEGMENTS

- Burnett Boulevard from Carolina Beach Road to Myers Street.
- Burnett Boulevard from Virginia Avenue to Shipyard Boulevard.
- Carolina Beach Road from Burnett Boulevard to south City limits.
- College Road from north City limits to south City limits.
- Dawson Street from Third Street to Wrightsville Avenue.
- Eastwood Road from Smith Creek Parkway to east City limits.
- Front Street from Queen Street to Burnett Boulevard.
- Gordon Road from Military Cutoff Road to north City Limits.
- Holly Tree Road from South College Road in its entirety.
- Independence Boulevard in its entirety.
- Kerr Avenue from north City limits to Peachtree Avenue.
- Market Street from 23rd Street to east City limits at Military Cutoff Road.
- Martin Luther King, Jr. Parkway in its entirety.
- Masonboro Loop Road from Pine Grove Road to south City Limits.

- Military Cutoff Road in its entirety.
 - New Centre Drive from Racine Drive northwesterly to its terminus.
 - Oleander Drive in its entirety.
 - Peachtree Avenue from Kerr Avenue to Pine Grove Drive.
 - Pine Grove Drive in its entirety.
 - Randall Parkway in its entirety.
 - River Road from Shipyard Boulevard to south City limits.
 - Seventeenth Street from Princess Place to College Road.
 - Shipyard Boulevard in its entirety.
 - Sixteenth Street from Grace Street to Seventeenth Street.
 - Twenty-third Street from Princess Place Drive to north City limits.
 - Wooster Street from Eighteenth Street to Third Street.
 - Wrightsville Avenue from Castle Street to Eastwood Road.
- b. The number of driveways along the major thoroughfare shall be allocated at a rate of one driveway for the first 600 continuous linear feet of frontage, and one driveway for each additional 300 continuous linear feet of frontage or fraction thereof, as measured at the property line.

Frontage required for more than one driveway

	<u>Feet</u>
Two driveways	601
Three driveways	901
Four driveways	1201

- c. The location and spacing of driveways shall be as follows:
- (1) All driveways for corner lots shall have at the intersecting street property lines, a minimum corner clearance of 230 feet along the major thoroughfares and/or 60 feet along all intersecting side streets not classified herein as a major thoroughfare. All distances are measured along the curb line.
 - (2) All driveways along the major thoroughfares shall have a property line offset of 75 feet, measured at the curb line, however, driveways shall comply with

- (1) above and be at least 230 feet from the intersecting street when the lot has sufficient frontage to meet the requirement.
 - (3) In cases where more than one driveway is allowed in accordance with subsection 3b above, driveways must be separated by 250 feet, as measured along the curb line.
- d. Two one-way driveways may be considered as a single driveway provided that:
- (1) The minimum spacing between the two driveway curb returns is 150 feet at the curb line;
 - (2) The driveways are clearly signed and marked as one-way driveways, using pavement arrows and standard traffic signs;
 - (3) The maximum combined pavement width of both driveways at the street property line is 40 feet and the minimum width of a single driveway is 13 feet; and
 - (4) All other requirements of this provision are met.
- e. For parcels, tracts, or developments that have previously met the requirements of this section, any re-subdivision of such property, for sale or for lease, shall necessitate a re-assessment of the number and location of driveways for the entire parcel, tract, or development based on the new frontage measurements prior to the issuance of additional driveway permits. Any existing driveways found to be nonconforming based on these requirements shall be removed or relocated at the property owner's expense prior to the issuance of a permit for a new driveway.
- f. Any parcel of record on the effective date of this section that has been prohibited all vehicular access based on the requirements outlined above, shall be allowed one access point, the location and design of which shall be determined on a case-by-case basis. Lots created between March 17, 1987 and May 15, 1990, which were prohibited access under the provisions of Chapter VII, Section C.3. will not be allowed access under this provision. Lots combined prior to the effective date of revisions to this section become subject to all provisions of this section on the date of City Council's resolution.
- g. An exception to the allocation of driveways in Section 3.b. above, property line offset requirements in Section 3.c.(2) above and separation requirements in Section 3.c.(3) above may be allowed on a case-by-cased basis for delivery entrances and exits which: a) serve only delivery areas and not the main parking area, b) are one way or two way with truck turn around provided, and c) are signed for delivery vehicles only. The property line offset shall not be less than 6.5 feet under this exception.

- h. **Interconnectivity of Parking Lots:** Interconnectivity of parking lots between adjoining businesses is encouraged, thereby reducing the number of times vehicles must enter or exit thoroughfares. Properties subdivided under the City's regulations that have been in effect since March 17, 1987, or as the regulations have been modified since that date, are encouraged to provide additional interconnectivity. The number of driveways will continue to be limited based on the frontage of the property prior to the subdivision.

For tracts with 600 feet of frontage or less previously subdivided or developed along major thoroughfares prior to being subject to the driveway regulations as adopted or modified since March 17, 1987 and being owned and developed or redeveloped by different entities, interconnectivity is strongly encouraged. In addition it is strongly encouraged that driveways be shared (i.e. installed centered or near the joint property line and used by two {2} or more lots). Lots/tracts being developed or redeveloped will be limited to a maximum of one driveway per lot and will not be denied their one permitted driveway for providing interconnectivity.

3. **Added Lanes and Tapers**

Turn lanes and tapers, or acceleration and deceleration lanes may be required where it is anticipated by the City that the volume of traffic using the proposed driveway(s) may significantly interfere with the flow of traffic on the abutting public street. These turn lanes shall have a minimum of 150 feet of storage for left turning movements and 100 feet of storage for right turning movements. The length of taper shall be determined using the formula $WS/3$ where W is the width of lateral shift (width of turn bay) in feet and S is the posted speed limit in miles per hour. Where necessary, additional side clearances to accommodate such turn lanes and tapers may also be required. When widening of the roadway is required for the addition of turn bays, NCDOT's geometric guidelines for turn lanes shall be followed.

Requests for turn (deceleration) lanes and transition tapers shall be considered as part of the driveway permit and must be shown on the site plan with the driveway.

The cost of turn lanes, turn tapers, and deceleration lanes required in conjunction with a driveway permit shall be paid for by the developer. Property owners shall not be entitled to any claims or reimbursement for the expenditures involved in such construction on public right-of-way. All construction improvements located within public right-of-way shall be built to City standards and shall become public.

4. **Private Driveways**

Lengths of private driveways shall be as follows:

1. If the private driveway accesses a through street, as defined in Section A - Definitions, of this chapter the total length shall not exceed five hundred linear feet (500 l.f.).

2. If the private driveway does not access a through street, the combination of the public street(s) and private driveway(s) shall not exceed eight-hundred linear feet (800 l.f.).
3. Lengths are measured from the curbline of the intersecting through street to the bottom of the cul-de-sac bulb, or end of roadway, to the furthest end of the parking lot or area which the private driveway serves.

D. PARKING: ON-STREET

Standards for the design of on-street parking spaces on new streets shall be as follows:

The recommended minimum and standard width of parking lane, measured from the face of curb shall be eight feet (8 ft.). This width may be narrowed by one foot (1 ft.) when, in the opinion of the Subdivision Review Board, the public safety and convenience will be adequately served. A wider lane may be permitted to provide more clearance for passing traffic and to allow for later conversion to moving-lane usage. Typical lane configurations which include parking are shown in Table 1.

The standard length of an on-street parking space is twenty-three feet (23 ft.), measured parallel with the edge of roadway.

Parking at an angle other than parallel with the edge of roadway will not be allowed unless such angle parking is designated and required by an appropriate ordinance.

E. PARKING: OFF-STREET

Standards for the design of off-street parking facilities shall be as follows:

1. Minimum Parking Space Size:

- a. Each parking space for standard vehicle shall have a minimum width of eight and one-half feet (8.5 ft.) and a minimum length of eighteen feet (18 ft.).
- b. Each parking space for a compact automobile shall have a minimum width of eight feet (8 ft.) and a minimum length of sixteen feet (16 ft.). NOTE: These spaces are restricted to specific uses pursuant to the Zoning section of the City Code.
- c. Parking facilities accommodating less than five (5) vehicles - minimum dimensions of off-street parking spaces shall be nine feet (9 ft.) in width by nineteen feet (19 ft.) in length. The end of each parking space adjacent to a pedestrian walkway, public street right-of-way, circulation aisle, driveway, or planting area shall have an approved wheelstop installed at a minimum distance of thirty inches (30 in.) from the end of the stall to limit vehicle overhang. Any parking facility located adjacent to a public street shall have a suitable barrier installed therein to prevent any part of any vehicle from crossing the right-of-way line. Such passage shall be limited to properly designed and approved driveways.

2. Pavement Specifications

The minimum construction specifications for required parking areas shall conform to the following

- a. Concrete - if cement concrete is used for pavement, the minimum thickness shall be six inches (6 in.) for all uses.
- b. Bituminous - if bituminous mix is used for pavement, the minimum thickness shall be four inch (4 in.) compacted crushed stone base with a two inch (2 in.) I-2 asphaltic concrete surface, or approved equal, for all uses.
- c. Washed Stone - For parking facilities with at least five stalls and not more than 24 stalls, the following standards are acceptable:
 - (1) A base preparation of a one-inch grid base reinforcement shall cover a non-woven, permeable fabric. Over the grid reinforcement a washed stone shall be placed at a uniform, minimum depth of six inches (6 in.). The following is a list of materials that have been approved for this purpose;
 - Grid Reinforcement - Tensar Geogrid or equal;
 - Non-Woven, Porous Fabric - Trevira Spunbond Type 11 products or equal;
 - Washed Stone - #67 granite, #57 gravel, #32 gravel, or #57 limestone.
 - (2) A barrier consisting of pressure-treated lumber, extruded curbing, or an approved substitute must be anchored to a minimum depth of twenty-four inches (24 in.) around the entire perimeter of the parking facility, excluding driveways and pedestrian walkways. The anchors must be placed a maximum of five feet (5 ft.) apart, as measured on center. The top of the perimeter barrier must extend a minimum of four inches (4 in.) above the surface of washed stone.
 - (3) For all unpaved parking facilities, stalls shall be delineated by wheelstops. Wheelstops shall be anchored to the subgrade to a minimum depth of twenty-four inches (24 in.) and extend to a height of four inches (4 in.) above the surface of washed stone.
 - (4) Drainage attributable to all unpaved parking facilities shall be kept on-site, and shall not be allowed to flow onto adjacent properties or rights-of-way. A trench will be required at the lowest point of the slope of the parking facility. See Standard Detail 15-10 of this chapter.
- d. Subgrade - Preparation of subgrade for concrete, bituminous pavement, or crushed stone shall be in accordance with Chapter II, Section B, Paragraph 6, Subparagraph (a) as contained herein.

3. Pavement Markings

All paved parking lots designed to hold five (5) or more parking spaces shall have parking spaces delineated by the installation of pavement markings. The marking of traffic lanes, circulation aisles, prohibited parking zones, special parking spaces, and other features may also be required. All markings shall be in

accordance with the Manual of Uniform Traffic Control Devices or as otherwise approved by the City Traffic Engineer. The City Traffic Engineer may from time to time require or approve changes to the parking, circulation layout or traffic control devices in public vehicular areas. All markings, signs, wheelstops and other traffic control devices shall be kept well maintained and in serviceable condition.

4. Design

To the extent practicable, large parking lots should be configured to encourage drivers to utilize designated drive aisles and to discourage drivers from crossing vacant parking lanes as a “short-cut”.

The following designs are strictly samples of landscaping and design considerations for parking facilities, and should not be regarded as design standards or requirements.

- (1) Landscaping - For further information on planting materials and landscaping requirements, refer to Chapter VI - Landscaping.
- (2) Parking Facility Design - For further information on off-street parking facility requirements, refer to Table 6 and to SD 15-11, 15-12, 15-13 and 15-14 of this chapter. For further information on base course materials and the preparation of sub-base, refer to Chapter II, Section F.”

**TABLE 6
PARKING STALL DIMENSIONS**

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	C+D
MINIMUM STANDARD SIZE								
90	8.5	18.0	24.0	8.5	60.0	60.0	36.0	42.0
60	8.5	20.0	i14.0	9.5	j54.0	j50.0	35.5	j34.0
55	8.5	19.5	i13.0	10.0	j52.0	j45.5	34.4	j32.5
45	8.5	19.0	i13.0	12.0	j51.0	j42.0	32.3	j32.0
30	8.5	16.5	i13.0	17.0	j46.0	j45.3	25.5	j29.5
0	22.0	8.5	i12.0	18.0	j29.0	j N/A	17.0	j20.5
SMALL VEHICLES (SIGNS REQUIRED: "SMALL VEHICLE PARKING ONLY")								
90	8.0	16.0	24.0	8.0	56.0	56.0	32.0	40.0
60	8.0	17.8	i18.0	9.2	j53.6	j49.6	31.6	j35.8
55	8.0	17.3	i16.7	9.7	j51.3	j45.1	30.6	j34.0
45	8.0	17.0	i13.0	11.3	j47.0	j41.3	28.3	j30.0
30	8.0	14.8	i13.0	16.0	j42.6	j44.5	22.3	j27.8
0	21.0	8.0	i12.0	20.0	j28.0	j28.0	16.0	j20.0
9-FOOT WIDTH								
90	9.0	19.0	24.0	9.0	62.0	62.0	38.0	43.0
60	9.0	21.0	i18.0	10.4	j60.0	j55.5	37.5	j39.0
55	9.0	20.5	i16.7	11.0	j57.7	j50.5	36.3	j37.2
45	9.0	19.8	i13.0	12.7	j52.6	j46.5	33.6	j32.8
30	9.0	17.2	i13.0	17.0	j47.4	j50.3	26.5	j30.2
0	23.0	9.0	i12.0	23.0	j30.0	j30.0	18.0	j21.0

- A PARKING ANGLE
- B STALL WIDTH
- C REAR OF STALL TO FRONT OF STALL
- D AISLE WIDTH
- E LENGTH ALONG FRONT OF STALL
- F CURB TO CURB, DOUBLE-LOADED AISLE
- G STALL-END CENTER TO STALL-END CENTER, DOUBLE-LOADED AISLE
- H WIDTH OF DOUBLE ROW
- I PER TRAFFIC LANE
- J FOR ONE-WAY TRAFFIC ONLY

NOTES:

- 1) This table represents minimum and common alternative parking lot design standards.
- 2) Angle in degrees
- 3) Dimensions in feet

F. BICYCLE PARKING

Where Bicycle Parking is provided under Section 19-43, Paragraph (f) of the City Zoning Ordinance, the following standards shall apply:

a. Construction

When a bicycle parking facility is adjacent to motor vehicle parking, the surface and subgrade construction shall be the same as that for the adjacent motor vehicle parking.

b. Bicycle Parking Mechanisms

All bicycle parking facilities should accommodate a minimum of four (4) bicycles per 150 square feet. Mechanisms for securing the bicycles in place should consist of a standard rack anchored into the subgrade.

G. TRAFFIC CONTROL DEVICES

In order to provide the motoring public with uniform design and meaning of traffic signs, signals and markings, all traffic control devices installed in new subdivisions and other areas open to public access shall conform to accepted standards of uniformity. New "STOP" signs on streets to be dedicated as public are to be installed by City crews. (Other required traffic control devices are to be installed at the expense of the developer/contractor. In certain instances City crews may install these after payment has been made to the City.) The standards to be used as guides are:

1. The Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices for Streets and Highways, (MUTCD) published by the U.S. Department of Transportation, Federal Highway Administration, Washington, D.C., latest edition, and all errata and same source supplements thereto, and official interpretations thereof.
2. "North Carolina Sign Supplement to the MUTCD," Traffic Engineering Branch, Division of Highways, NCDOT, latest edition.
3. "Standard Highway Signs as Specified in the MUTCD" USDOT, FHWA, latest edition.
4. Any other published or non-published guidelines or regulations of City, State, and Federal agencies dealing with such matters.
5. Roadway Standard Drawings, Highway Design Branch, Division of Highways, NCDOT, latest edition.

Any guidelines may be revised or amended when, in the opinion of appropriate officials, including the Subdivision Review Board, the public would be better served by such revisions.

NOTE: Parking Lot Markings – Parking lot markings shall be required. However, in that the manuals are designed for traffic traveling along roads, the dimensions of

the pavement markings only can be reduced. The pavement markings are to be to true proportions of the design manuals, but may be reduced in size by up to a maximum of fifty percent (50%).

H. STREET NAME SIGNS

Street name signs shall be constructed to the following specifications:

1. Post:

- a. Galvanized u-channel:
- b. Twelve (12) feet in length, minimum if not set in concrete:
- c. Two and three-eighths (2-3/8) inches outside diameter, three (3) pounds per foot in weight.
- d. Bottom of sign shall be a minimum of seven (7) feet above ground.
- e. When required by City Traffic Engineer the post must be anchored at ground level with three (3) angle bars driven into ground and connected to post with special bolted connecting ring.

2. Sign Blanks:

- a. Extruded flange-reinforced-edge aluminum blades.
- b. Minimum of twenty-four (24) inches in length and six (6) inches in height. For intersections with a major thoroughfare, a minimum nine (9) inch height blade is required.
- c. Twenty-five hundredths (0.250) inches thick at flanges.
- d. Ninety-one hundredths (0.091) inches thick at center of blade.
- e. Two (2) seven-sixteenths (7/16) inch holes in top flange end. Two (2) seven-sixteenths (7/16) inch holes in bottom flange. Each hole being one and three-fourths (1-3/4) inches from the vertical centerline of the blade and with their centers seven sixteenth (7/16) inch from the extreme top or bottom edge of the blade.

3. Hardware

Standard approved vandal-proof caps and crosses with recessed head attachment bolts and set-screws.

4. Lettering

- a. All block capitals;
- b. Name of street four (4) inches in height for six (6) inch blades, six (6) inches in height for nine (9) inch blades;

- c. Prefixes “N” (north), “S” (south), etc. two (2) inches in height for six (6) inch blades and three (3) inches in height for the nine (9) inch blades;
- d. Suffixes “ST” (street), “AVE” (avenue), “BLVD” (boulevard), etc. two (2) inches in height for six (6) inch blades and three (3) inches in height for the nine (9) inch blades;
- e. Block numbers - two (2) inches in height for six (6) inch blades and three (3) inches in height for the nine (9) inch blades;

5. **Color:** Reflective white lettering on reflective green background (may be "reverse-screened").
6. Street name signs at intersections involving at least one public street or street to be dedicated as public are to be installed by City crews. Street name signs for private streets shall have the word "PRIVATE" incorporated thereon in letters at least one (1) inch in height.

I. PAVEMENT MARKINGS

Pavement marking may be required on streets and within parking lots. When pavement markings are required a pavement markings plan shall be developed and submitted to City staff for review. Pavement markings shall conform with the traffic control reference materials referred to in paragraph G. above, except as provided herein.

1. Streets: Pavement markings for streets shall be of thermoplastic materials. The materials and construction process shall be consistent with the Wilmington's contract specifications and/or the NCDOT specifications. The thermoplastic material is not to be applied until the asphalt pavement has been allowed to cure sufficiently to let the volatiles escape from the pavement. Temporary pavement markings of paint may be required in high traffic areas.
2. Parking Lots and other sites: Pavement markings for parking lots and other site development areas may be required. Pavement marking at driveway locations for high traffic generators shall be of thermoplastic material. All other required pavement markings within these areas may be either thermoplastic or approved traffic paint. All pavement marking shall conform to the standards referenced in Paragraph G. above, provided that the City Engineer (or his designee) may approve directional markings to be reduced in size up to a maximum of fifty percent (50%). Markings that are allowed to be reduced in size shall be directly proportional to the full size marking for all dimensions. **All required pavement markings are required to be maintained.** Pavement markings shall not be applied until the pavement has been allowed to cure sufficiently to all the volatiles to escape. Pavement markings that fade or peel because they were applied too early shall be reinstalled.

J. STREET LIGHTING

1. Streetlight Fixtures

The "standard streetlight fixture" shall be a high-pressure sodium vapor, Type III enclosed cutoff fixture that is attached to an arm bracket to a wooden or fiberglass pole and is leased from Progress Energy Carolinas. "Nonstandard streetlight fixture" shall be a high-pressure sodium vapor, Type V or a Type III "shoebox" fixture leased from Progress Energy Carolinas. These fixtures are typically mounted on top of a fourteen-foot (minimum height) post.

2. General

- a. Street lighting shall be installed in all new major subdivisions.
- b. Requests for street lighting shall be submitted with plans that shall show landscaping types and locations.
- c. Streetlights should be located at adjoining property lines and at street intersections.
- d. Streetlight locations shall be designed to minimize potential hazards to traffic, and obstructions to visibility.
- e. Trees shall be planted at a minimum distance from a streetlight equal to one-half the recommended street tree spacing shown on SD 15-17 located in Chapter VI (Landscaping).

3. Privately-maintained streets

In subdivisions where the streets are platted as private, the homeowners' association, property owners' association or developer must enter into an agreement with Progress Energy Carolinas to provide street lighting as required under Rate Schedule ALS set forth by the North Carolina Utilities Commission (NCUC).

4. Nonstandard fixtures along dedicated public streets

Request for nonstandard street lighting shall be submitted in letterform. The incorporated homeowners' or property owners' association shall enter into an agreement with Progress Energy Carolinas and the City of Wilmington.

K. RAILROAD GRADE CROSSINGS

Highway traffic control devices at all railroad crossings shall conform to the guidelines referenced in Section G of this chapter. Additional requirements of the appropriate railway agencies shall also be considered.

L. BIKEWAYS

Bikeway design and construction shall be in accordance with North Carolina Department of Transportation Guidelines and Standards, latest revision.

M. TRAFFIC IMPACT STUDIES

The purpose of this policy is to establish a process for evaluating the impact of proposed development projects on the level of service and safety of the transportation system within the City of Wilmington.

1. Applicability

Any new development, redevelopment or expansion anticipated to generate more than 100 trips (including pass-by and internal capture trips) during any peak hour

period on the surrounding roadways (generally between 7:00-9:00 a.m. and 4:00-6:00 p.m.) upon completion of all or a portion of its sections must complete a traffic impact study. In the case of currently developed property, a net increase of 100 peak hour trips will require the completion of a study. Staff may also require a traffic study for any proposed development within 500 feet of an existing signalized intersection that that operates at a Level of Service E or F. Further, where necessary, the focus of the traffic impact study may be expanded to evaluate issues such as internal circulation, safety and queuing. All traffic studies must be signed and sealed by a Professional Engineer. City staff, the Subdivision Review Board, or City Council may require or waive the requirement for completion of a traffic impact study for any proposed development regardless of size.

2. Pre-submittal Requirements

The firm or individual conducting the study will submit a written scope proposal to City Planning, Traffic Engineering and the North Carolina Department of Transportation (if applicable) to initiate the process. A scope proposal must include:

- a. Project name
- b. Existing zoning or use
- c. Proposed zoning or use
- d. Proposed development intensity (Number of units in the case of residential developments, gross floor area in commercial and industrial developments or other appropriate independent variable as determined by City staff)
- e. An estimate of the AM and PM peak hour driveway traffic to be generated by the proposed development using the Institute of Transportation Engineers (ITE) Trip Generation Manual (most recent edition), including considerations for internal capture and/or pass-by trips. Estimate of peak hour traffic not using the most recent ITE Trip Generation Manual must identify the source of the information.
- f. A study area map, including a list of intersections to be analyzed.
- g. A diagram illustrating the distribution of new site trips.
- h. Estimated horizon year
- i. Background growth rate
- j. A legible project location map showing the development (including proposed driveway accesses) and the surrounding area with major and minor thoroughfares at an appropriate scale.

City staff will inform the firm or individual of other site specific issues that need to be addressed by the study and will make available all existing data on traffic operations in the vicinity of the proposed project upon request. City staff will

provide the firm or individual with a written approval outlining the final scope of the study.

3. Submission Requirements

Traffic impact studies must be submitted at least four weeks in advance of a scheduled meeting at which the project will be reviewed by the Subdivision Review Board, Planning Commission or City Council. All traffic studies must be accompanied by an application form and appropriate review fee. At minimum, traffic studies must include:

- a. Study purpose and objectives
- b. Description of site and study area
- c. A summary of existing conditions including, but not limited to, surrounding street and key intersection traffic volumes, turning movements, and capacities, safety deficiencies and funded transportation improvements
- d. Anticipated or approved developments in the area
- e. Trip generation, trip distribution, modal split, and discussion of:
 - Source of trip generation rate including the ITE code and assumptions used or data collected for any variations from generally accepted ITE rates or equations
 - Pass-by trip factors and assumptions
 - Internal capture assumptions for mixed use developments
 - Trip distribution and modal split assumptions
- f. Projection of future traffic volumes and assessment of future roadway and intersection operating conditions for the year of the ultimate completion of the project. All projections should specifically document projected background traffic as well as the traffic generated by the proposed development. If the project is to be phased, then an assessment of conditions after the completion of each phase of the development is required. If the unphased build-out period of the project is greater than nine years, then a minimum of one intermediate and one full build-out impact assessment is required. All assessments should include the following three scenarios:
 - Existing conditions
 - No build future year
 - Future year build conditions
- g. Recommendations for site access and transportation improvements or mitigation measures needed to maintain traffic flow to, from, within and adjacent to the proposed development at an acceptable and safe level of service (generally assumed as LOS D). Any recommendations for travel demand measures, extension of public transportation or roadway improvements should identify funding sources for these improvements.
- h. Data collected and travel simulation models for the study will be made available to City staff for evaluation of the study conclusions. The format for

data submission, as well as the format for data to be provided by the City, will be determined in through the scoping process.

- i. Approved scope

4. Re-submission Requirements

In some cases, changes to site conditions or to the trip generation characteristics of the proposed development will require the re-submittal of a traffic study. The re-submittal fee will apply when an increase in trip generation occurs due to a change initiated by the applicant in building size or land use type. The re-submittal fee will not apply if the change results in a decrease in intensity or trip generation. Studies re-submitted for review must follow the original scope except where approved by City staff. Updating a traffic study that has expired constitutes a new submittal.

5. Approval and Validity

Traffic studies will be approved by City staff in writing and will outline the required improvements associated with the project. Approval of the traffic study will be valid until the year following the analyzed build-out year. For example, if the build-out year analyzed was 2009, the traffic study is valid until the January 1, 2010.

This page intentionally left blank.

VIII

*PUBLIC
TRANSPORTATION
SYSTEM*

VIII

PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>SECTION</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
A. <u>GENERAL</u>	8-1
B. <u>MINIMUM DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS</u>	8-1
C. <u>MINIMUM CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS AND METERIALS</u>	8-5
D. <u>GENERAL GUIDE FOR THE PROPER LOCATION OF TERMINAL FACILITIES</u>	8-5

A. GENERAL

The design and construction specifications and standards as specified herein shall be minimum required standards for the City of Wilmington.

B. MINIMUM DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS AND STANDARDS

1. Terminal Facilities

a. Bus Turnouts

Turnout lanes shall be provided adjacent to the roadway to allow buses to pull in and out of the flow of traffic with reasonable ease and to park parallel to and out of the flow of traffic. The minimum acceptable design standards shall be those as shown in Figure 1, or as approved by the Subdivision Review Board.

b. Passenger Shelters

Shelters shall be provided to shield the users of the transportation system from inclement weather conditions. The shelter shall be designed to accommodate the anticipated number of users, but shall not be designed to accommodate less than five (5) people.

In designing the shelter, proper cover and overhand, wind resistance, height and width (clearance), seating and acceptable construction materials shall be considered. The shelter may be semi-enclosed (three sides) or be free-standing, dependent on the proper cover and overhang. The minimum acceptable design specifications for a shelter are shown on Figures 2 and 3.

c. Signs and Markings

Identification signs and/or letters shall be prominently displayed on the shelter and/or adjacent to the turnout lane area which shall consist of the words "BUS STOP" in letters not less than three and one-half (3-1/2) inches in height and lettering thickness of not less than one-half (1/2) inch in width. Signs and/or markings for no parking and lane divisions, as required by the Subdivision Review Board, shall be provided by the subdivider and shall conform to the City's standards for traffic control devices.

d. Dedication of the Terminal Facilities

Public Dedication - Upon the dedication of the terminal facilities for public use and acceptance by the public, the Transit Authority shall assume the responsibility of maintaining the passenger shelter and the City shall have the responsibility of maintaining the turnout lane and walkway area. The City shall,

after the initial acquisition and proper installation of all signs and/or markings by the subdivider, assume the responsibility of the maintenance of said signs and/or markings.

PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION SERVICE

MINIMUM DESIGN STANDARDS AND SPECIFICATIONS TERMINAL FACILITIES AND TURNOUT LANES

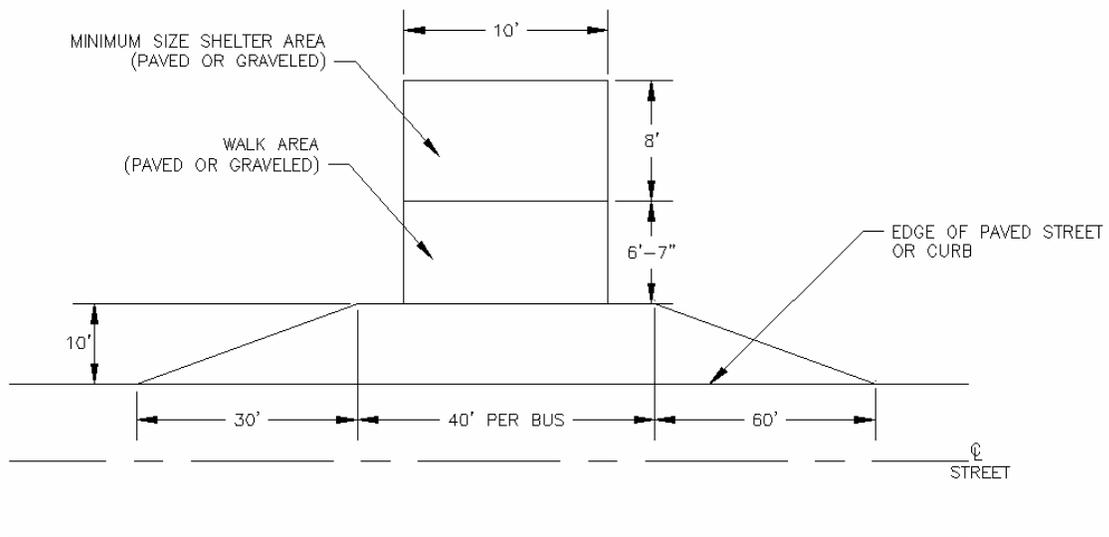


FIGURE 1

PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION SYSTEM

PASSENGER SHELTERS MINIMUM DESIGN SPECIFICATIONS

The specifications as shown in Figures 2 and 3 are established for the purpose of specifying the minimum size and example, and not for the purpose of establishing a typical acceptable architectural design. The design of shelters may be such which will be in harmony with the theme of the subdivision or in harmony with the existing terrain or structures.

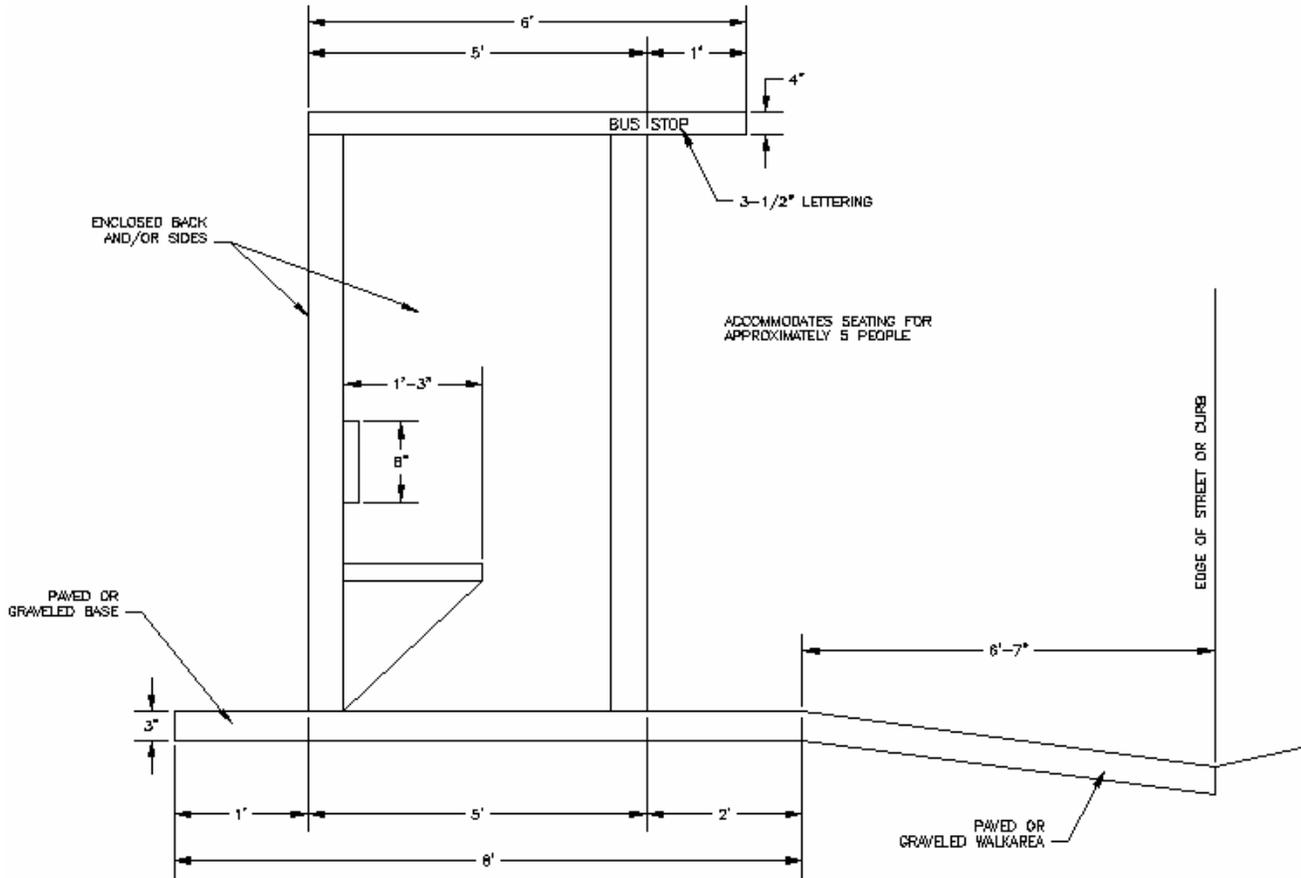


FIGURE 2

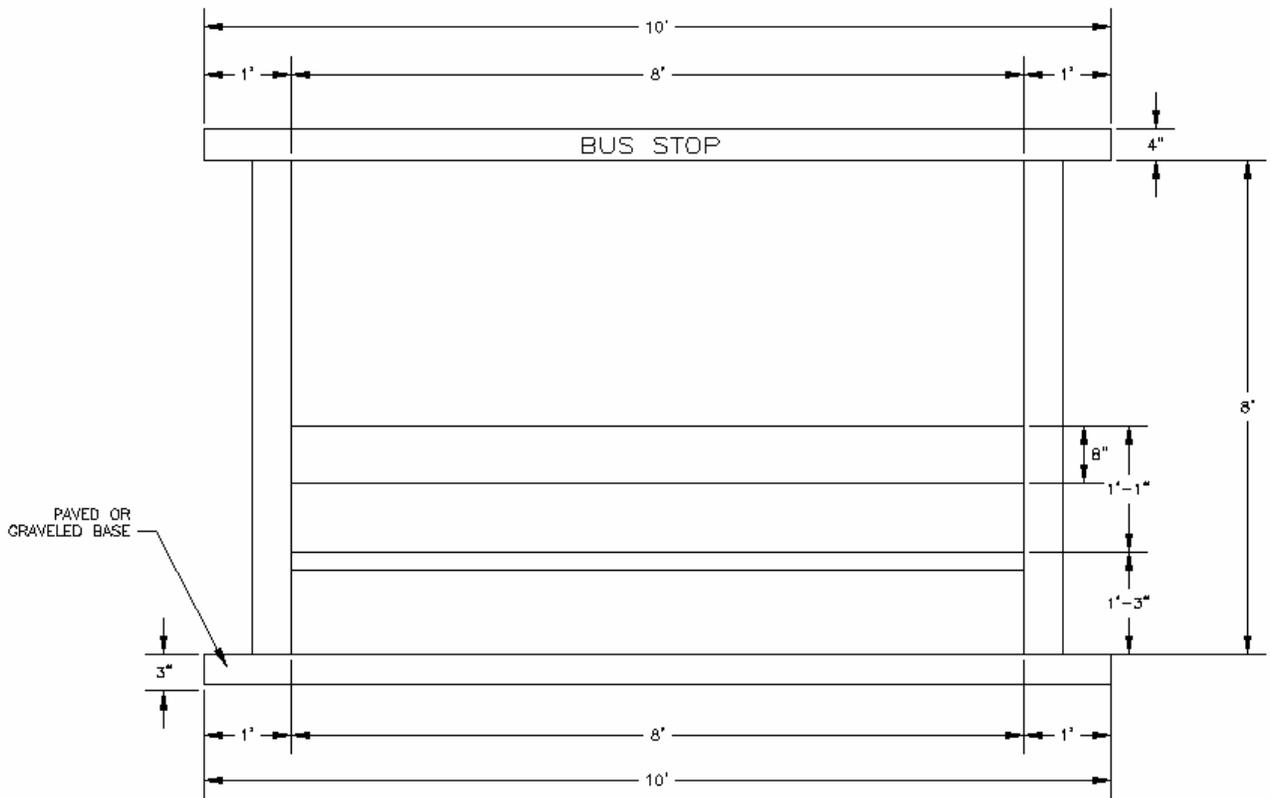


FIGURE 3

C. MINIMUM CONSTRUCTION STANDARDS AND MATERIALS

1. Terminal Facilities

a. Turnouts

The construction standards, methods and materials for turnouts shall be in accordance with the construction standards, methods and materials established for public streets as specified herein.

The area located between the shelter and the paved bus lane shall be paved (asphalt or concrete) or provided with gravel three (3) inches in depth.

b. Passenger Shelters

Shelters shall be constructed to meet the size needed to accommodate its anticipated passenger use. The site shall not be less than that specified in Figures 2 and 3. The acceptable materials are as follows:

- (1) Wood (treated with a preservative)
- (2) Brick
- (3) Concrete block
- (4) Metals
- (5) Stable acrylics (clear or smoked)
- (6) Combinations of the above

The structure shall meet the structural requirements of the North Carolina State building Code.

The area beneath the shelter as shown in Figures 2 and 3 shall be paved (asphalt or concrete) or graveled for a depth of three (3) inches.

D. GENERAL GUIDE FOR THE PROPER LOCATIN OF TERMINAL FACILITIES

1. General

Careful analysis will show that the proper location for terminal facilities will vary with circumstances and that need can be shown for near-side, far-side and mid-block locations. The locations of terminal facilities should be standardized within the general community so as to avoid undue confusion. However, standardization should not be a substitute for sound judgment whenever conditions render the standard practice inappropriate.

The motor bus is a large and at times awkward vehicle, but the fact that it can carry more people per foot of road space than other vehicles warrants particular consideration in the allocation of street area. It is important that the presence of buses does not reduce the capacity of the road-way so as to result in a net loss in its passenger-carrying ability. Therefore, it is imperative that terminal facilities be of adequate length and so located that the net adverse effect of the terminal facility on the traffic stream (including pedestrians) is kept to a minimum. When terminal facilities of adequate length are provided, and parking restrictions enforced, proper usage of the facility on the part of bus operators can be expected.

2. General Considerations (Safety)

- a.** Consideration must be given to the effect that the stopped bus will have on sight distance for pedestrians using the parallel and transverse crosswalks at the intersection.
- b.** The terminal facility must be located so that passengers may alight and board with reasonable safety.
- c.** Consideration must be given to the effect that the stopped bus will have on-sight distance for parallel traffic and cross traffic. For instance, at a near-side stop, vehicular right turns are facilitated and sight distance is improved when the terminal facilities are set back from the crosswalk.
- d.** The conflicts in the traffic stream caused by a bus, as it enters or leaves a terminal facility, must be considered.

3. Traffic Flow

- a.** The position of a bus entering, leaving or stopped at the terminal facility will affect other moving traffic and must be considered, particularly where turns are involved.
- b.** The terminal facility must be of sufficient length that a stopped bus does not interfere with moving traffic and a departing bus does not swing beyond the lane adjacent to the terminal facility.

4. General Characteristics

In determining the proper location of terminal facilities, the choice lies between near-side, far-side and mid-block stops. A decision as to the type of terminal facility to be used should be based on engineering judgment of specific factors for each type of terminal facility. The several types of terminal facilities have the following general characteristics.

a. Near-Side Terminal Facility

- (1) A minimum of interference is caused at locations where traffic is heavier on the leaving side than on the approach side of the intersection.
- (2) Less interference will usually be caused at locations where the crossing street is a one-way street with its direction from right to left.
- (3) Passengers generally alight close to a crosswalk.
- (4) There is less interference with traffic turning into the bus route street from a side street.
- (5) Heavy vehicular right turns can cause conflicts, especially where a vehicle makes a right turn from the left of a stopped bus.
- (6) Buses often obscure stop signs, traffic signals or other control devices, as well as pedestrians crossing in front of the bus.
- (7) A bus standing at a near-side facility obscures sight distance of a driver entering the bus street from the right.
- (8) Where the terminal facility is too short for occasional heavy demand, the overflow will obstruct the traffic lane.

b. Far-Side Terminal Facility

- (1) Right turns can be accommodated with less conflict.
- (2) A minimum of interference is caused at locations where traffic is heavier on the approach side than on the leaving side of the intersection.
- (3) Less interference will usually be caused at locations where the crossing street is a one-way street with its direction from left to right.
- (4) Left turning buses approaching a far-side (around the corner) facility commence their left turn from the proper lane. Leaving a near-side facility they would have to cross traffic in the lane to their left.
- (5) Stopped buses do not obstruct sight distance to the left for vehicles entering or crossing from a side street.

- (6) At a signalized intersection, buses can find a gap to enter the traffic stream without interference, except where there are heavy turning movements into the street with the bus route.
- (7) Waiting passengers assemble at less-crowded sections of the sidewalk.
- (8) Buses in the terminal facility will not obscure traffic control devices or pedestrian movement at the intersection.
- (9) Intersections may be blocked if other vehicles park illegally in the terminal facility, thereby obstructing buses and causing traffic to back up across the intersection.
- (10) Facilities on a narrow street or within a moving lane may block traffic on both the street with the bus route and on the cross street.
- (11) A bus standing at the far-side facility obscures sight distance, to the right, of a driver entering the bus street from the right.
- (12) Where the terminal facility is too short for occasional heavy demand, the overflow will obstruct the cross street.

c. Mid-Block Terminal Facility

- (1) Buses cause a minimum of interference with sight distance of both vehicles and pedestrians.
- (2) Stops can be located adjacent to major bus passenger generators.
- (3) Waiting passengers assemble at less-crowded sections of the sidewalk.
- (4) The removal of considerable curb parking is required.
- (5) Pedestrian jaywalking is more prevalent. This is hazardous and creates vehicular friction and congestion.
- (6) Patrons from cross streets must walk farther.

5. Special Factors to Consider

a. Through Bus Movements

- (1) At intersections controlled by signals or Stop or Yield signs, when transit is critical but traffic and parking are not critical, a near-side terminal facility is preferable.

- (2) At intersections where heavy left or right turns occur, a far-side terminal facility should be used. If a far-side terminal facility is impractical, the facility should be moved to an adjacent intersection or to a mid-block location in advance of or beyond the intersection.
- (3) At intersections where bus routes and heavy traffic movements diverge, a far-side facility can be used to advantage.
- (4) At intersections controlled by signals or Stop or Yield signs, when traffic or parking is critical and transit is not critical, a far-side installation is best.

b. Turning Bus Movements

In determining the proper location of terminal facilities with reference to turning bus movements, the problems of bus-vehicle conflict become more pronounced. Sound engineering judgment of specific factors for each type of terminal facility becomes critical.

(1) Right Turn-Curb Space Critical, Traffic Not Critical

- a) Establish near-side facility prior to turn.
- b) If right turns are an appreciable factor, locate facility some distance prior to intersection, possibly mid-block.

(2) Right Turn-Traffic Critical, Curb Space Not Critical

- a) Establish far-side facility after turn.
- b) If far-side facility is impractical, establish mid-block before or after turn.
- c) If mid-block is impractical, move to another intersection.

(3) Right Turn-Traffic Critical, Curb Space Critical

These are special cases, where experience and engineering judgment must be applied using principles contained herein. Experimentation often will be necessary.

(4) Left Turns

- a) Establish far-side facility after bus has turned. This may require an extra-long facility to permit bus to complete turning maneuver.
- b) If far-side facility cannot be established, use a mid-block facility after turn. A mid-block facility prior to turn may be feasible if traffic is

sufficiently light and the block long enough to allow the bus to move from the stopped position to the left turn position without traffic conflict.

- c) If both (a) and (b) are impractical, establish facility at an adjacent intersection.

c. Mid-Block Facility

Mid-block terminal facilities are recommended under the following conditions:

- (1) Where traffic or physical street characteristics prohibit a near- or far-side facility adjacent to an intersection.
- (2) Where large factories, commercial establishments or other large bus passenger generators exist, and heavy loading therefore makes the location desirable.

A mid-block facility should be located at the far side of a mid-block pedestrian crosswalk, if one exists, so standing buses will not block a motorist's view of pedestrians in the crosswalk.

d. Bay-Type Facility

Bay-type terminal facilities are encouraged where conditions permit. These involve relocation of the curb so as to flare the street width and allow a bus to pull completely out of the normal traffic and parking lanes. Where used, they should be consistent with this guide.

e. Passenger Interchange Points

If transfer movements between bus routes are heavy, consideration should be given to locating terminal facilities so as to minimize crosswalk movements of transferring passengers. Engineering judgment must be used to determine if these transfer movements are important enough to supercede the other considerations which determine terminal facility locations.

f. One-Way Streets

The Basic principles for terminal facility locations on two-way streets apply also on one-way streets. A special consideration is this: Where the facility turns left, the preceding facility must be located far enough in advance to allow the bus to shift to the left traffic lane. A far-side facility after a left turn from a one-way street is feasible but requires an extra long terminal facility to permit the bus to complete its turning maneuver and to pull in parallel and close to the curb.

g. Adjacent Establishments

When dealing with major passenger generators it will be an advantage to locate the terminal facility so that the crosswalk movements are minimized. However, an engineering investigation is necessary to determine if the

importance of crosswalk movements involved is sufficient to supersede the other considerations for terminal facility locations.

In general, it is desirable to avoid "boxing in" a commercial establishment at a corner by having bus zones on both sides of it. However, if there is one predominant transfer movement at an intersection, it is desirable to locate the terminal facilities so that passenger walking will be minimized. This transfer movement should be of sufficient volume to supersede other considerations.

h. Physical Features Affecting Passengers

For the convenience and protection of bus passengers, consideration should be given to the proximity of shelter and adequate lighting. The existence of traffic control features which provide for passenger safety when boarding and alighting should be considered. Along avenues with planted or grass parkway strips, it may be desirable to add a side-walk slab between the existing sidewalk and the curb where otherwise a bus passenger would have to cross wet grass or mud during inclement weather. This added sidewalk slab has the further advantage of having the bus passenger stand where it is desired to have the terminal facility. Shelter and lighting can be modified to accommodate a facility location determined by other considerations.

It is desirable to avoid placing bus zones at a location where there are a series of raised and lowered curbs, since passengers may misstep and injure themselves when alighting from the bus at a lowered or sloping curb.

i. Paving Width

Where the pavement is substantially wider on one side of the intersection than on the other, the terminal facility may be best located on the side with the wider pavement if traffic volumes are comparable.

j. Frequency of Stops

Generally, each stop adds to the inconvenience of the majority of passengers, decreases the average speed of operation and promotes congestion. Superfluous locations should be avoided.

In practice, spacing may range from one stop per block to stops in alternate blocks where City blocks are shorter. The location of important buildings and traffic generators, and the configuration of side streets leading into the bus route, should be considered in spacing the stops.

Whenever consistent with safety and adequate sight distances, passenger service stops can be combined with mandatory stops required for stop signs, traffic signals, railroad crossings and the like. The number of stops along a given bus route will be decreased and scheduled speed will be increased.

k. Parking Practices

The best engineered facility is of little value if the attendant parking prohibition is not strictly enforced. If the bus must "double Park" because its designated curb space is occupied by parked or stopped vehicles, other traffic may be blocked or its flow made hazardous. Devices and markings that give the facility prominence such as curb painting, tow-away zones and transit emblems may deter motorists from parking in the facility and aid enforcement.

6. Minimum Lengths

The following recommended minimum lengths assume forty (40) foot buses and high-frequency service. For longer or shorter buses, lengths should be adjusted accordingly. In Figures 1, 2 and 3, the length of forty (40) feet beyond the bus stopping point is in excess of the minimum required by bus turning radii, but provides for better maneuvering and smoother reentry into the traffic stream when leaving the facility. The forty (40) foot distance could be reduced if absolutely necessary.

In the case of infrequent service, sound engineering judgment may call for a compromise between desirable facility lengths and demand for parking in the area.

a. Near-Side Facility

A near-side type facility for a single bus should be one hundred and five (105) feet in length as measured from the front of the stopped bus to the front of the preceding parking stall.

b. Far-Side Facility

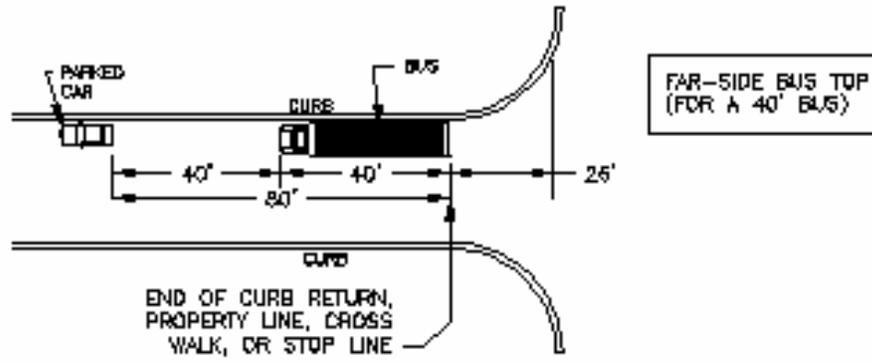
A far-side type facility for a single bus should be eight (80) feet in length as measured from the rear of the stopped bus to the end of the first parking stall.

A far-side type facility after a right turn for a single bus should be one hundred and forty (140) feet in length as measured from the edge of the lane from which the bus is turning to the end of the first parking stall*

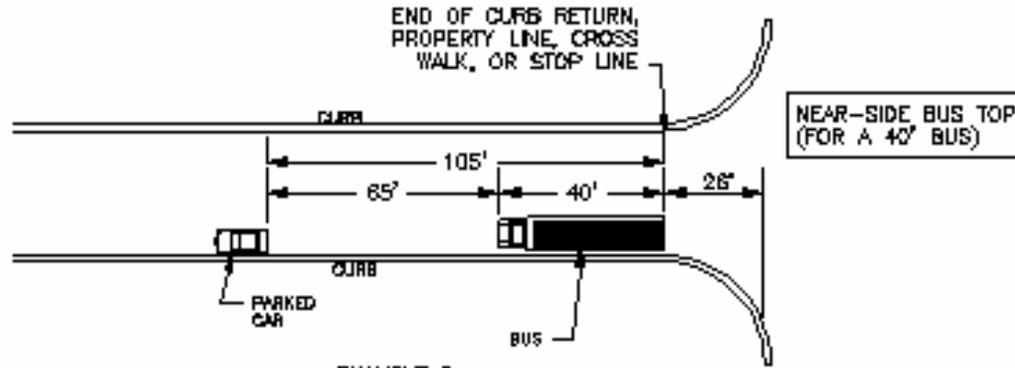
c. Mid-Block Facility

A mid-block facility for a single bus should be one hundred and forty (140) feet in length as measured from the front of the preceding parking stall to the rear of the next parking stall.*

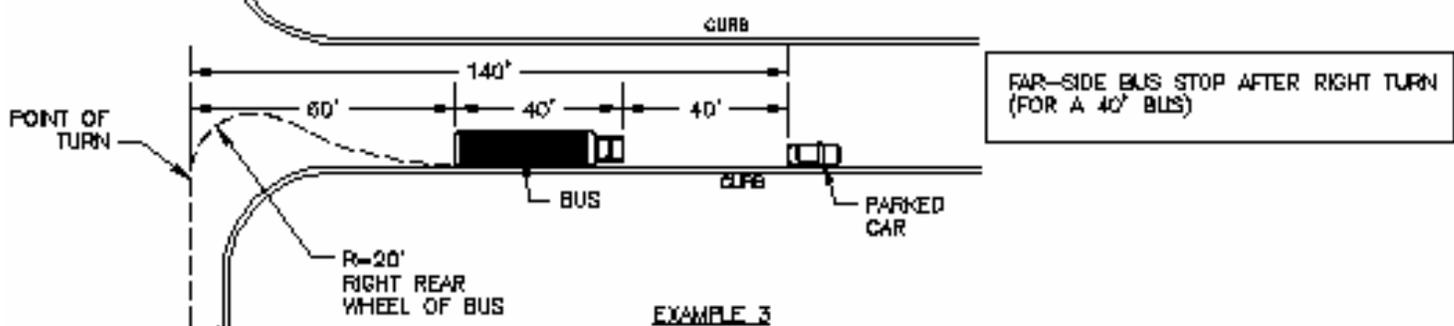
*An additional forty-five (45) feet of length should be provided for each additional bus expected to stop simultaneously at any given terminal facility area. This allows for the length of the extra bus (40 feet) plus five (5) feet between buses.



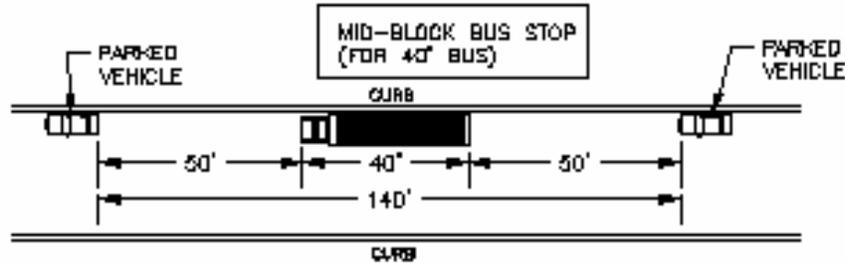
EXAMPLE 1



EXAMPLE 2



EXAMPLE 3



EXAMPLE 4

FIGURE 4

IX

SANITATION

IX

SANITATION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION

A. REFUSE COLLECTION

PAGE

9-1

A. REFUSE COLLECTION

1. Planned Residential Development

Where refuse collection service is to be provided for each dwelling, street plazas will be constructed with sufficient width (minimum for (4) feet) so that residential refuse containers can be placed immediately in front of each residence between the sidewalk and the street.

Where centralized refuse collection service is to be provided by optimally-placed large containers designed to be mechanically handled, the requirements shall be the same as for Planned Commercial and Industrial Development as given below. The developer, tenant or homeowners association shall be responsible for placing refuse in the centralized containers.

2. Planned Commercial and industrial Development

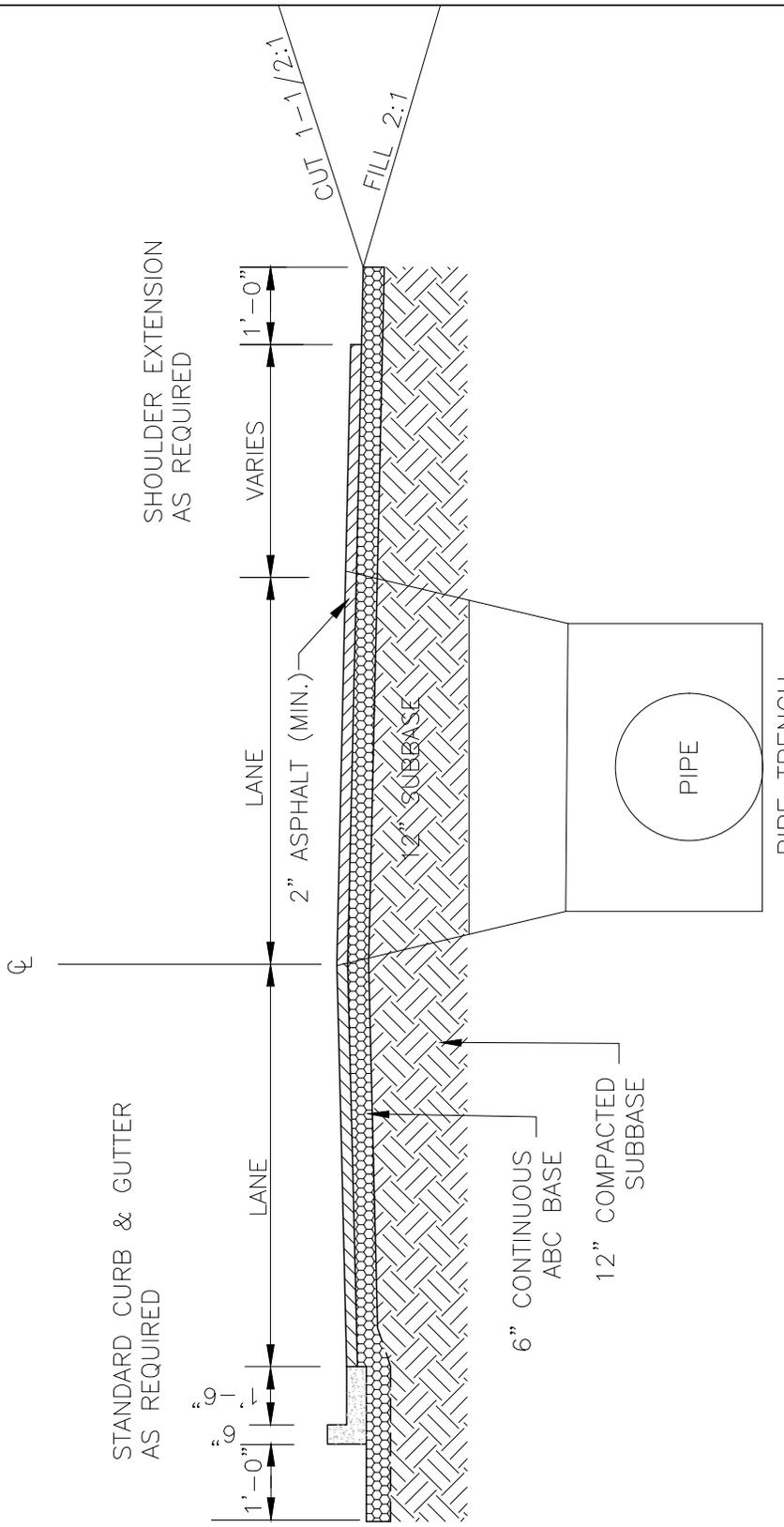
Commercial and industrial establishments will be serviced by containers designed to be mechanically handled.

The Sanitation Division of the Public Services and Facilities Department will assist the developer and his engineer or architect in determining the size and placement of the containers determined by building arrangement and occupancy.

Refuse containers designed to be mechanically handled shall be placed on a permanent concrete pad. The concrete pad shall have minimum thickness of four (4) inches and be a minimum of eight (8) feet square.

Sufficient clearance around the pad shall be provided for refuse trucks so that containers may be safely serviced. Containers shall not be placed where electrical wires, guy wires, trees, shrubs or vehicles may create unsafe working conditions. Clearance must be a minimum of eighteen (18) feet in height. Ample maneuvering room shall be provided around any pad installation so that container may be serviced without danger of damage to property of others or to service equipment. If pad is placed in a parking area, design shall be such as to prohibit parking in the immediate vicinity of the container.

APPENDIX - STANDARD DETAILS



PIPE TRENCH
PER SPECIFICATIONS
SEE SD 1-05

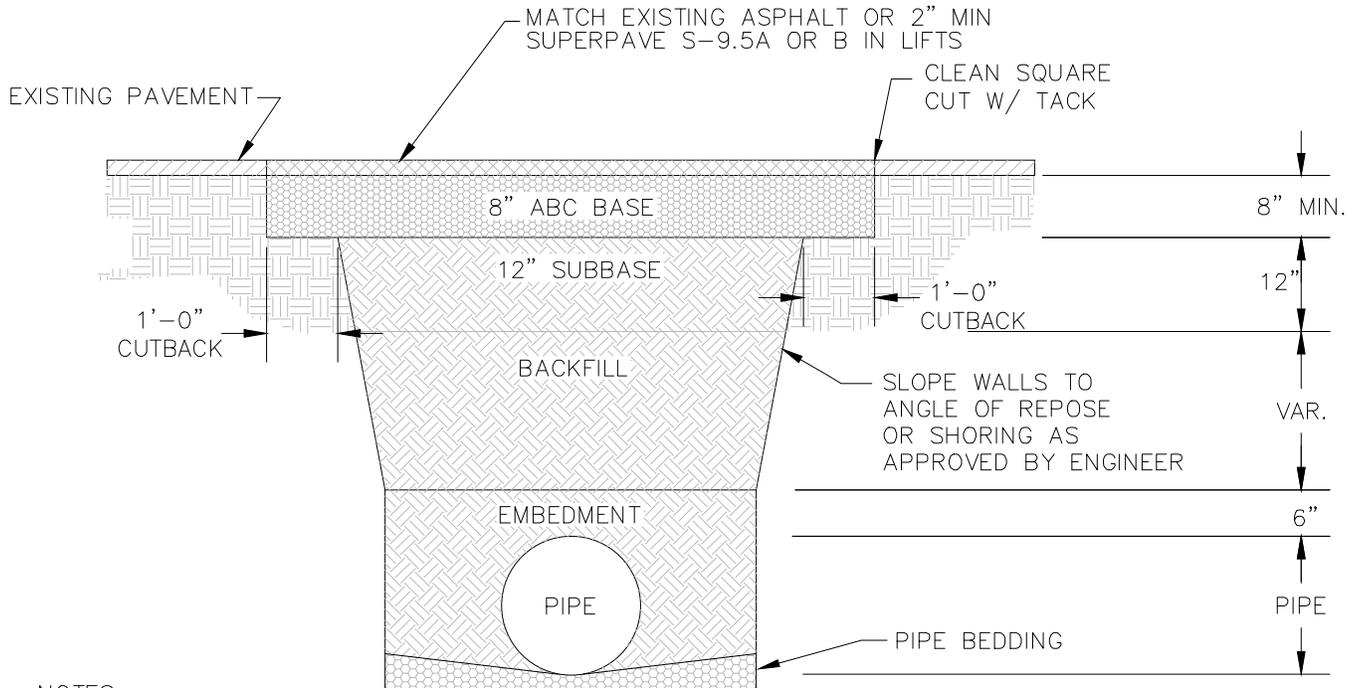
- NOTES:
- 1- PIPE TRENCH WALLS CROSSING THE ROAD CENTERLINE WILL REQUIRE FULL ROAD RESURFACING.
 - 2- ABC BASE AND SUBBASE COMPACTED TO 95%; PIPE EMBEDMENT AND BACKFILL COMPACTED TO 90% AS DETERMINED BY THE MODIFIED PROCTOR AASHTO METHOD T-99.

DATE:	OCTOBER, 2008
DRAWN BY	JSR
CHECKED BY	B.R., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL
TYPICAL ROAD REBUILD


 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

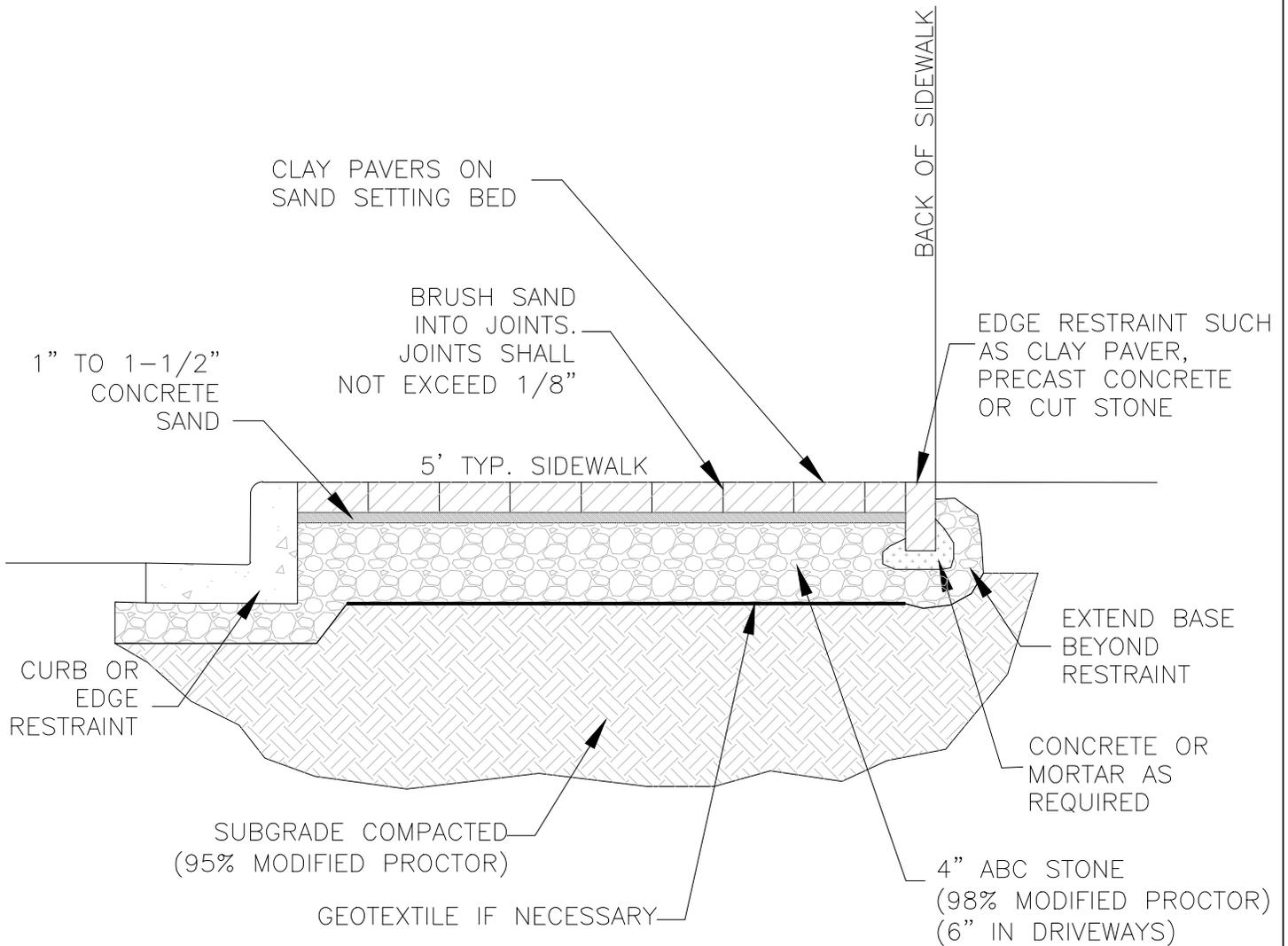
SD 1-04a



NOTES:

1. BACKFILL SHALL BE SUITABLE MATERIAL THAT IS FREE FROM HEAVY CLAY, GUMBOS, DEBRIS, ORGANICS AND LITTLE TO NO EXCESSIVE MOISTURE.
2. SELECT BACKFILL MAY BE SUBSTITUTED OR REQUIRED BY CITY TO ACHIEVE COMPACTION, (I.E. #57, ABC, CRUSHED LIMESTONE, CLEAN SAND, FLOWABLE FILL, ETC).
3. 8-INCH OF ABC BASE MATERIAL SHALL BE USED ON CITY STREETS.
4. BACKFILL AND BASE MATERIALS SHALL BE COMPACTED 12" MINIMUM LIFTS
5. SOIL SHALL BE COMPACTED BY A MECHANIZED TAMPER (I.E JUMPING JACK), HOWEVER, VIBRATORY ROLLERS > 18" WIDTH MAY BE USED FOR LARGER EXCAVATIONS. THE PLATE TAMP METHOD SHALL NOT BE USED.
6. ALL APPROVED CASTINGS SHALL BE SET FLUSH TO GRADE AND SUPPORTED IF APPLICABLE.
7. ABC BASE AND SUBBASE COMPACTED TO 98% AND BACKFILL AND EMBEDMENT COMPACTED TO 90% AS DETERMINED BY THE MODIFIED PROCTOR AASHTO METHOD T-99.
8. 1-FOOT CUTBACKS OF ASPHALT SHALL BE PREPARED ON UNDISTURBED SOIL. MINIMUM ASPHALT DENSITY IS 90%.

STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING OFFICE 414 CHESTNUT STREET WILMINGTON N.C. 28401 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: September 18, 2008	<p>PAVEMENT REPAIRS DETAIL</p>	
DRAWN BY JSR		
CHECKED BY D.E.C., P.E.		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE		SD 1-05



1. BRICK TYPE, SIZE AND PATTERN SHALL BE COORDINATED WITH CITY OF WILMINGTON.
2. PAVERS SHALL MEET OR EXCEED ASTM C902 SPECIFICATION FOR PEDESTRIAN AND LIGHT TRAFFIC PAVING BRICK.
3. FINAL DESIGN OF BASE, SETTING BEDS AND EDGE RESTRAINTS SHALL BE DEPENDENT ON THE SOIL CONDITIONS AND APPLICATION.

STANDARD DETAIL

BRICK SIDEWALK

DATE: NOVEMBER, 2011

DRAWN BY JSR

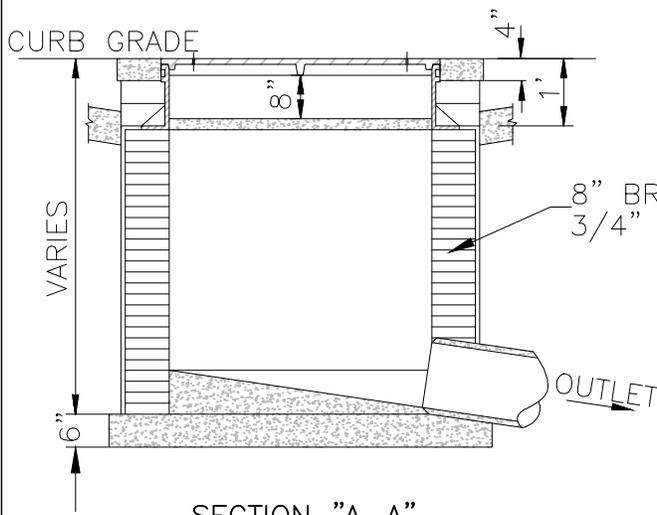
CHECKED BY BDR, P.E.

SCALE NOT TO SCALE

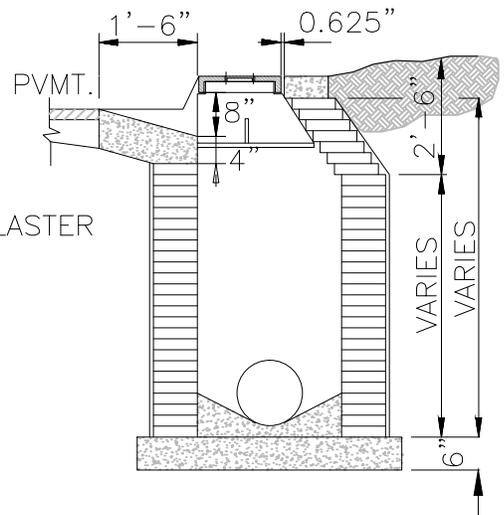


CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

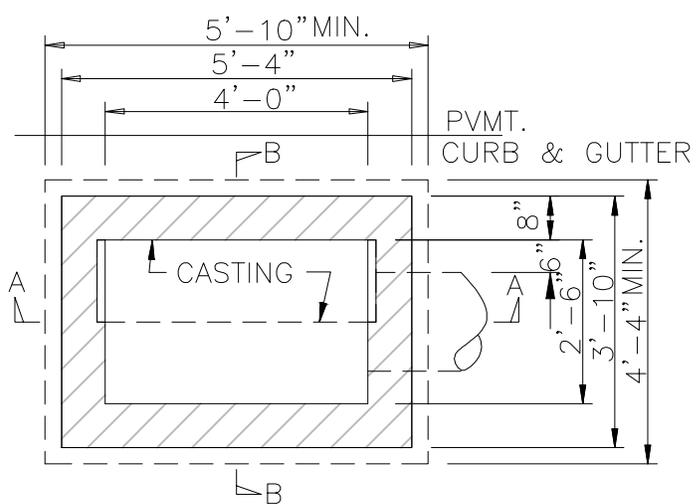
SD 1-18



SECTION "A-A"



SECTION "B-B"

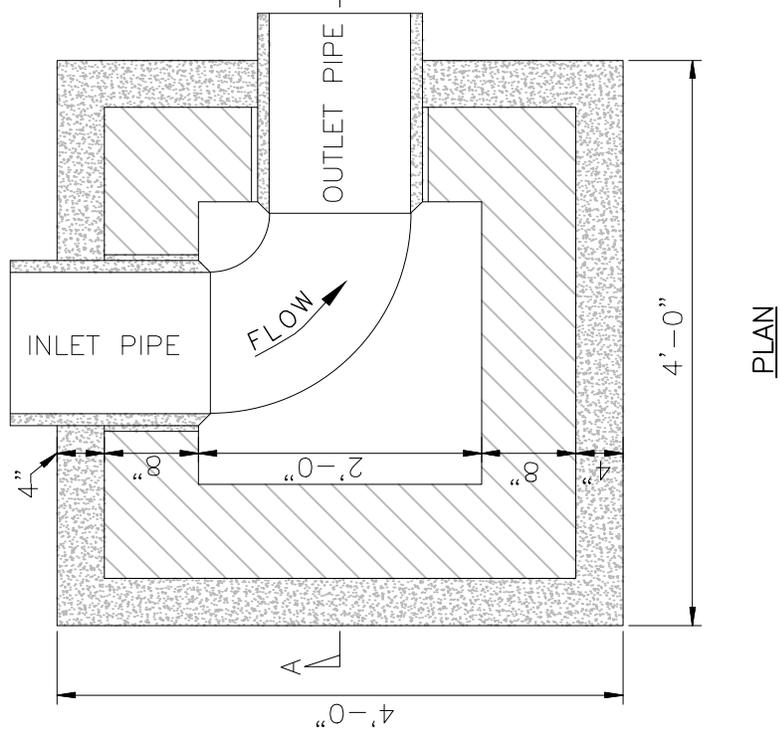
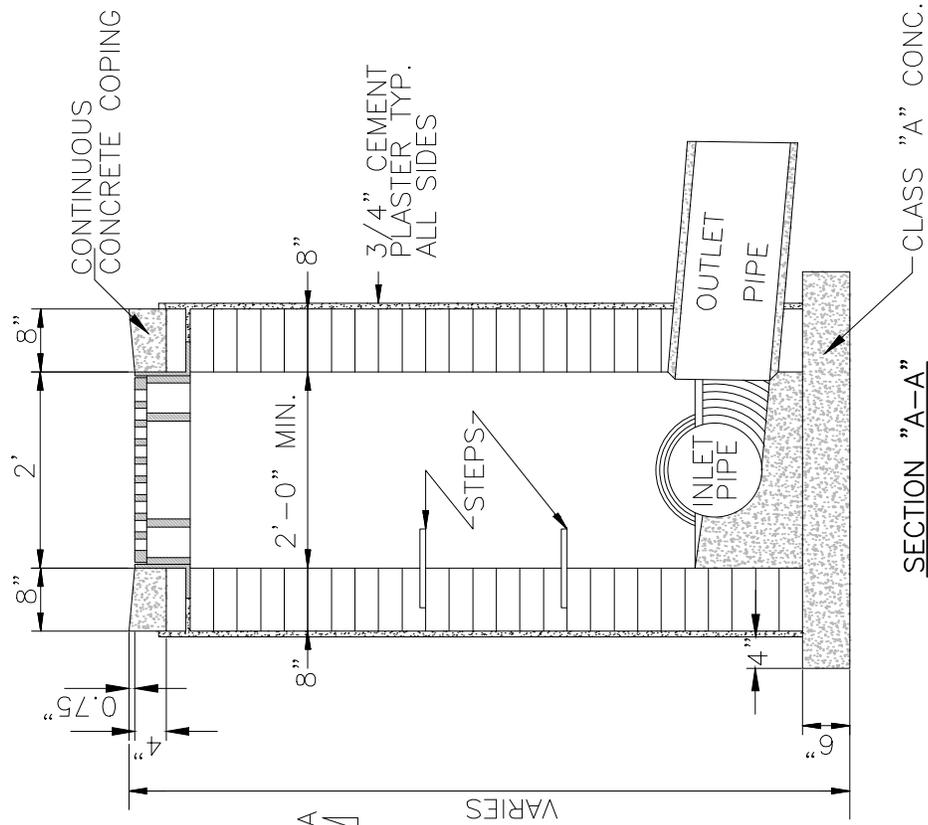


PLAN

NOTE:

1. 4" DEEP X 8" WIDE CONCRETE COPING ALL AROUND BASIN CASTING.
2. ALL CONCRETE TO BE CLASS "A"
3. FOR CASTING DETAIL SEE SD 2-16

STANDARD DETAIL		CATCH BASIN	 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: 2006	DRAWN BY JSR/CMR		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.	SCALE NOT TO SCALE		



NOTE:
 FRAME AND GRATE TO BE STANDARD CITY
 OF WILMINGTON CAST IRON FRAME AND GRATE
 PER SD 14-04

DATE: 2001
DRAWN BY JSR
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

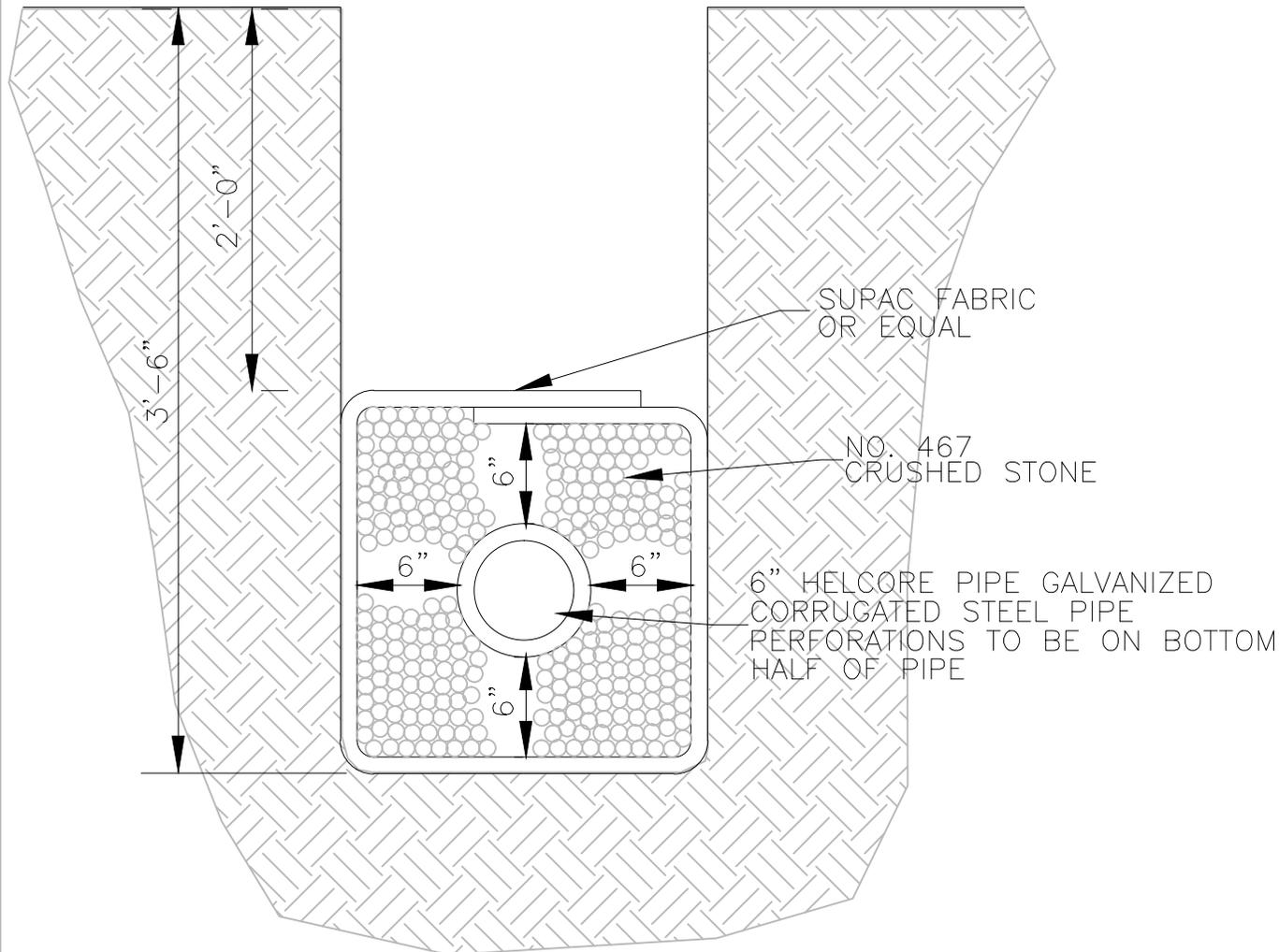
STANDARD DETAIL

GRILL BASIN

CITY OF WILMINGTON
 NORTH CAROLINA

CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 2-02



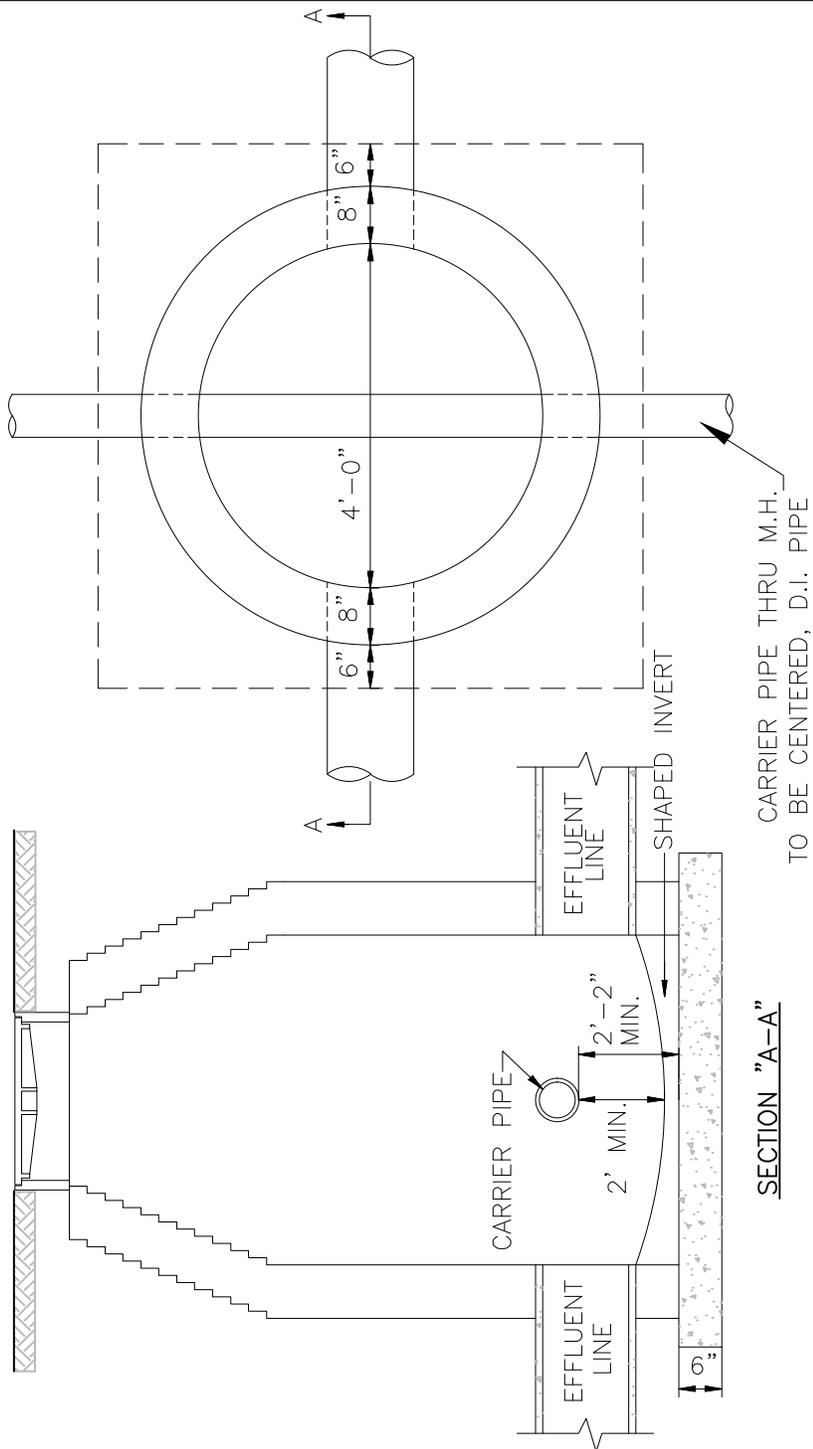
SURAC FABRIC
OR EQUAL

NO. 467
CRUSHED STONE

6" HELCORE PIPE GALVANIZED
CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE
PERFORATIONS TO BE ON BOTTOM
HALF OF PIPE

TYPICAL SECTION

STANDARD DETAIL		 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807
DATE: 2001	GUIDELINES FOR SUBDRAIN	
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE <u>NOT TO SCALE</u>		SD 2-04



STANDARD DETAIL

INTERFERENCE
STORM DRAIN
MAN HOLE

DATE: NOVEMBER, 2008

DRAWN BY JSR/CMR

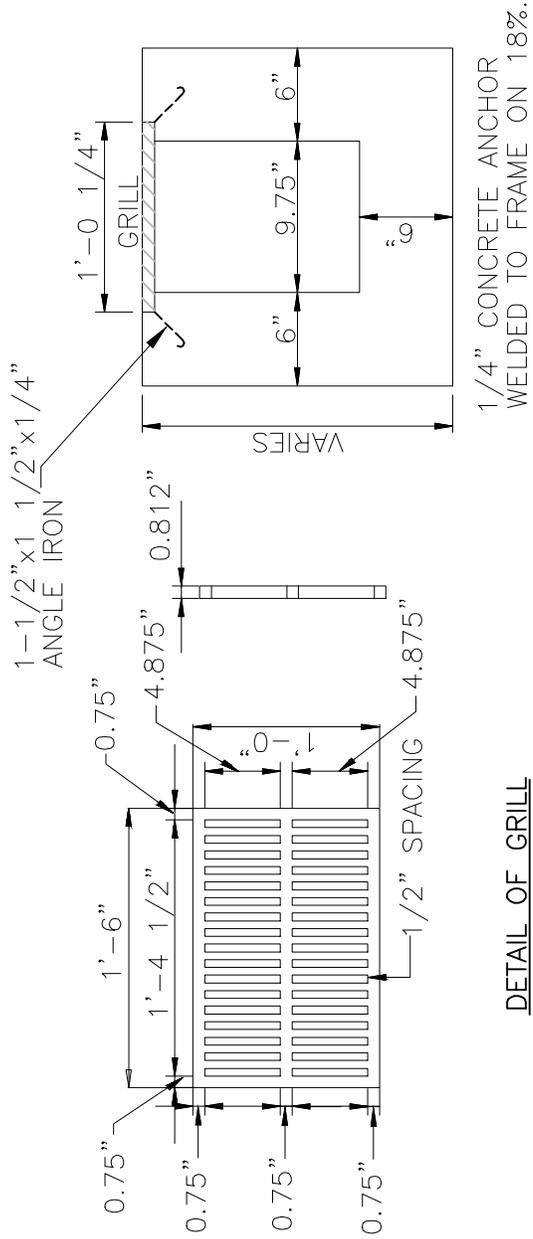
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.

SCALE NOT TO SCALE



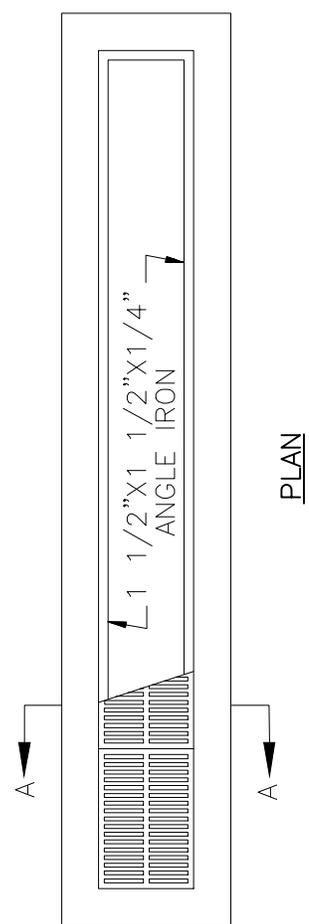
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 2-05



DETAIL OF GRILL

SECTION "A-A"



PLAN

DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

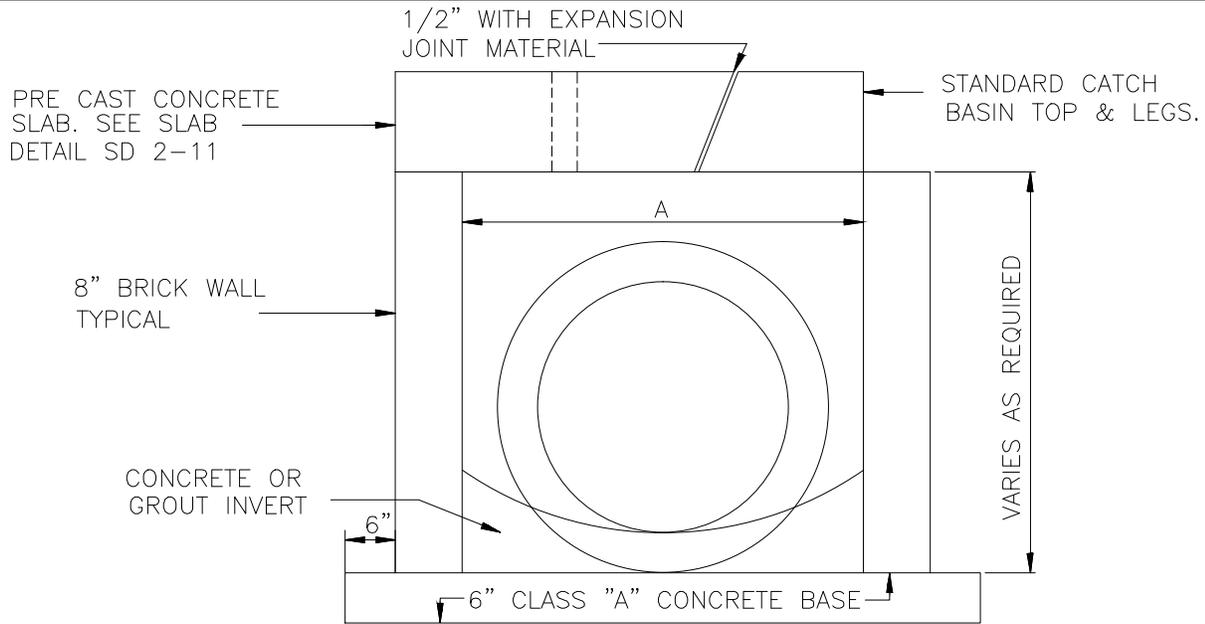
STANDARD DETAIL

**TROUGH TYPE
DROP INLET BASIN**

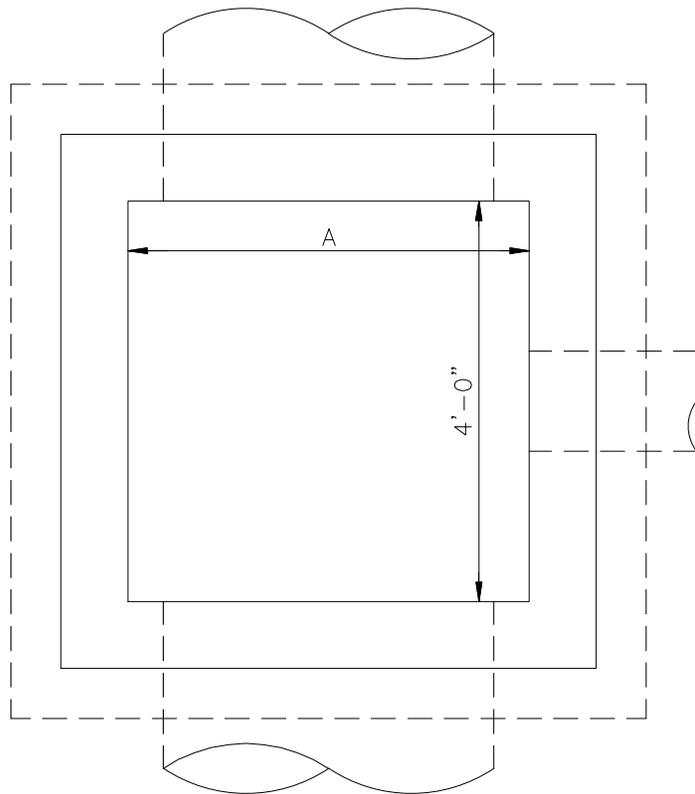


CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 2-06



PIPE SIZE	A
30" , 36"	4'-0"
42"	4'-6"

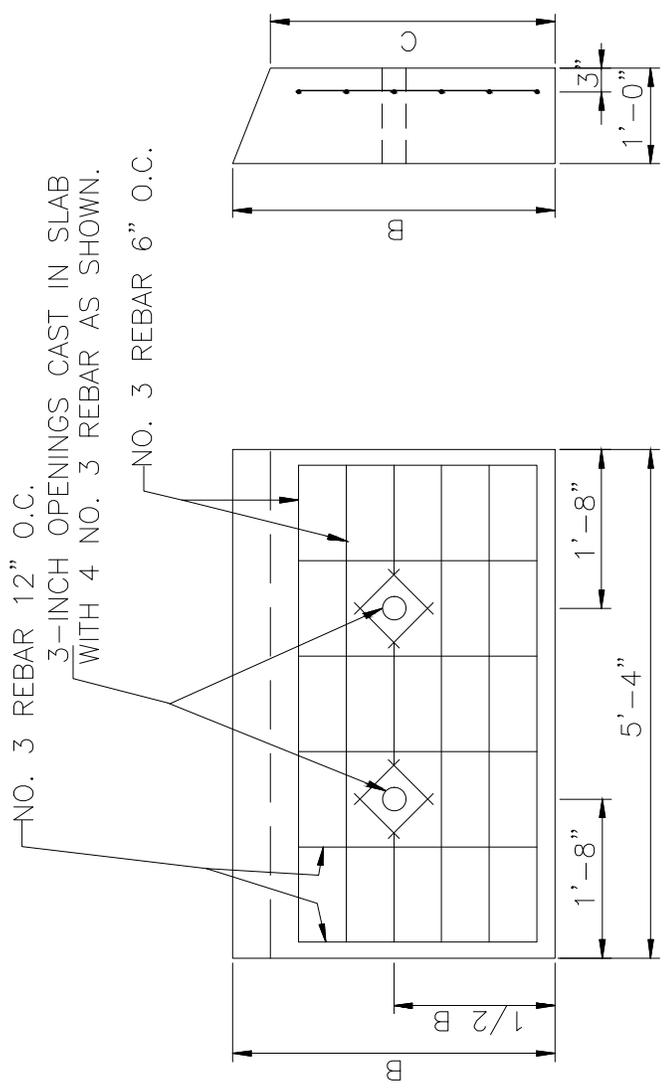


DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL
MODIFIED CATCH BASIN
FOR PIPES LARGER THAN 24"
ENTERING END OF THE
BASIN


CITY OF WILMINGTON
 NORTH CAROLINA
 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 2-10



NOTES:

1. CONCRETE SHALL BE CLASS "A" (3000 PSI MIN.).
2. REBAR SHALL HAVE A MIN. COVER OF 3".
3. TOP SHALL BE SET TO BE FLUSH WITH SIDEWALK AND FLUSH WITH CATCH BASIN CASTING.
4. AFTER TOP HAS BEEN PLACED, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL FILL THE LIFTING HOLE WITH LOW STRENGTH GROUT.

PIPE SIZE	B	C
30" , 36"	3'-4 1/2"	2'-11 3/4"
42"	3'-10 1/2"	3'-5 3/4"

DATE: 2001
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL

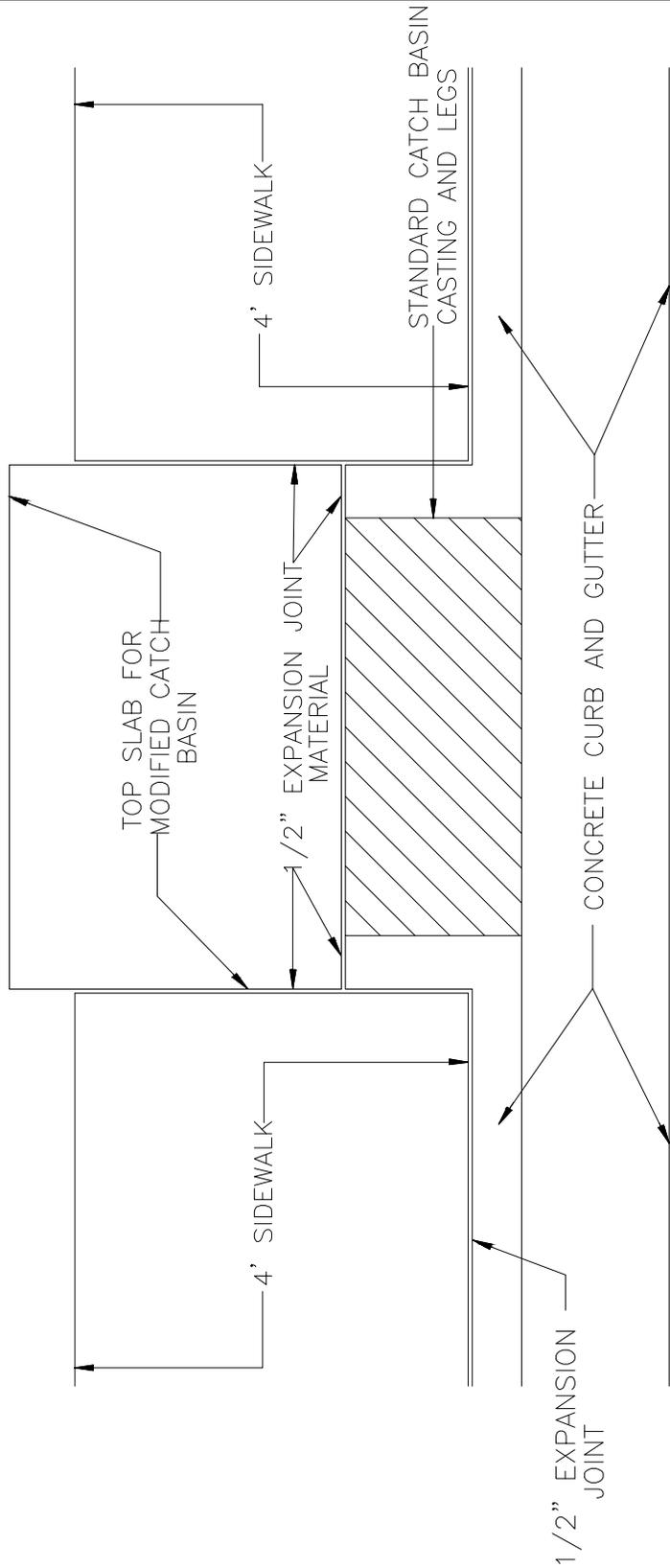
**SLAB TOP FOR
MODIFIED CATCH BASIN**



CITY OF WILMINGTON
NORTH CAROLINA

CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 2-11



NOTES:

1. EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL SHALL BE INSTALLED BETWEEN SLAB TOP AND SIDEWALK AND BETWEEN SIDEWALK AND CURBING.
2. CONCRETE COPING SHALL EXTEND FROM BACK OF CURB TO EDGE OF SLAB TOP.

DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL

**MODIFIED CATCH BASIN
SIDEWALK AND CURBING**



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 2-12

REQUIREMENTS FOR CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE
GAUGE / THICKNESS

CORRUGATIONS

DIAMETER	2 2/3" X 1/2"	3" X 1"	5" X 1"	MINIMUM COVER
12 INCH	16 GAUGE (.064")	N/A	N/A	2 FEET
15 INCH	16 GAUGE (.064")	N/A	N/A	2 FEET
18 INCH	16 GAUGE (.064")	N/A	N/A	2 FEET
24 INCH	16 GAUGE (.064")	N/A	N/A	2 FEET
30 INCH	14 GAUGE (.079")	N/A	N/A	2 FEET
36 INCH	14 GAUGE (.079")	14 GAUGE (.079")	14 GAUGE (.079")	2 FEET
42 INCH	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	2 FEET
48 INCH	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	2 FEET
54 INCH	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	2 FEET
60 INCH	10 GAUGE (.138")	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	2 FEET
66 INCH	10 GAUGE (.138")	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	2 FEET
72 INCH	10 GAUGE (.138")	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	2 FEET
78 INCH	8 GAUGE (.168")	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	2 FEET
84 INCH	8 GAUGE (.168")	12 GAUGE (.109")	12 GAUGE (.109")	2 FEET
90 INCH	N/A	10 GAUGE (.138")	10 GAUGE (.138")	2 FEET
96 INCH	N/A	10 GAUGE (.138")	10 GAUGE (.138")	2 FEET
102 INCH	N/A	8 GAUGE (.168")	8 GAUGE (.168")	2 FEET
108 INCH	N/A	8 GAUGE (.168")	8 GAUGE (.168")	2 FEET
114 INCH	N/A	8 GAUGE (.168")	8 GAUGE (.168")	2 FEET
120 INCH	N/A	8 GAUGE (.168")	8 GAUGE (.168")	2 FEET

NOTES:

1. ALL CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE SHALL BE GALVANIZED AND FULLY BITUMINOUS COATED AND INVERT PAVED.
2. ALL CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE GREATER THAN 60 INCHES IN DIAMETER SHALL BE FULLY PAVED (SMOOTH FLOW).
3. CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE SHALL NOT BE USED FOR SIZES LESS THAN 60 INCHES EXCEPT BY PERMISSION OF THE CITY ENGINEER.
4. ARCH PIPE SHALL GENERALLY BE THE SAME GAUGE REQUIRED FOR THE EQUIVALENT ROUND PIPE.
5. ALL CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE WITH COVER GREATER THAN 25 FEET SHALL BE REVIEWED AND EVALUATED TO DETERMINE THE REQUIRED THICKNESS.

STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: 2001

DRAWN BY JSR/CMR

CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.

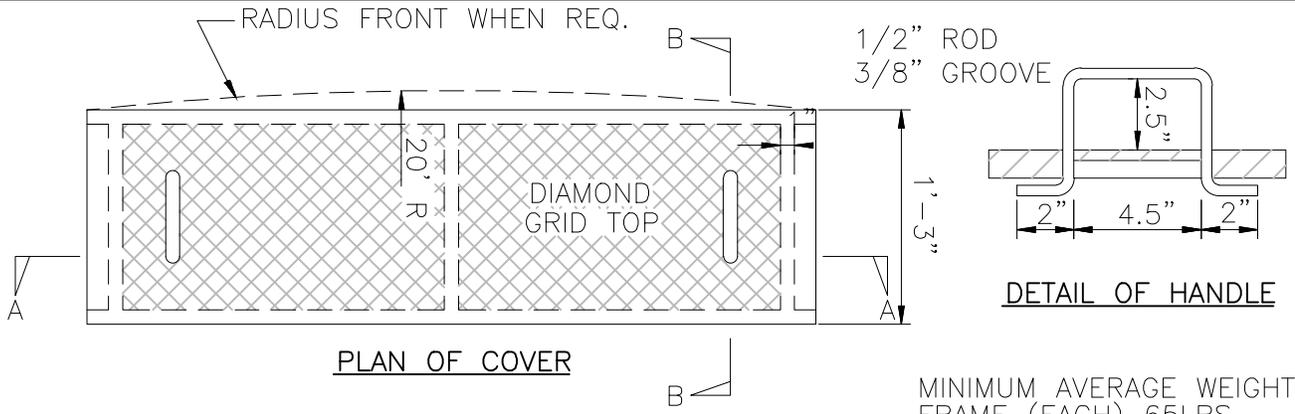
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

**REQUIREMENT FOR
CORRUGATED STEEL PIPE
GUAGE/THICKNESS**



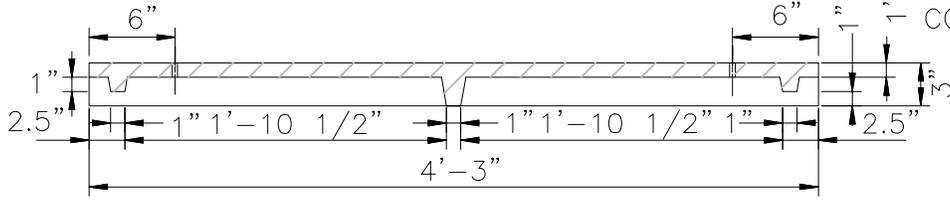
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 2-13

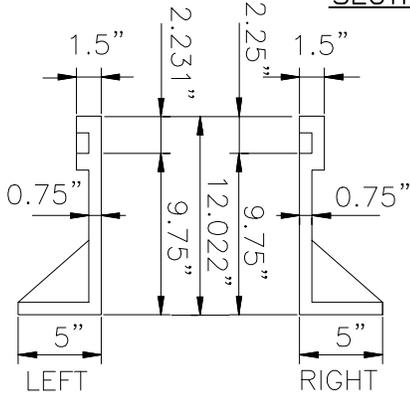


PLAN OF COVER

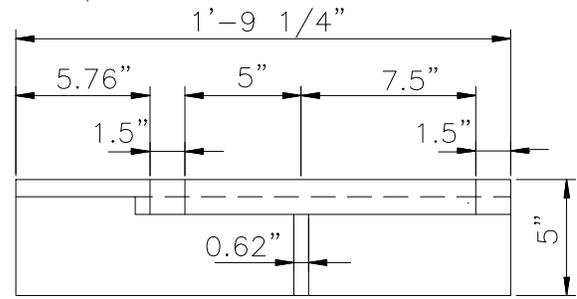
MINIMUM AVERAGE WEIGHT
FRAME (EACH) 65LBS.
COVER (RADIUS) 225 LBS.
COVER (STR.) 225 LBS.



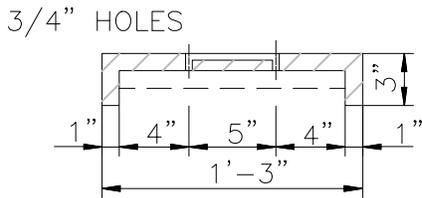
SECTION "A-A"



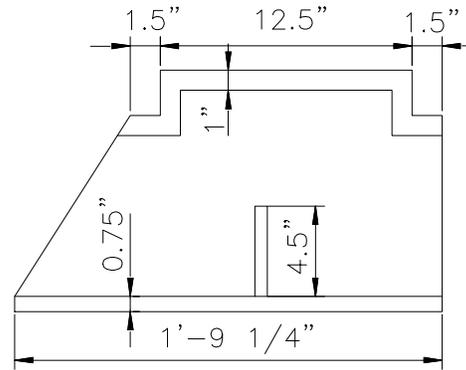
ENDS



TOP VIEW

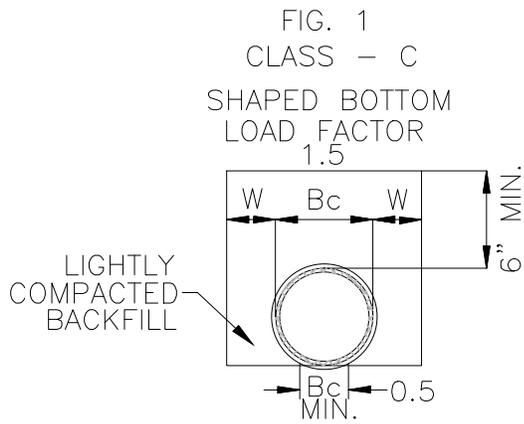


SECTION "B-B"

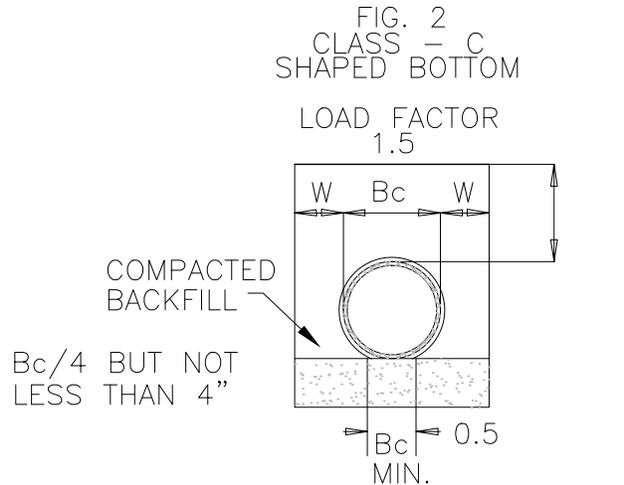


SIDE

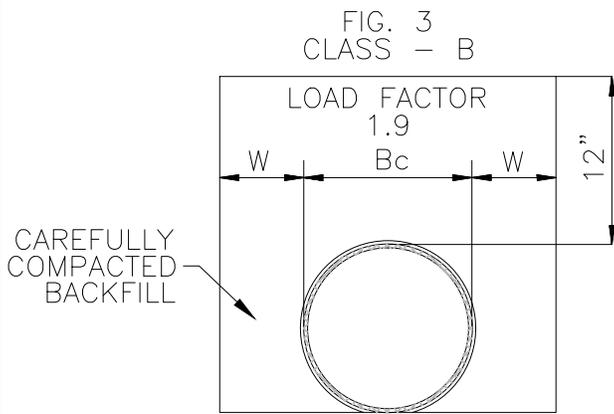
STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON NORTH CAROLINA</p> <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE:	2001	
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR	
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.	
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE	
CATCH BASIN CASTINGS DETAIL		SD 2-16



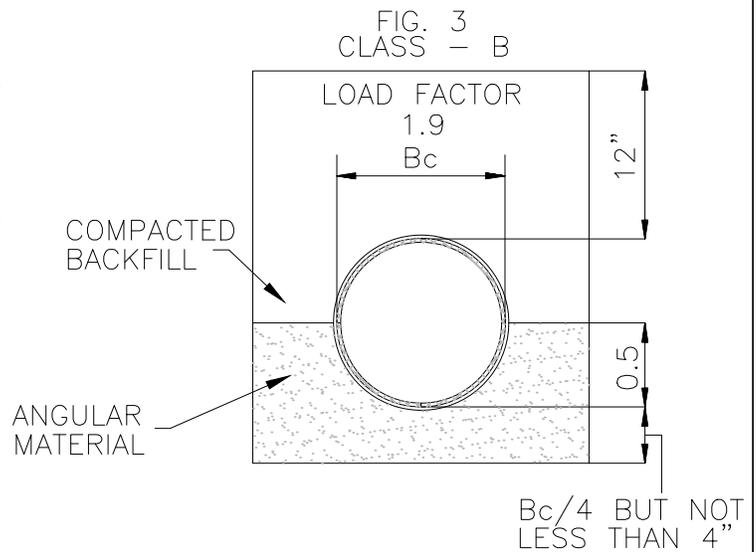
HAND SHAPED FROM
FIRM UNDISTURBED SOIL



HAND SHAPED FROM
ANGULAR BEDDING MATERIAL



HAND SHAPED FROM
UNDISTURBED FIRM SOIL



DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

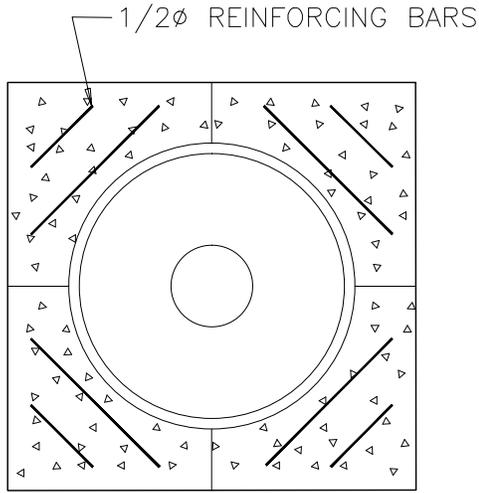
STANDARD DETAIL

**GUIDELINES FOR BEDDING
DETAILS, STORM SEWER
CLASSES (B & C)**

WILMINGTON
CITY OF
NORTH CAROLINA

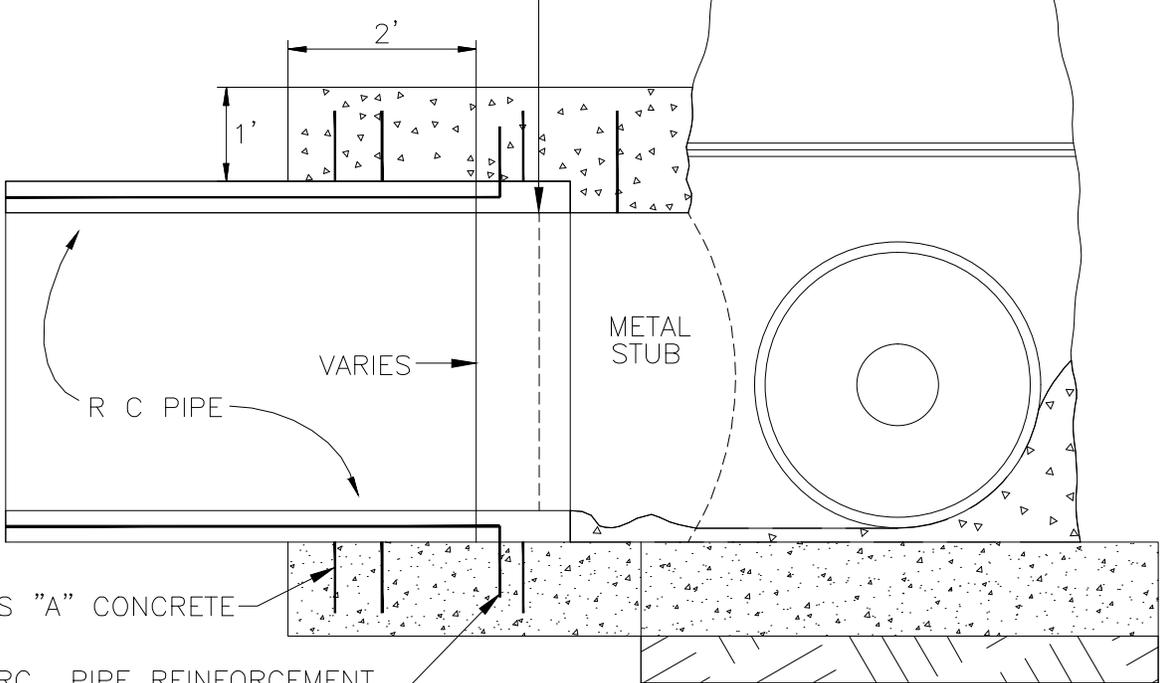
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 2-17



REINFORCING DETAIL SECTION "A-A"

14 GAGE GALVANIZED COUPLINE BAND
WIDTH AS REQUIRED



CLASS "A" CONCRETE

RC PIPE REINFORCEMENT
TO BE BENT AS SHOWN

DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

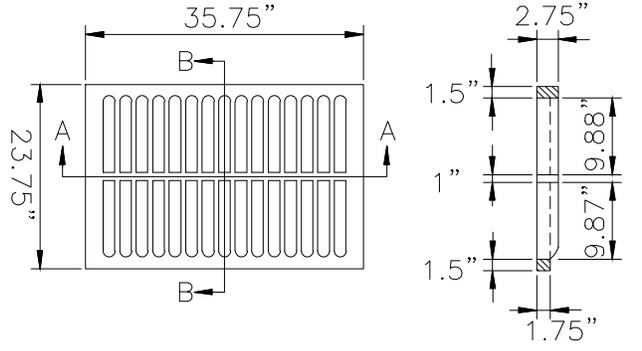
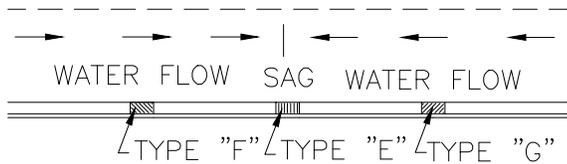
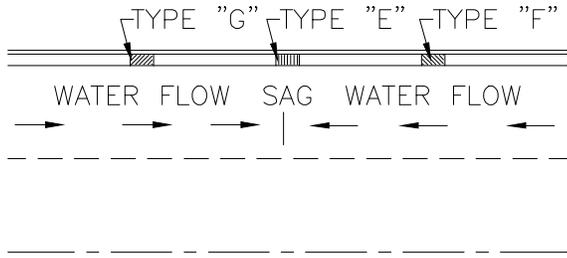
STANDARD DETAIL

**PIPE CONNECTION-
METAL TO CONCRETE**

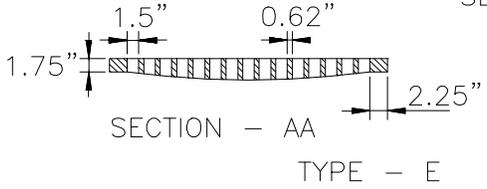
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 2-18

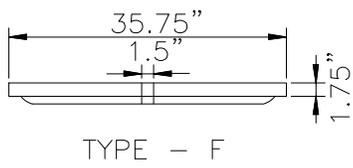
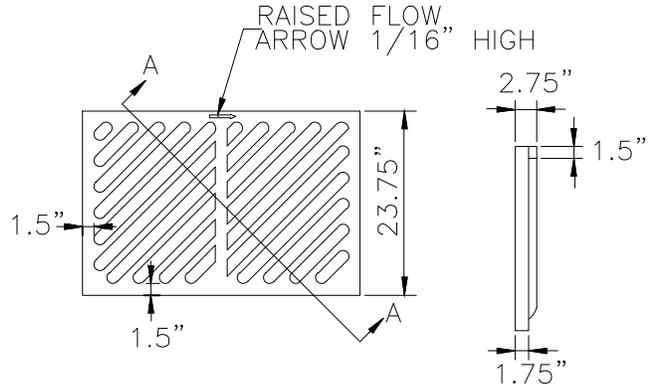
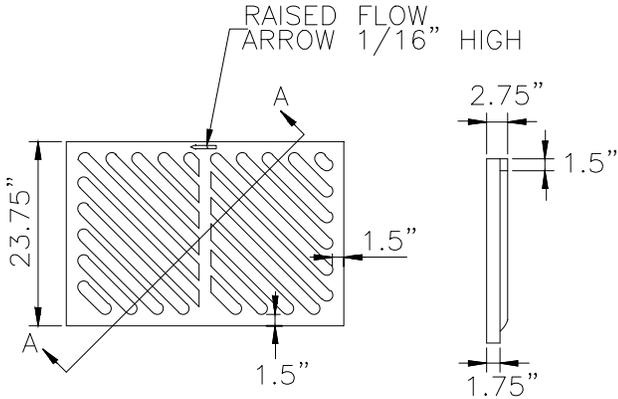
DETAIL SHOWING TYPES OF GRATES TO BE USED ACCORDING TO WATER FLOW.



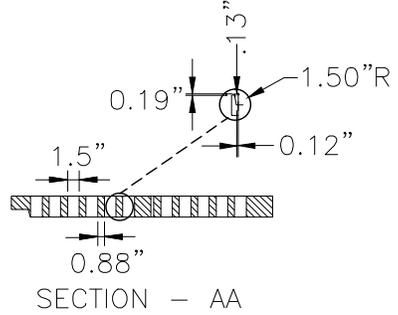
SECTION - BB



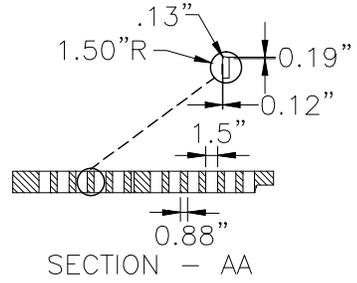
TYPE - E



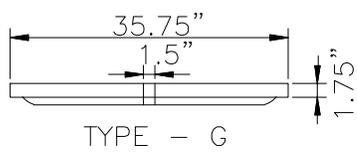
TYPE - F



SECTION - AA



SECTION - AA



TYPE - G

STANDARD DETAIL

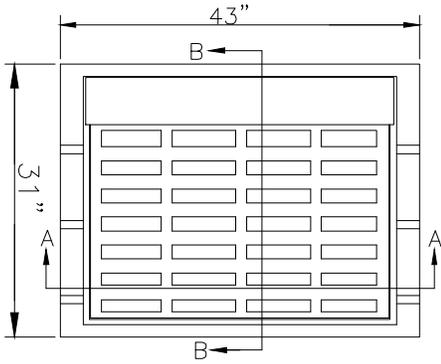
CATCH BASIN GRATE
FOR 30" HOOD AND GRATE



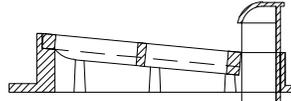
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

DATE:	2003
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

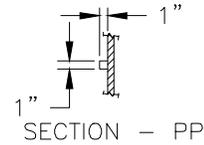
SD 2-20



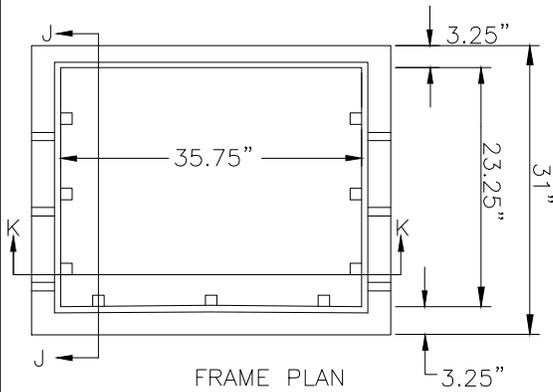
PLAN
FRAME, GRATE & HOOD ASS'Y



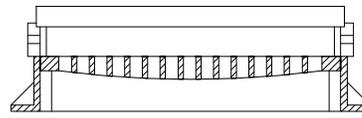
SECTION - BB



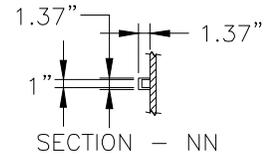
SECTION - PP



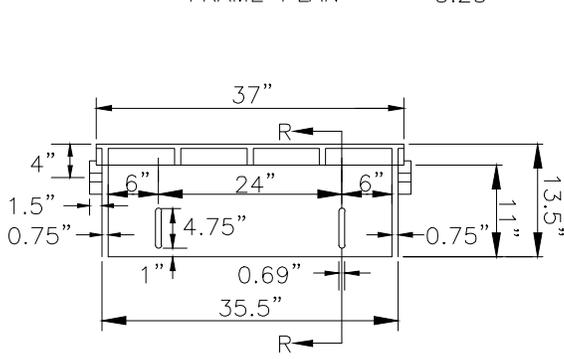
FRAME PLAN



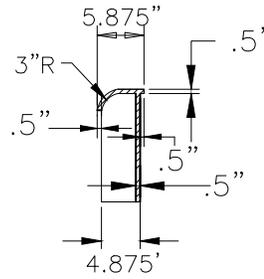
SECTION - AA



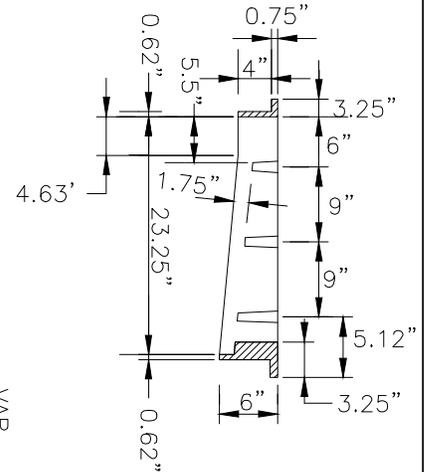
SECTION - NN



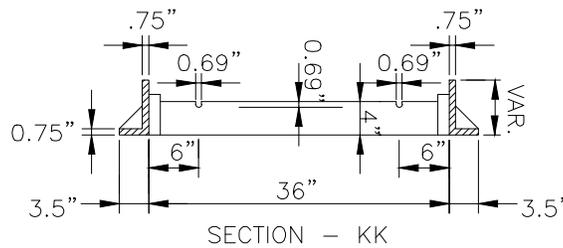
HOOD ELEVATION



SECTION - RR



SECTION - JJ



SECTION - KK

NOTE: USE TYPE "E", "F", & "G" GRATE UNLESS OTHERWISE INDICATED

STANDARD DETAIL

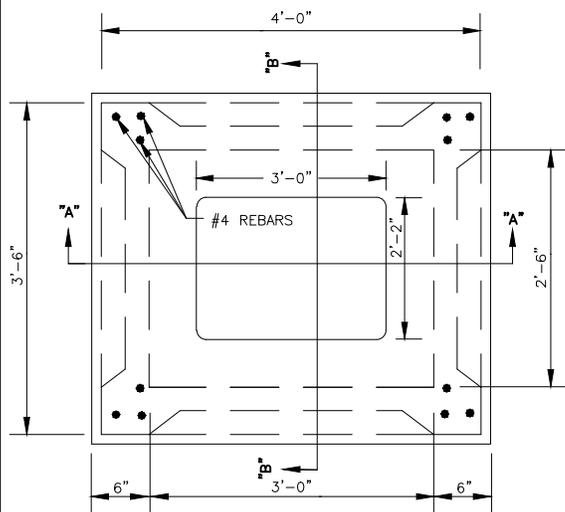
CATCH BASIN CASTING
FOR 24" HOOD AND GRATE



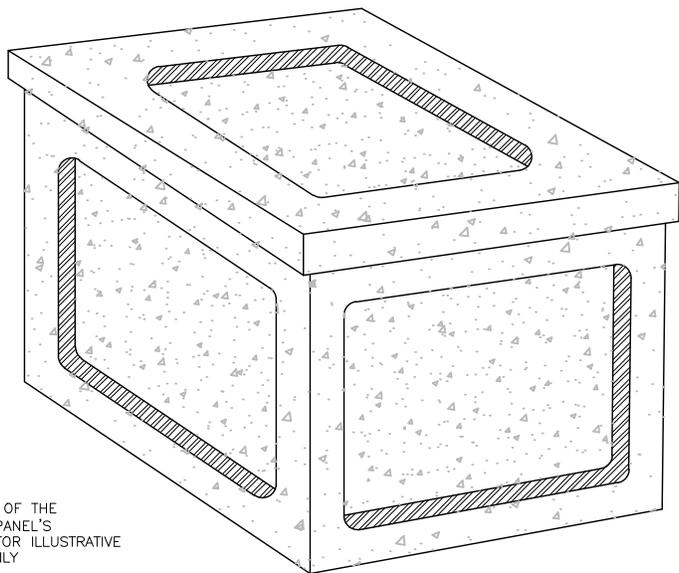
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

SD 2-21



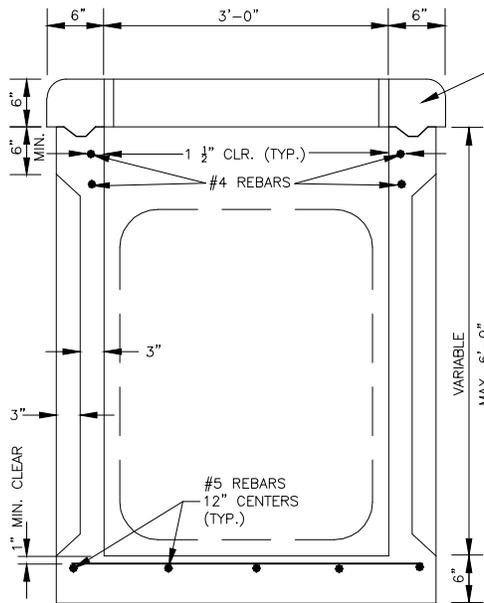
WAFFLE WALL PLAN VIEW



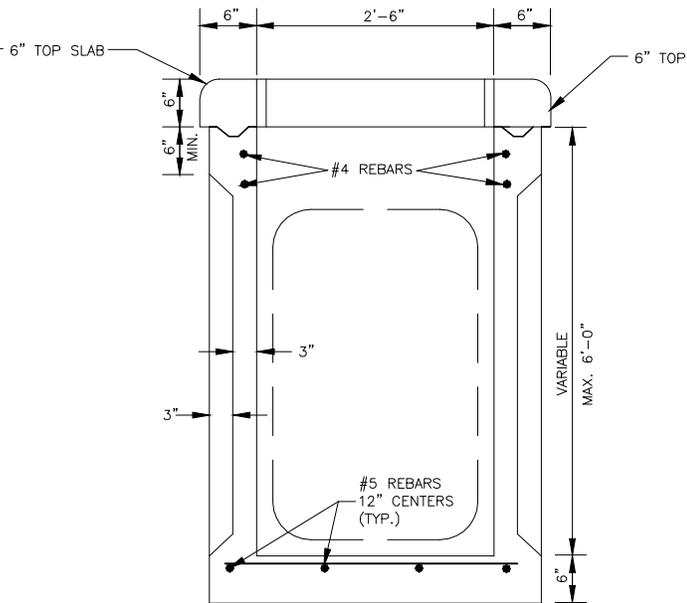
NOTE:
THE PATTERN OF THE
KNOCK-OUT PANEL'S
ARE SHOWN FOR ILLUSTRATIVE
PURPOSES ONLY

WAFFLE WALL ISOMETRIC VIEW

NOTE: SEE SD-23a FOR GENERAL NOTES.



SECTION "A-A"



SECTION "B-B"

STANDARD DETAIL	
DATE: 2001	PRECAST WAFFLE DRAINAGE STRUCTURE
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR	
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.	
SCALE NOT TO SCALE	



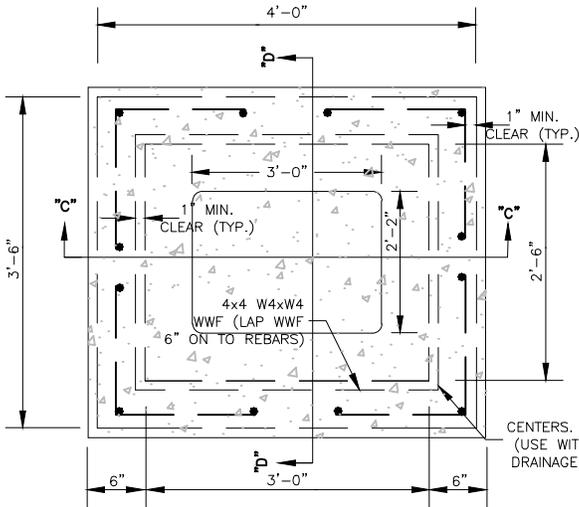
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 2-23

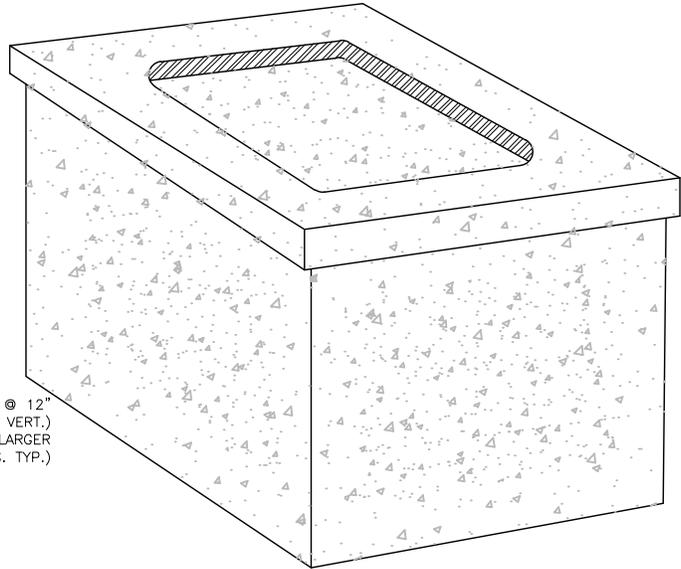
GENERAL NOTES:

- * USE 4000 PSI CONCRETE, PROVIDE FOR H-20 TRAFFIC LOADING.
- * PROVIDE ALL REINFORCING STEEL WHICH MEETS ASTM A615 FOR GRADE 60 AND WELDED WIRE FABRIC CONFORMING TO ASTM A185,
- * LIMIT MAXIMUM DEPTH TO TOP OF BOTTOM SLAB FOR WAFFLE WALL STRUCTURE TO 6'-0".
- * PLACE LIFT HOLES OR PINS IN ACCORDANCE WITH OSHA STANDARD 1926.704
- * SAW CUT, CORE DRILL OR FORM OPENINGS, FOR PIPE TO PROVIDE REQUIRED SIZE AND LOCATION. ORIENT WAFFLE WALL STRUCTURES SO THAT PIPES ENTER THROUGH THE KNOCKOUT/WAFFLE PANELS ONLY. SEAL OPENINGS WITH HYDRAULIC CEMENT.
- * ALL ELEMENTS PRECAST TO MEET ASTM C913.
- * SET ON 6" WASHED STONE
- * FRAME AND GRATE HEIGHT MAY BE ADJUSTED WITH BRICK.
- * PROVIDE PRECAST STRUCTURES OVER 4'-0" IN DEPTH WITH STEPS/LADDER INSTALLED IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASHA STANDARD 1910.27 AND AS FIELD CONDITIONS DICTATE.
- * WELDED WIRE FABRIC MAY BE SUBSTITUTED FOR REBAR AS LONG AS THE SAME AREA OF STEEL IS PROVIDED,
- * SEAL JOINTS WITH A FLEXIBLE BUTYL RUBBER BASE CONFORMING TO FEDERAL SPECIFICATION SS-S-21A, AASHTO M-19B, TYPE B - BUTYL RUBBER.
- * LIMIT MAXIMUM STRUCTURE SIZE TO INSIDE CLEAR DEMENSIONS OF 2'-6" x 3'-0".
- * USE FRAME AND GRATE AS PER SD-19.
- * GROUT INVERT TO PROVIDE SMOOTH FLOW

	STANDARD DETAIL	 <p align="center"> WILMINGTON <small>NORTH CAROLINA</small> CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807 </p>
DATE: 2001	PRECAST WAFFLE DRAINAGE STRUCTURE GENERAL NOTES	
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE <u>NOT TO SCALE</u>		SD 2-23a

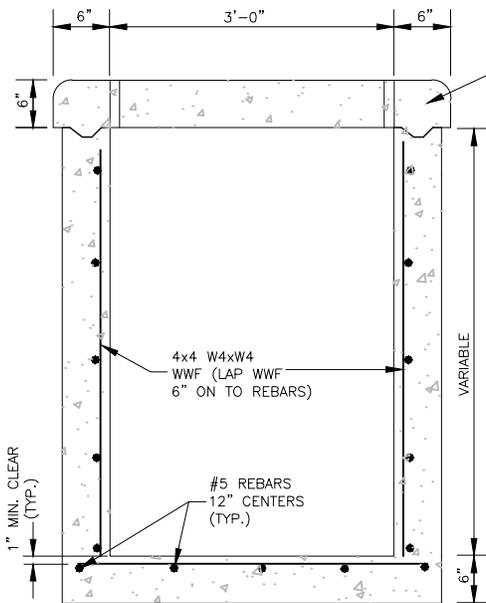


SOLID WALL PLAN VIEW

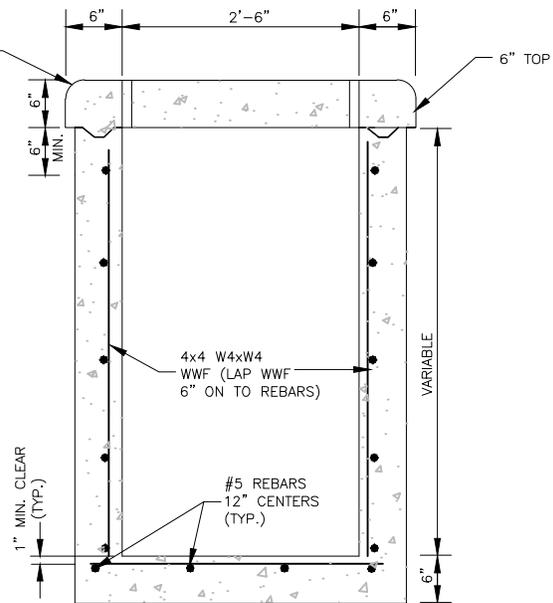


SOLID WALL ISOMETRIC VIEW

NOTE: SEE SD-24a FOR GENERAL NOTES.



SECTION "C-C"



SECTION "D-D"

DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL

PRECAST
DRAINAGE STRUCTURE
SOLID WALL

W CITY OF
WILMINGTON
NORTH CAROLINA

CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

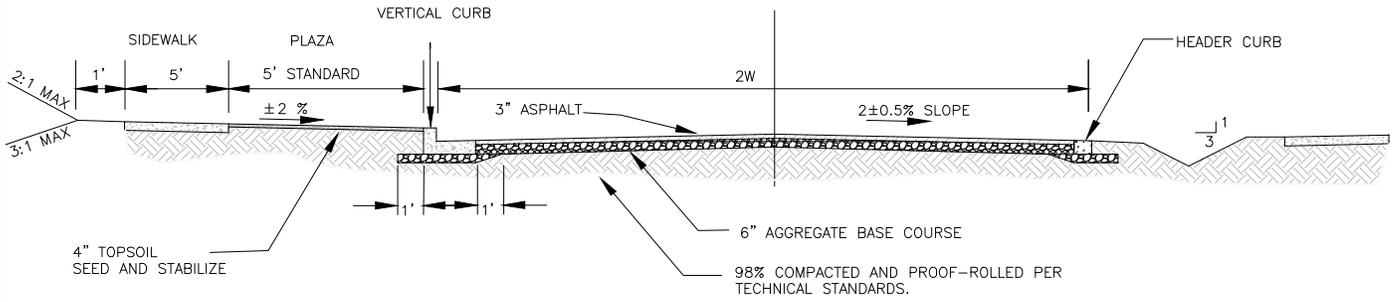
SD 2-24

GENERAL NOTES:

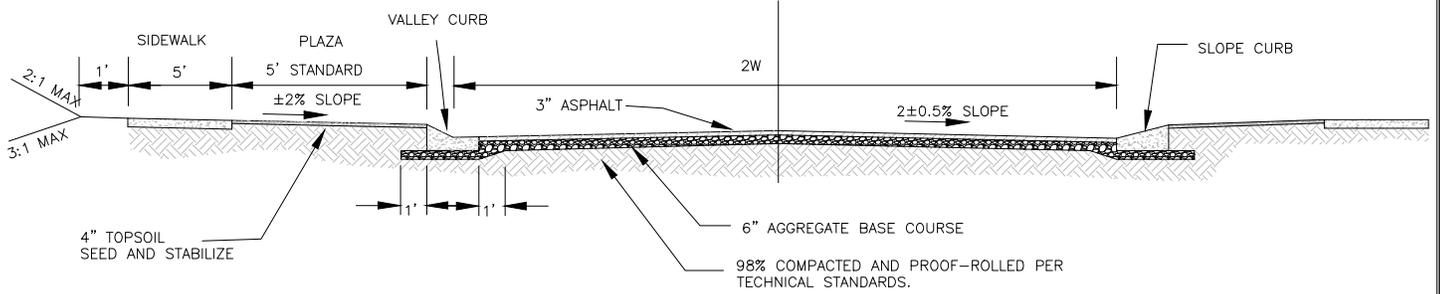
- * USE 4000 PSI CONCRETE, PROVIDE FOR H-20 TRAFFIC LOADING.
- * PROVIDE ALL REINFORCING STEEL WHICH MEETS ASTM A615 FOR GRADE 60 AND WELDED WIRE FABRIC CONFORMING TO ASTM A185,
- * PLACE LIFT HOLES OR PINS IN ACCORDANCE WITH OSHA STANDARD 1926.704
- * PROVIDE FORMED OPENINGS, FOR PIPE TO PROVIDE REQUIRED SIZE AND LOCATION.
SEAL OPENINGS WITH HYDRAULIC CEMENT.
- * ALL ELEMENTS PRECAST TO MEET ASTM C913.
- * SET ON 6" WASHED STONE
- * FRAME AND GRATE HEIGHT MAY BE ADJUSTED WITH BRICK.
- * PROVIDE PRECAST STRUCTURES OVER 4'-0" IN DEPTH WITH STEPS/LADDER INSTALLED IN ACCORDANCE WITH ASHA STANDARD 1910.27 AND AS FIELD CONDITIONS DICTATE.
- * WELDED WIRE FABRIC MAY BE SUBSTITUTED FOR REBAR AS LONG AS THE SAME AREA OF STEEL IS PROVIDED,
- * SEAL JOINTS WITH A FLEXIBLE BUTYL RUBBER BASE CONFORMING TO FEDERAL SPECIFICATION SS-S-21A, AASHTO M-19B, TYPE B - BUTYL RUBBER.
- * USE FRAME AND GRATE AS PER SD-19.
- * GROUT INVERT TO PROVIDE SMOOTH FLOW

	STANDARD DETAIL	 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: 2001	PRECAST DRAINAGE STRUCTURE GENERAL NOTES	
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE <u>NOT TO SCALE</u>		SD 2-24a

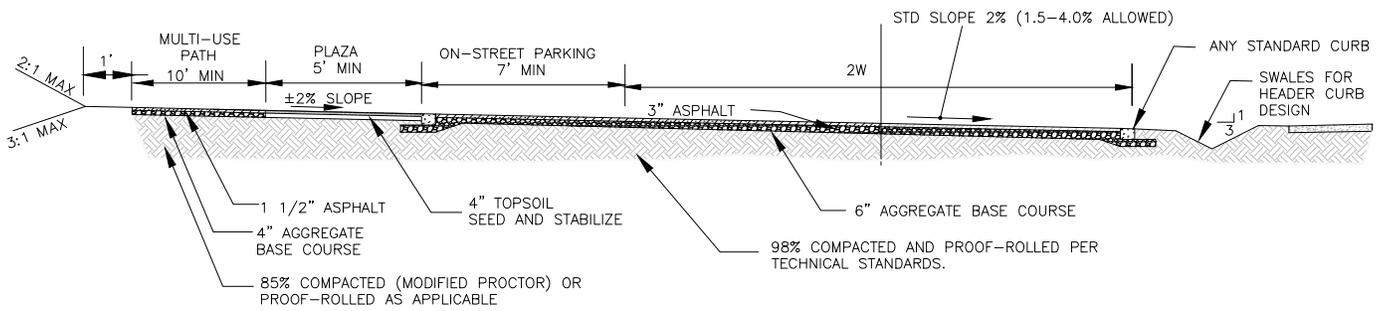
CROWN W/ VERTICAL OR HEADER CURB



CROWN W/ VALLEY OR SLOPE CURB



SUPERELEVATED W/PARKING LANE & MULTI-USE PATH



NOTES:

1. LANE WIDTH (W) AS GIVEN IN THE TECHNICAL STANDARDS
2. ALL CONCRETE TO BE 3000 PSI.
3. HEADER CURB PERMITTED IN R-15 OR LOWER DENSITY ZONES OR TO MATCH EXISTING LOCAL CONDITIONS.
4. COMBINE ROAD PROFILES, CURB TYPE, PARKING LANE, SIDEWALK, AND MULTI-USE PATHS AS APPROPRIATE.
5. SEE CURB AND SIDEWALK DETAILS FOR APPLICABLE DIMENSIONS .
6. MULTI-USE PATH MAY BE REDUCED TO 8' WHERE LIMITED BY EXISTING CONDITIONS.
7. LARGER SECTIONS MAY BE REQUIRED FOR ROADS WITH HIGH TRAFFIC COUNTS.
8. ADJACENT GROUND SLOPE EXCEEDING 3:1 DOWN FROM SIDEWALK REQUIRES GUARD RAIL.

STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: 09-22-10

DRAWN: PB/RLB

CHECKED: DEC

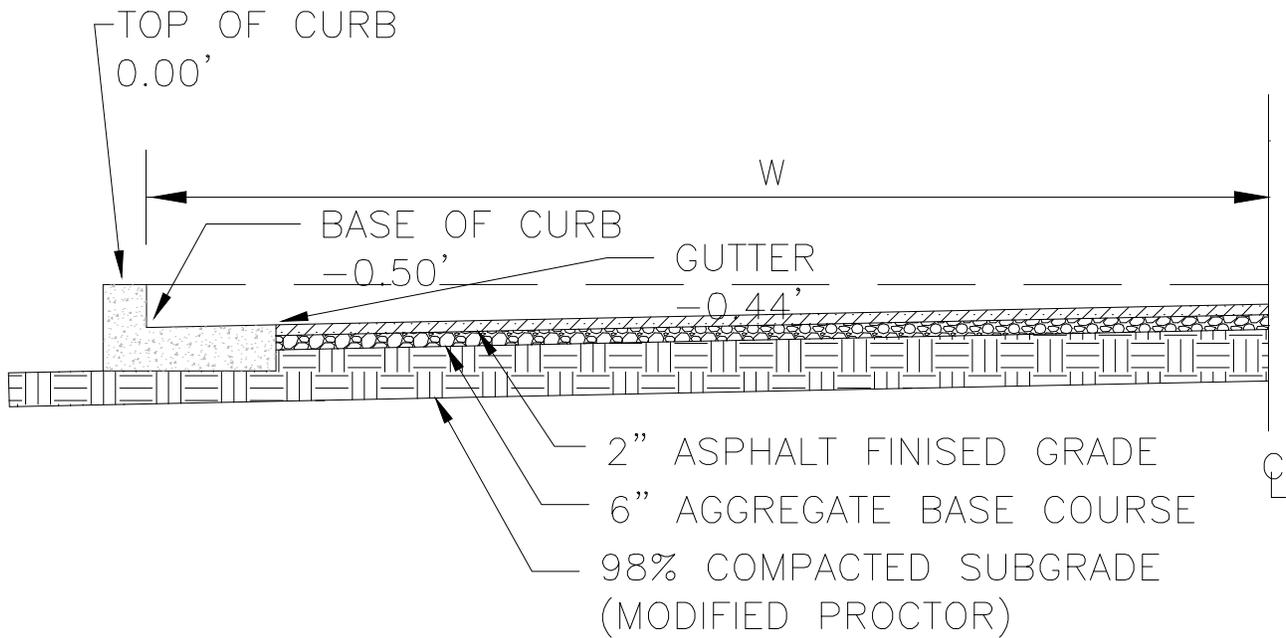
SCALE: NOT TO SCALE

STREET SECTIONS



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON N.C. 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 3-01



GRADES AT CENTER LINE
RELATIVE TO TOP OF CURB
VERTICAL CURB AND STANDARD 2% SLOPE ($\pm 0.5\%$)

STREET WIDTH 2W (ft)	TOP OF COMPACTED SUB-GRADE (FT)	TOP OF AGGREGATE BASE COURSE (FT)	TOP OF FINISHED GRADE (FT)
18	-0.96 (± 0.04)	-0.46 (± 0.04)	-0.29 (± 0.04)
20	-0.94 (± 0.04)	-0.44 (± 0.04)	-0.27 (± 0.04)
22	-0.92 (± 0.05)	-0.42 (± 0.05)	-0.25 (± 0.05)
24	-0.90 (± 0.05)	-0.40 (± 0.05)	-0.23 (± 0.05)

STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: 11-16-09

DRAWN: PB/JSR

CHECKED: DEC

SCALE: NOT TO SCALE

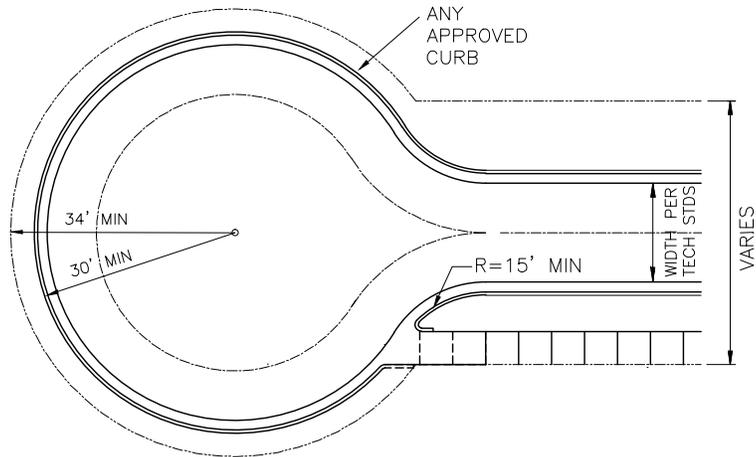
STREET ELEVATIONS

WILMINGTON
CITY OF
NORTH CAROLINA

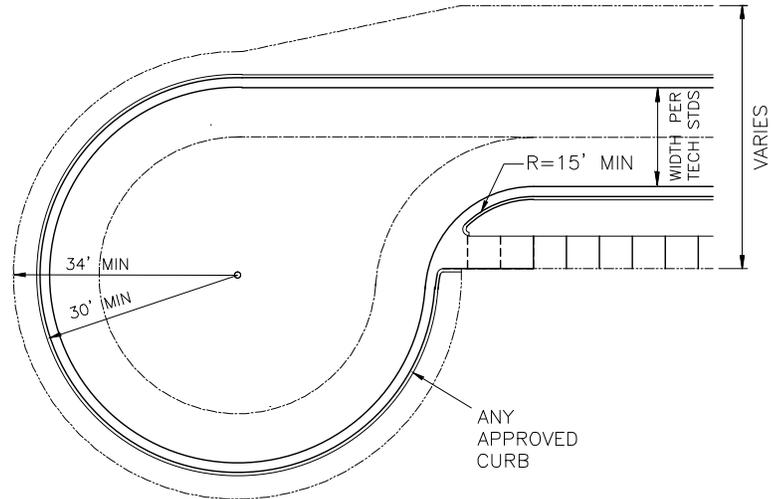
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON N.C. 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 3-02

CIRCULAR



CIRCULAR OFFSET



STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: 10-28-11

DRAWN: PB/JSR

CHECKED: DEC

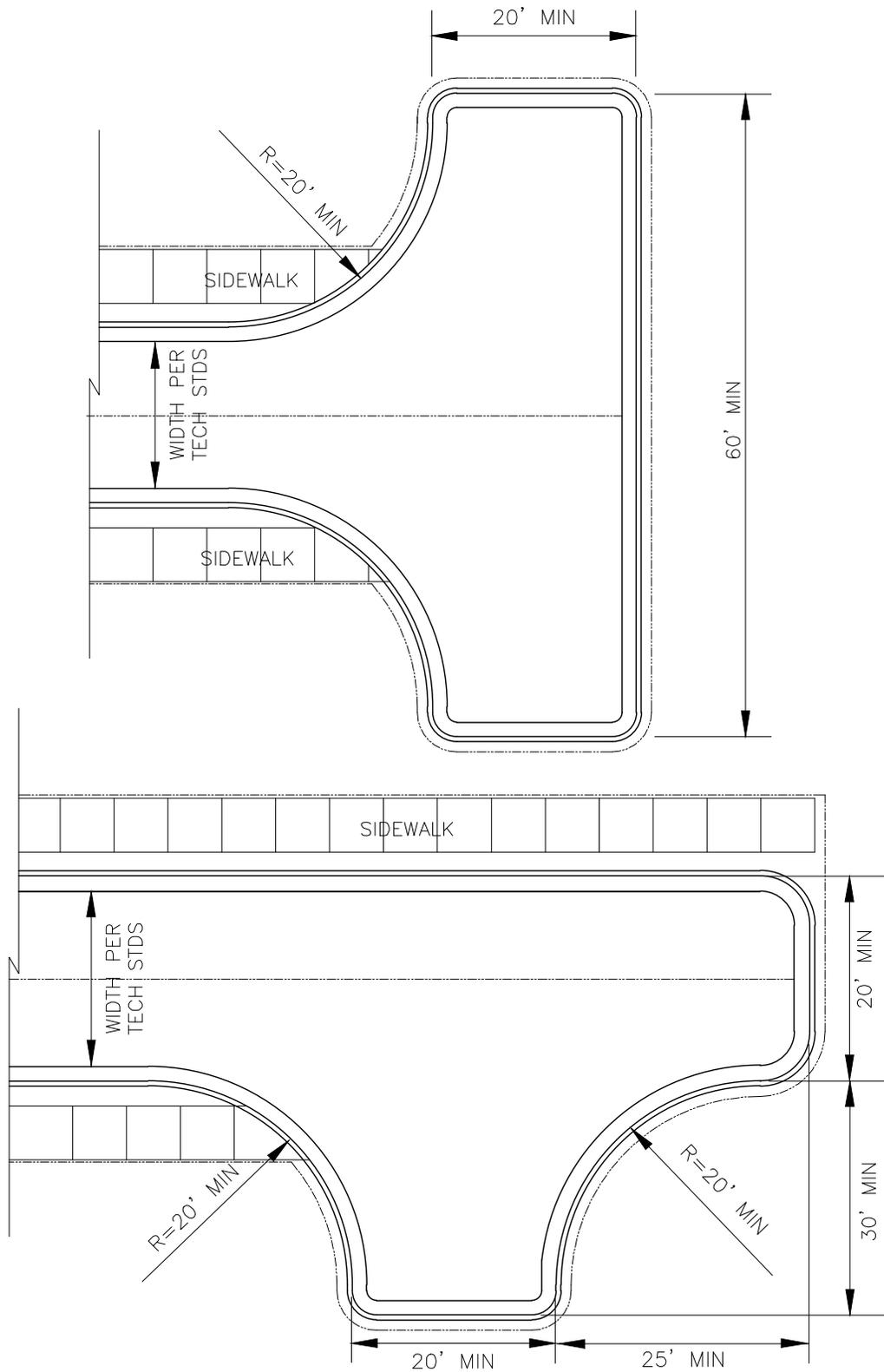
SCALE: NOT TO SCALE

RESIDENTIAL
CUL-DE-SACS



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON N.C. 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 3-04



STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: 10-28-11

DRAWN: PB/JSR

CHECKED: DEC

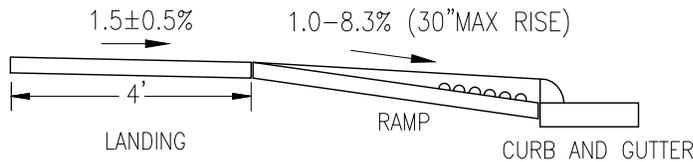
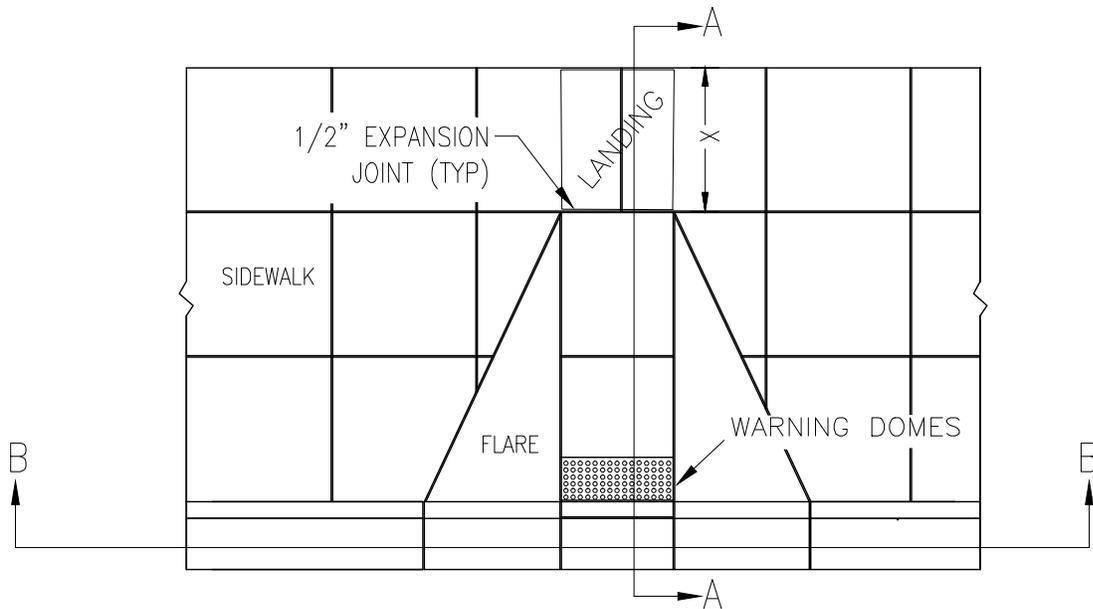
SCALE: NOT TO SCALE

TURNAROUNDS

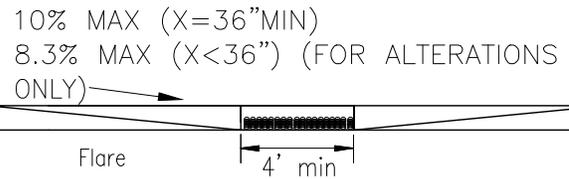


CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON N.C. 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 3-05

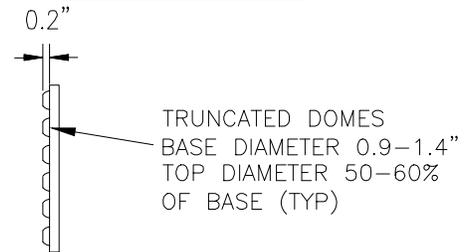
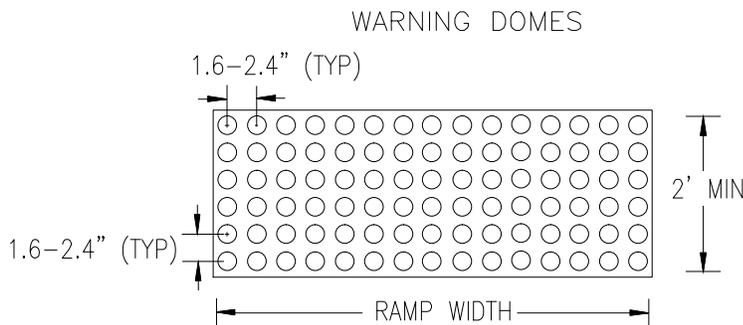


MIN. LANDING WIDTH = RAMP WIDTH
 MAX SLOPE 2% IN ANY DIRECTION



SECTION A-A

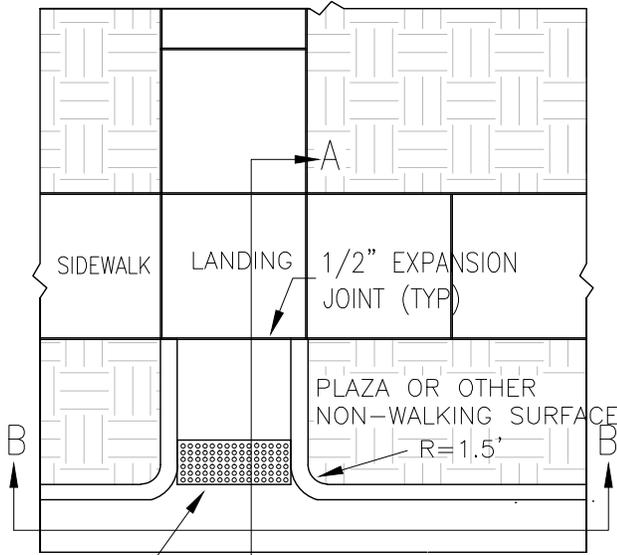
SECTION B-B



- WARNING DOME NOTES:
1. USE CONTRASTING COLORS, RED OR BLACK ON WHITE PAVEMENT.
 2. USE CAST IN PLACE PAVERS FOR NEW CONSTRUCTION.
 3. RUBBER MATS ARE PERMITTED FOR RETROFITS.
 4. LANDING AND RAMP WIDTH MAY BE REDUCED TO 3' WHERE SPACE IS LIMITED AND DESIGN IS APPROVED BY THE CITY ENGINEER.

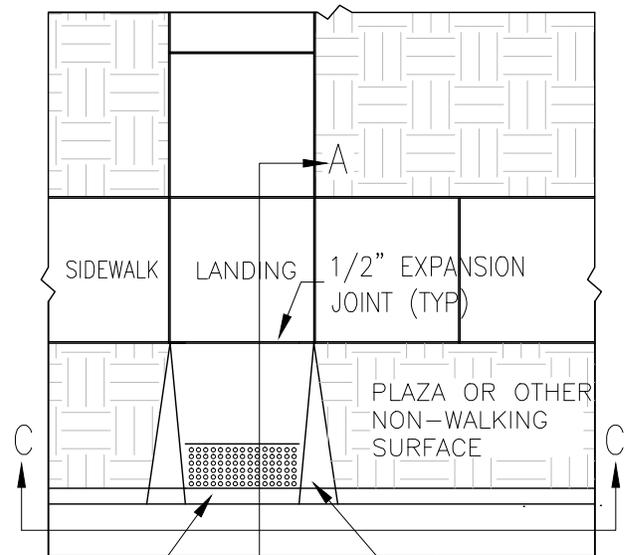
STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>WILMINGTON NORTH CAROLINA</p> <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON N.C. 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: DECEMBER, 2010	<p>PERPENDICULAR CURB RAMP ADJACENT TO WALKING SURFACE</p>	
DRAWN: PB/JSR		
CHECKED: DEC		
SCALE: NOT TO SCALE		
		SD 3-07

RAMP W/ CURB RETURN



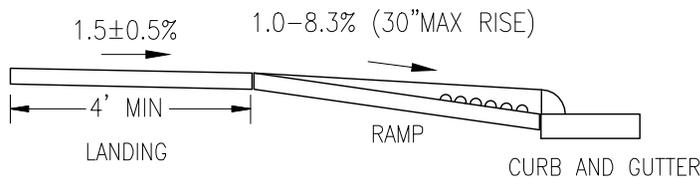
WARNING
DOMES

RAMP W/ DEPRESSED CURB



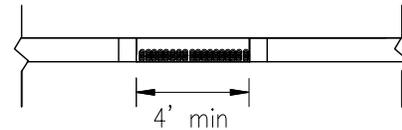
WARNING
DOMES

ROUNDED CONCRETE
SURFACE

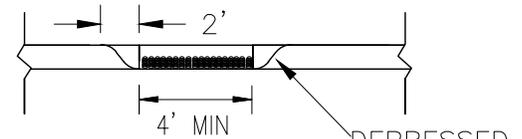


MIN. LANDING WIDTH = RAMP WIDTH
MAX SLOPE 2% IN ANY DIRECTION

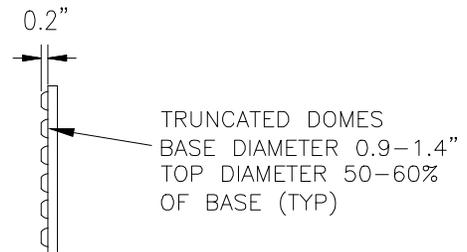
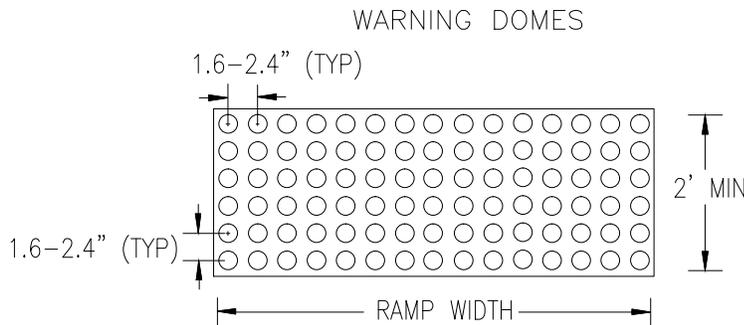
SECTION A-A



SECTION B-B



SECTION C-C
DEPRESSED CURB



WARNING DOME NOTES:

1. USE CONTRASTING COLORS, RED OR BLACK ON WHITE PAVEMENT.
2. USE CAST IN PLACE PAVERS FOR NEW CONSTRUCTION.
3. RUBBER MATS ARE PERMITTED FOR RETROFITS.
4. LANDING AND RAMP WIDTH MAY BE REDUCED TO 3' WHERE SPACE IS LIMITED AND DESIGN IS APPROVED BY THE CITY ENGINEER.

STANDARD DETAIL

PERPENDICULAR CURB
RAMP
ADJACENT TO PLAZA

DATE: DECEMBER, 2010

DRAWN: PB/JSR

CHECKED: DEC

SCALE NOT TO SCALE

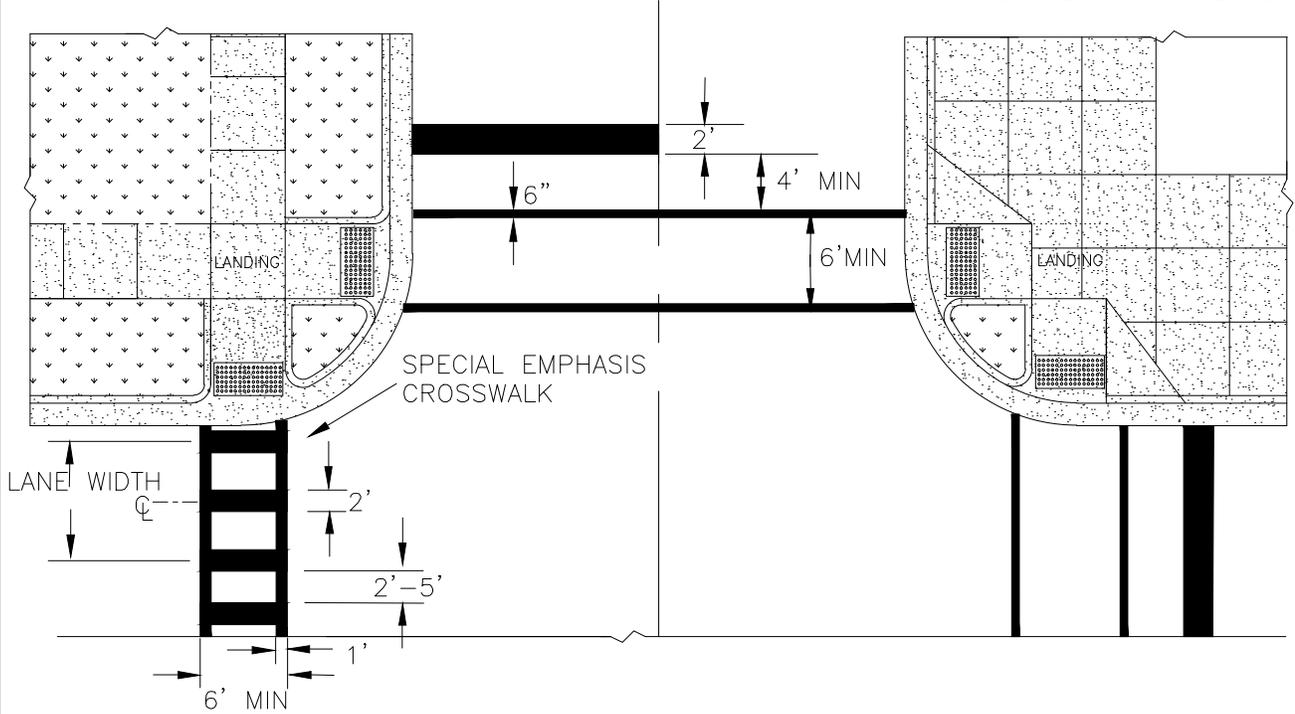


CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON N.C. 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD3-08

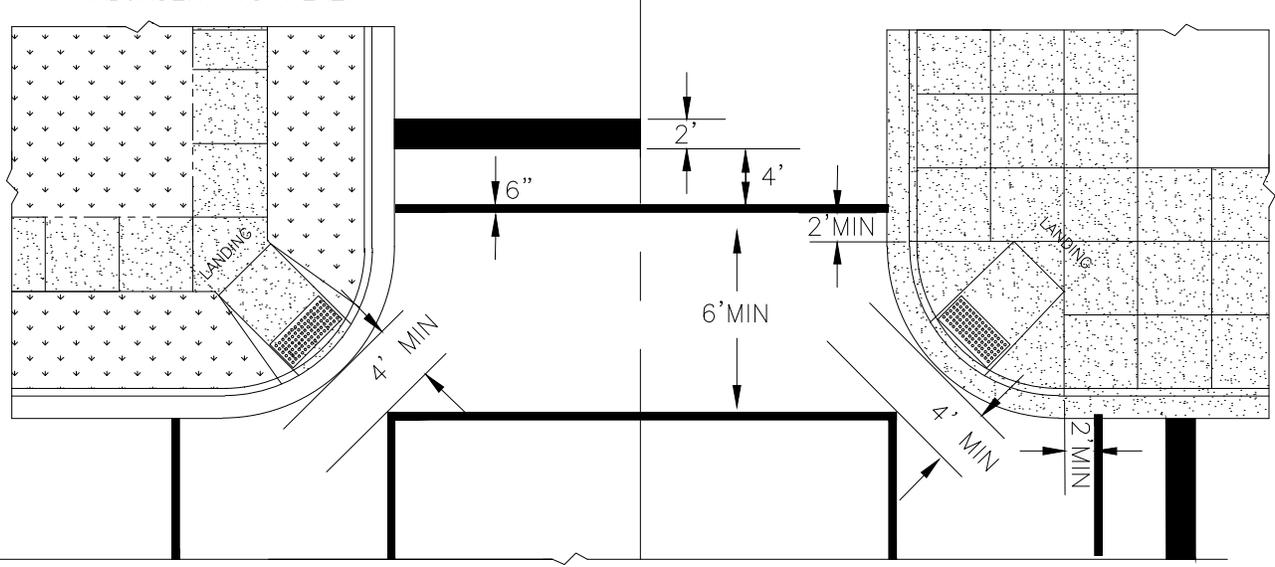
WHEELCHAIR RAMPS
ADJACENT TO PLAZA

WHEELCHAIR RAMPS WITH FLARE
ADJACENT TO SIDEWALK



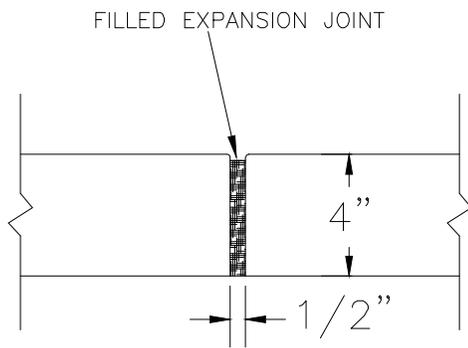
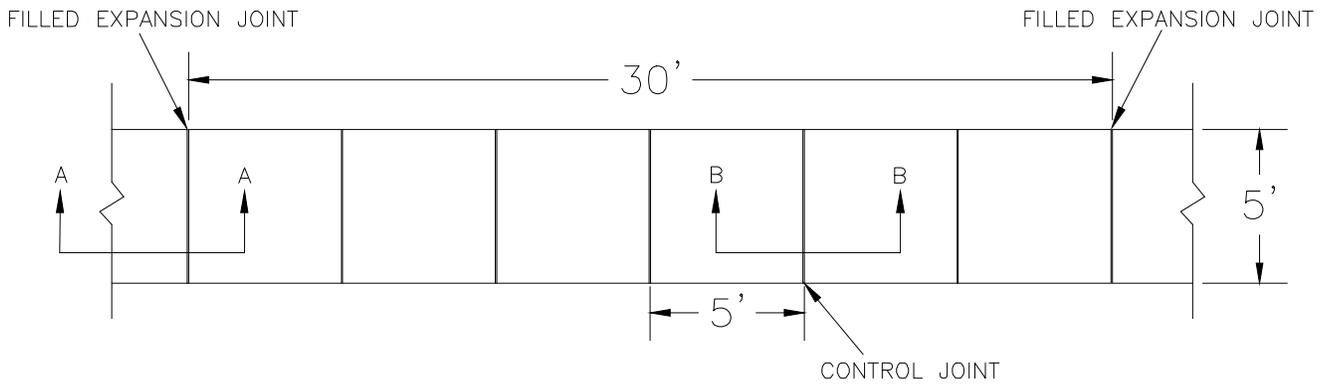
DIAGONAL WHEELCHAIR RAMP
ADJACENT TO PLAZA

DIAGONAL WHEELCHAIR RAMP WITH FLARE
ADJACENT TO SIDEWALK

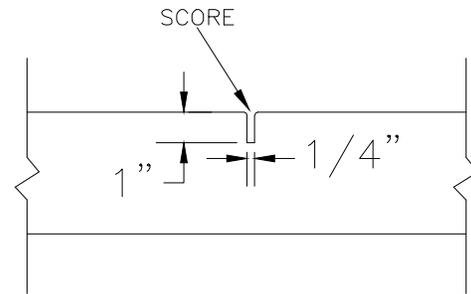


- NOTES: 1. RAMPS AT MARKED CROSSINGS MUST BE WHOLLY CONTAINED WITHIN THE MARKINGS.
2. RAMPS AND LANDINGS MUST MEET CURRENT ACCESSIBILITY STANDARDS.

STANDARD DETAIL		INTERSECTION LAYOUT	 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON N.C. 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE:	AUGUST, 2011		
DRAWN:	PB/JSR		
CHECKED:	DEC		
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE		
		SD 3-09	



SECTION A-A

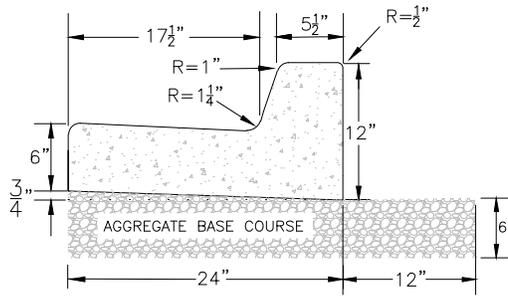
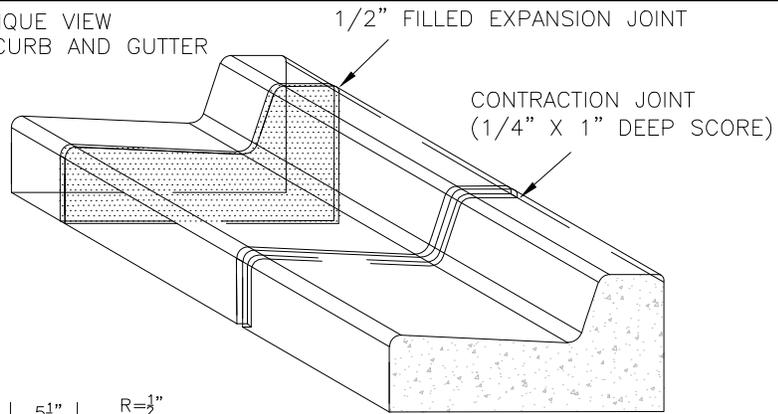


SECTION B-B

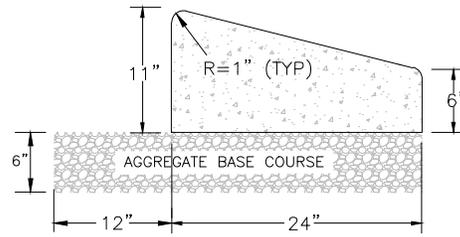
- NOTES:**
1. JOINT MATERIAL TO COMPLY WITH CURRENT NCDOT STANDARDS.
 2. SANITARY SEWER CLEAN-OUTS, WATER METERS, MANHOLES, AND VALVE LIDS TO BE LOCATED OUTSIDE SIDEWALK WHERE FEASIBLE.
 3. MINIMUM SIDEWALK WIDTH TO BE 6' MINIMUM IF PLACED AT BACK OF CURB.
 4. CONCRETE FOR ALL SIDEWALKS (EXCEPT ANY PORTION CONTAIN WITHIN A DRIVEWAY APRON) SHALL BE CLASS "A" - 3,000 PSI.
 5. MINIMUM REPLACEMENT FOR REPAIRS IS A 5' X 5' PANEL
 6. 4" STONE BASE MAY BE REQUIRED FOR POOR SOIL CONDITIONS
 7. MINIMUM DEPTH FOR TUNNELING BELOW SIDEWALK IS 12"
 8. MAX ADJACENT GROUND SLOPE WITHOUT RAILING IS 2:1
 9. MIN GRADE FOR PROPER DRAINAGE IS 1% IN AT LEAST 1 DIRECTION. MAX CROSS SLOPE IS 2%. MAX LONGITUDINAL SLOPE IS 8.3%, 10% IF LIMITED BY EXISTING CONDITIONS, OR NO GREATER THAN THE SLOPE OF THE EXISTING ADJACENT ROAD.

STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON N.C. 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: OCTOBER, 2010	<h1 style="margin: 0;">SIDEWALK</h1>	
DRAWN: PB/JSR		
CHECKED: DEC		
SCALE <u>NOT TO SCALE</u>		
		SD 3-10

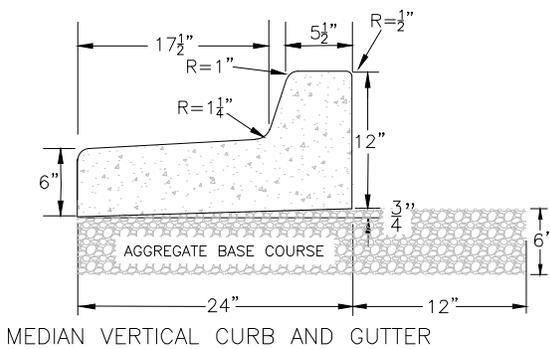
OBLIQUE VIEW
VERTICAL CURB AND GUTTER



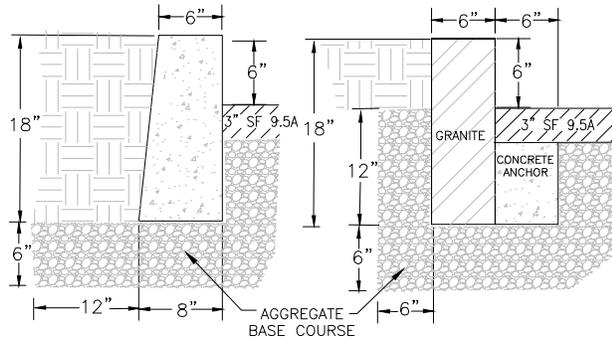
VERTICAL CURB AND GUTTER



SLOPE CURB

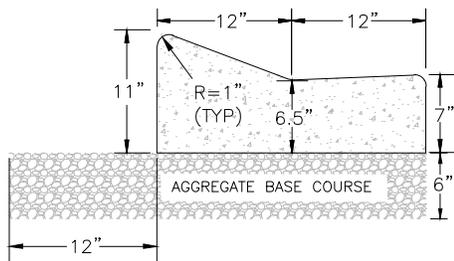


MEDIAN VERTICAL CURB AND GUTTER

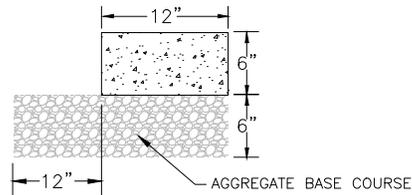


VERTICAL CURB

GRANITE CURB



VALLEY CURB



HEADER CURB

- NOTES: 1. EXPANSION JOINT MATERIAL TO COMPLY WITH CURRENT NCDOT STANDARDS
 2. 50' MAX EXPANSION JOINT SPACING, 10' MAX CONTRACTION JOINT SPACING
 3. MINIMUM INSTALLATION LENGTH IS 5 FT.
 4. CONCRETE TO BE 3000 PSI MIN
 5. VERTICAL CURB AND GUTTER BASE CAN BE SLOPED 3/4" OR USE A FLAT BASE

STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: AUGUST, 2011

DRAWN: PB/JSR

CHECKED: DEC

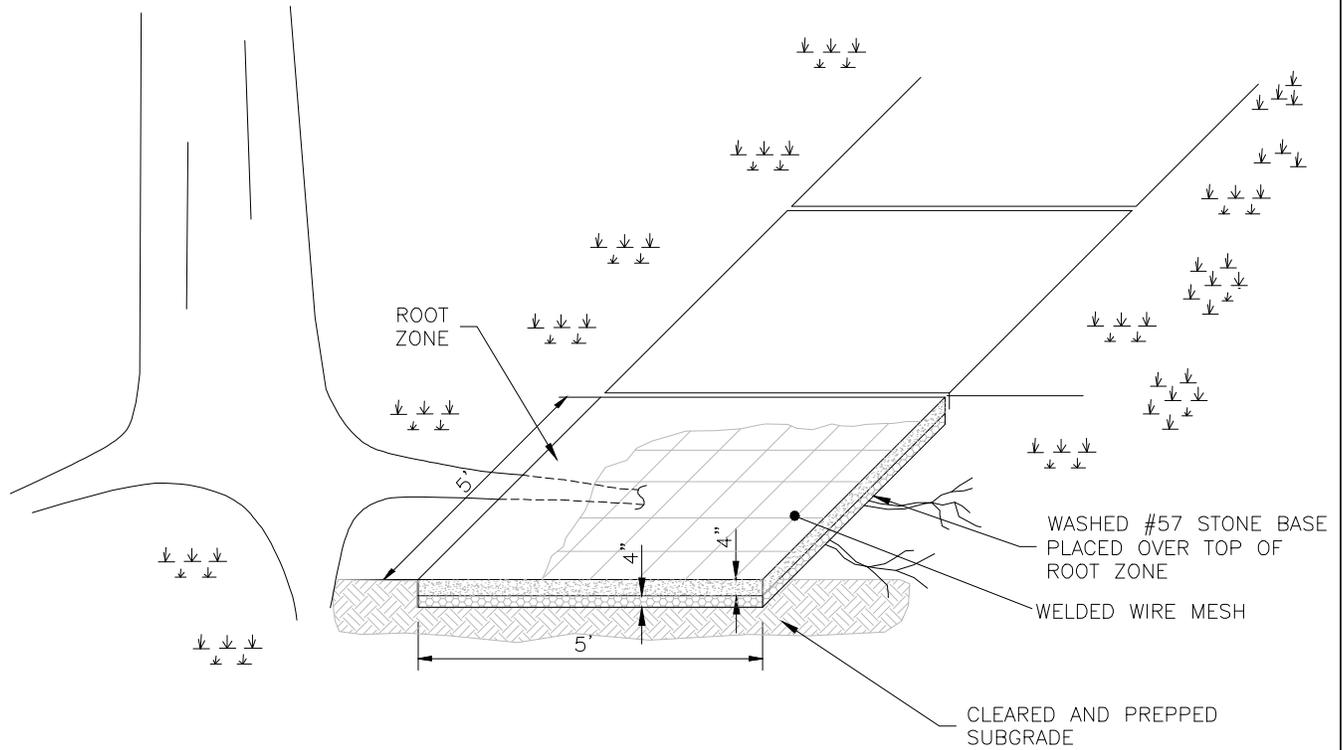
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

CURBING



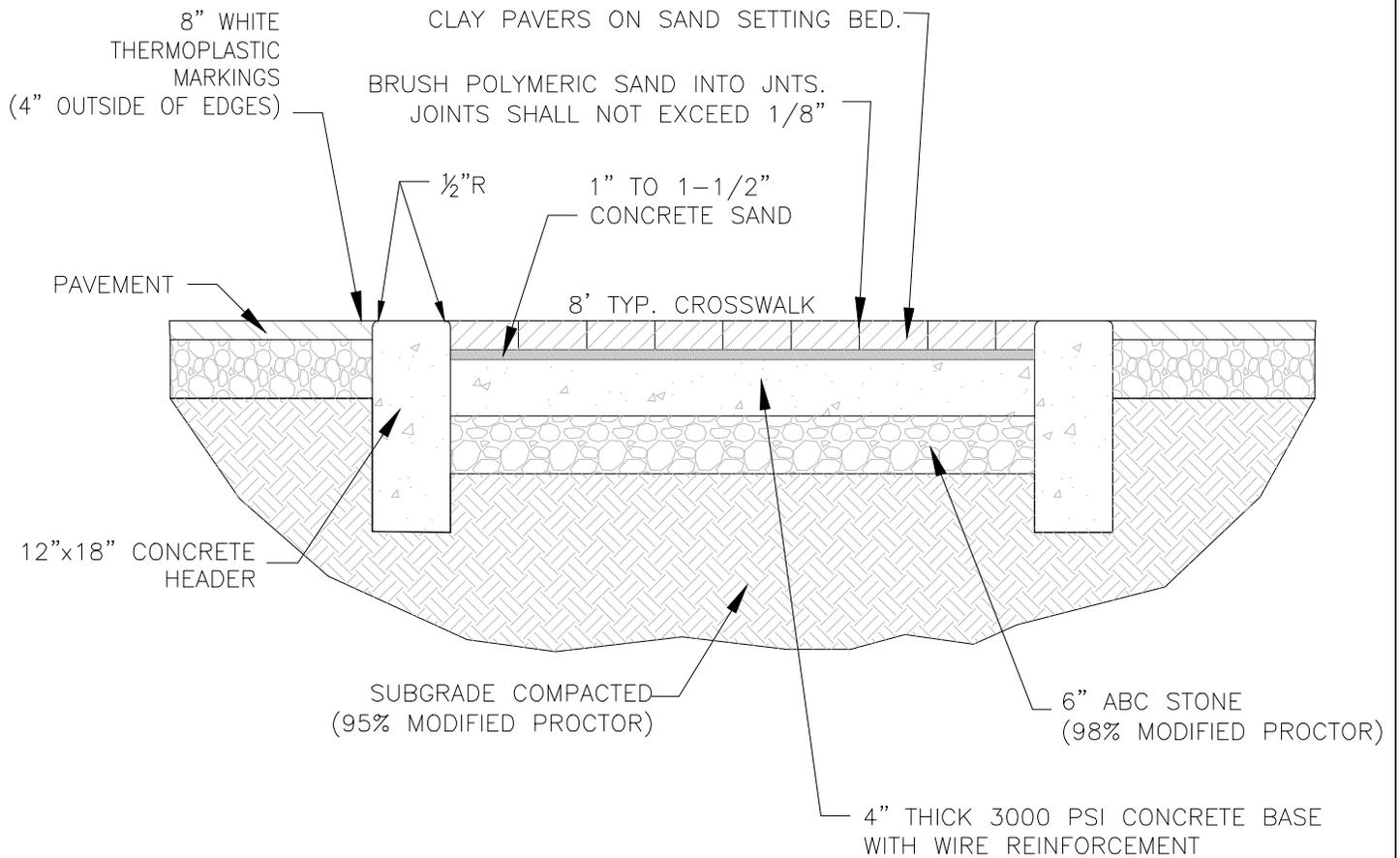
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON N.C. 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 3-11



- NOTES:
- 1—REINFORCED SIDEWALK LOCATED BY ENGINEER.
 - 2—ALL OTHER CITY OF WILMINGTON STANDARD SIDEWALK DETAILS APPLY.
 - 3—WELDED WIRE MESH SHALL BE 6x6 W 4.0/4.0 AND FREE OF OIL, DIRT AND DEFECTS AND PROTECTED FROM DAMAGE. WIRE SPLICES SHALL OVERLAP 12 INCHES AND BE TIED TOGETHER AND SUPPORTED IN POSITION.

	STANDARD DETAIL	 <p>WILMINGTON NORTH CAROLINA</p> <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON N.C. 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: NOVEMBER, 2011	<p>REINFORCED SIDEWALK</p>	
DRAWN BY JSR		
CHECKED BY BDR, P.E.		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE		SD 3-100



1. BRICK TYPE, SIZE AND PATTERN SHALL BE COORDINATED WITH CITY OF WILMINGTON. TYPICAL BRICK PAVER 4"x8"x2-3/4" HERRINGBONE PATTERN. RUMBLED COURTYARD, FULL RANGE COLOR, BRICK BY PINE HALL.
2. PAVERS SHALL MEET OR EXCEED ASTM C1272 STANDARD SPECIFICATION FOR HEAVY VEHICULAR PAVING BRICK, TYPE "F".
3. CONCRETE HEADER TO BE 3000 PSI, BROOM FINISH, 1/2" RADIUS ON EDGES AND FLUSH WITH ASPHALT AND PAVERS. CONTROL JOINTS AT ±5' O.C. (EQUAL SPACING). CONCRETE TO BE POURED AFTER COMPACTION OF STONE SUB-BASE.
4. WELDED WIRE MESH REINFORCEMENT SHALL BE 6x6 WITH 4.0/4.0 AND FREE OF OIL, DIRT AND DEFECTS AND SHALL BE PROTECTED FROM DAMAGE. WIRE SPLICES SHALL OVERLAP 12 INCHES AND BE TIED TOGETHER AND SUPPORTED IN PLACE.

STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: NOVEMBER, 2011

DRAWN BY JSR

CHECKED BY B.D.R., P.E.

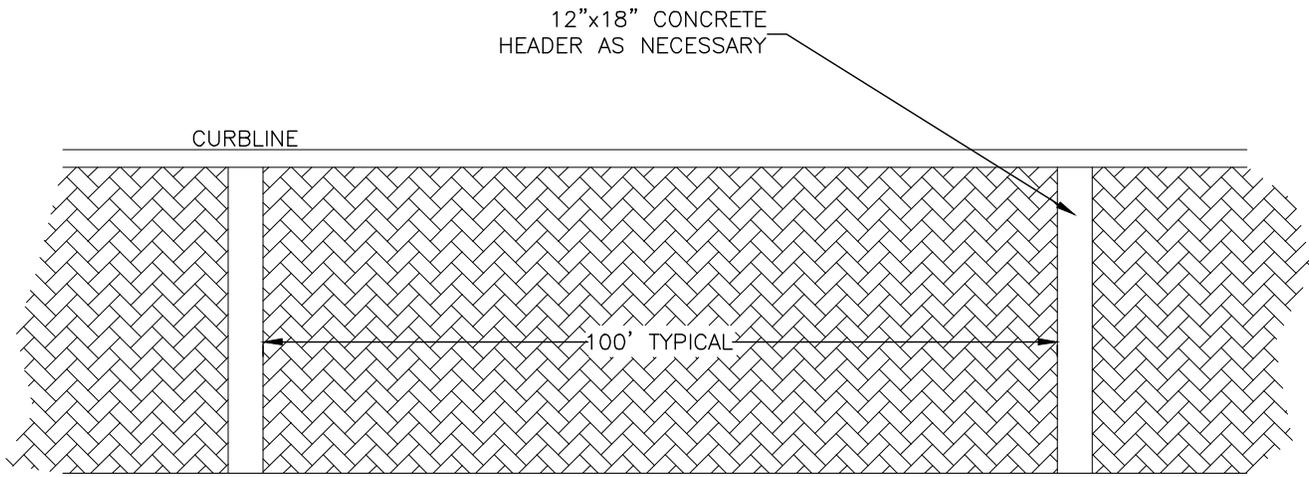
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

BRICK CROSSWALK

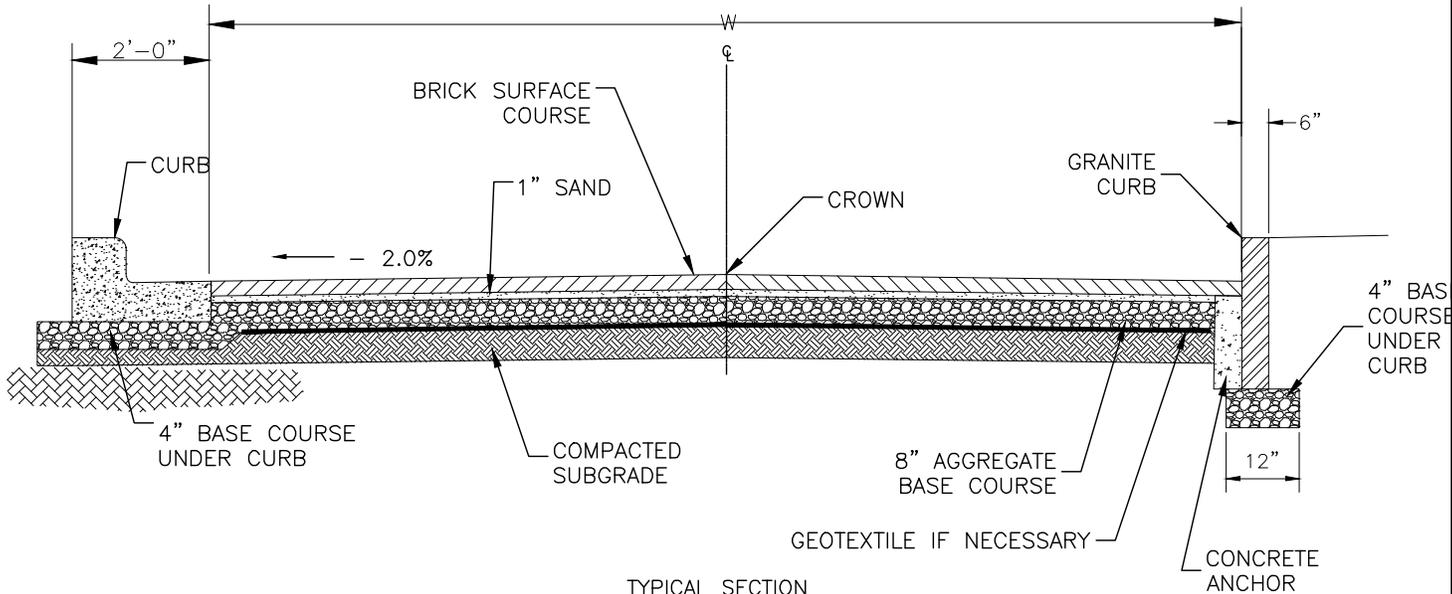


CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 3-102



PLAN
NOT TO SCALE



TYPICAL SECTION
NOT TO SCALE

1. BRICK TYPE, SIZE AND PATTERN SHALL BE COORDINATED WITH CITY OF WILMINGTON. TYPICAL BRICK PAVER 4"x8"x2-3/4" HERRINGBONE PATTERN. RUMBLED COURTYARD, FULL RANGE COLOR, BRICK BY PINE HALL.
2. PAVERS SHALL MEET OR EXCEED ASTM C1272, TYPE F STANDARD SPECIFICATION FOR HEAVY VEHICULAR PAVING BRICK.
3. FINAL DESIGN OF BASE, SETTINGS BEDS AND EDGE RESTRAINTS SHALL BE DEPENDENT ON THE SOIL CONDITIONS AND APPLICATION.
4. CONCRETE HEADER TO BE 3000 PSI, BROOM FINISH, 1/2" RADIUS ON EDGES AND FLUSH WITH ASPHALT AND PAVERS. CONTROL JOINTS AT ±5' O.C. (EQUAL SPACING). CONCRETE TO BE POURED AFTER COMPACTION OF STONE SUB-BASE. DRIVEWAYS AND GRADE CROSSINGS SHALL UTILIZE AN EDGE RESTRAINT HEADER, TYPICALLY WITH THE SAME MATERIAL AS THE EXISTING CURB TYPE.

STANDARD DETAIL

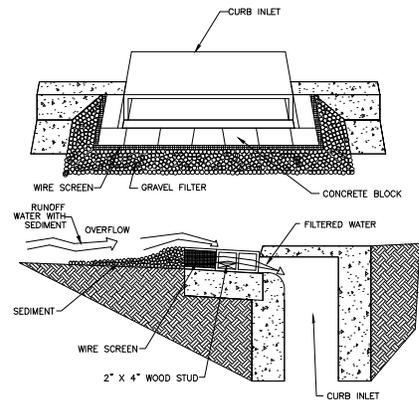
**BRICK STREET
TYPICAL SECTION**



CITY OF WILMINGTON
ENGINEERING OFFICE
414 CHESTNUT STREET
WILMINGTON N.C. 28401
(910) 341-7807

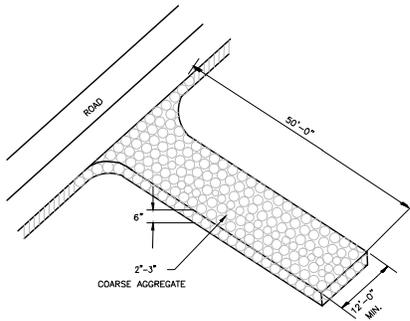
SD 3-103

DATE:	NOVEMBER, 2011
DRAWN BY	JSR
CHECKED BY	BDR, P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

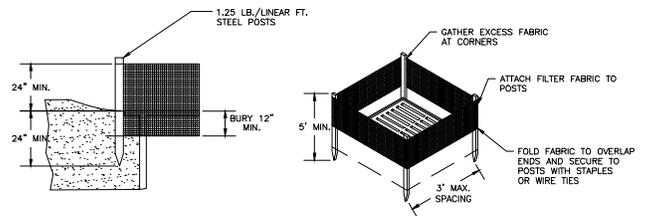


BLOCK AND GRAVEL INLET PROTECTION

TEMPORARY SILT FENCE



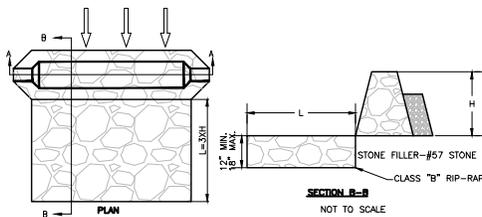
TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION ENTRANCE



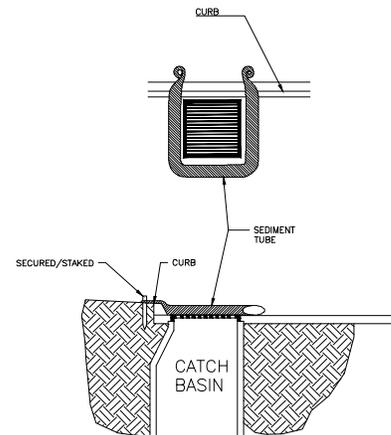
FILTER FABRIC BURIAL

FILTER FABRIC INSTALLATION

LOW FLOW INLET FILTERS



ROCK CHECK DAM



INLET PROTECTION-SEDIMENT TUBE

LAND DISTURBING ACTIVITIES MUST BE MANAGED TO AVOID SEDIMENT RUN-OFF AND POLLUTION FROM CONSTRUCTION SITES.

WHERE PERMITTED LOCALLY BY NEW HANOVER COUNTY, AN EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL (E&SC) PLAN WILL CONTAIN DETAILS AND GUIDANCE. E&SC PLANS ARE PERFORMANCE BASED AND OFTEN REQUIRE ADJUSTMENTS OR REPAIRS.

AS PERMITTED BY NCDENR, DIVISIONS OF WATER QUALITY AND LAND RESOURCES, A STORMWATER PERMIT WILL REQUIRE SELF-MONITORING REPORTS (WEEKLY, >1" RAIN EVENT) OR SELF-INSPECTION REPORTS AFTER EACH CONSTRUCTION PHASE, BASED ON ELEMENTS OF THE E&SC PLAN.

STANDARD DETAIL

**GUIDELINES FOR
SEDIMENT CONTROL BMPs**



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

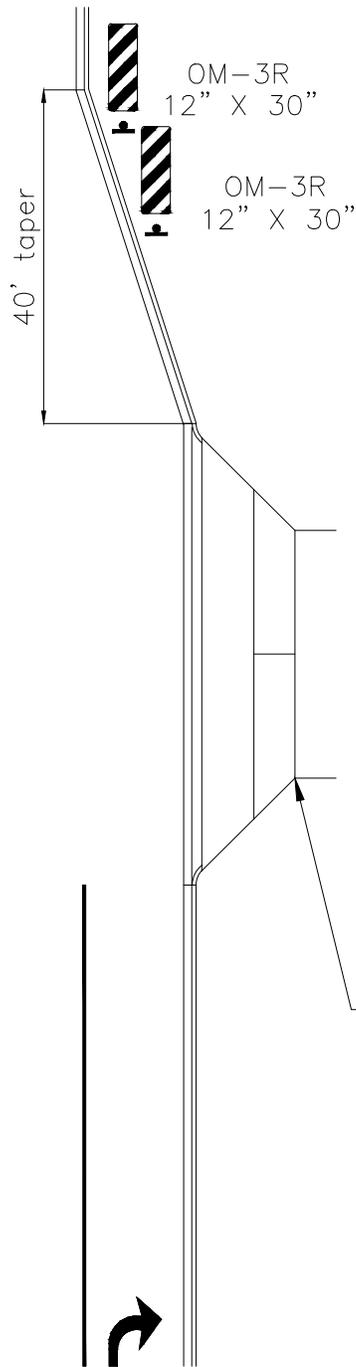
SD 3-104

DATE: SEPTEMBER, 2012

DRAWN BY JSR

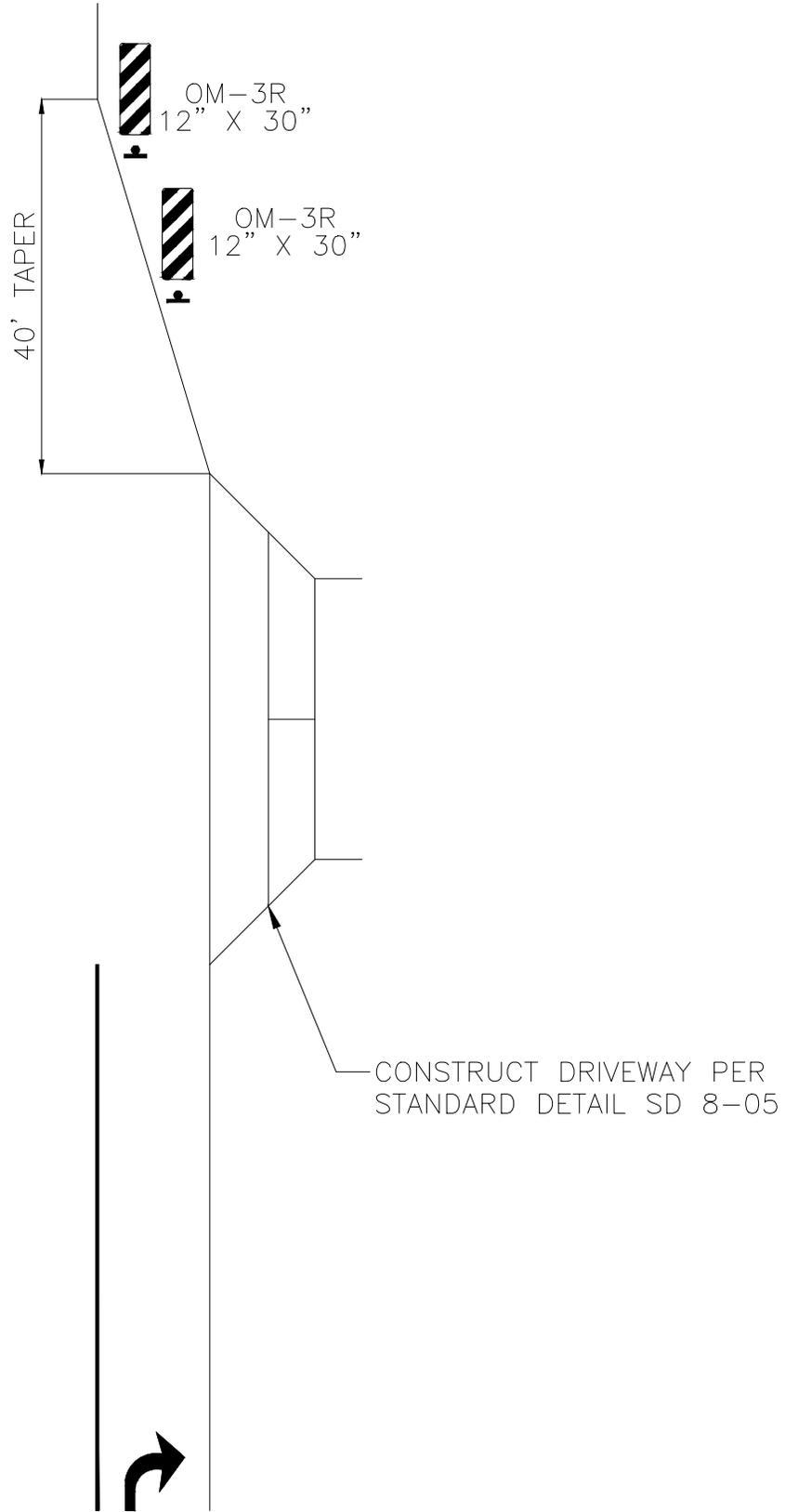
CHECKED BY BDR, P.E.

SCALE NOT TO SCALE



CONSTRUCT DRIVEWAY PER
STANDARD DETAIL SD 8-02

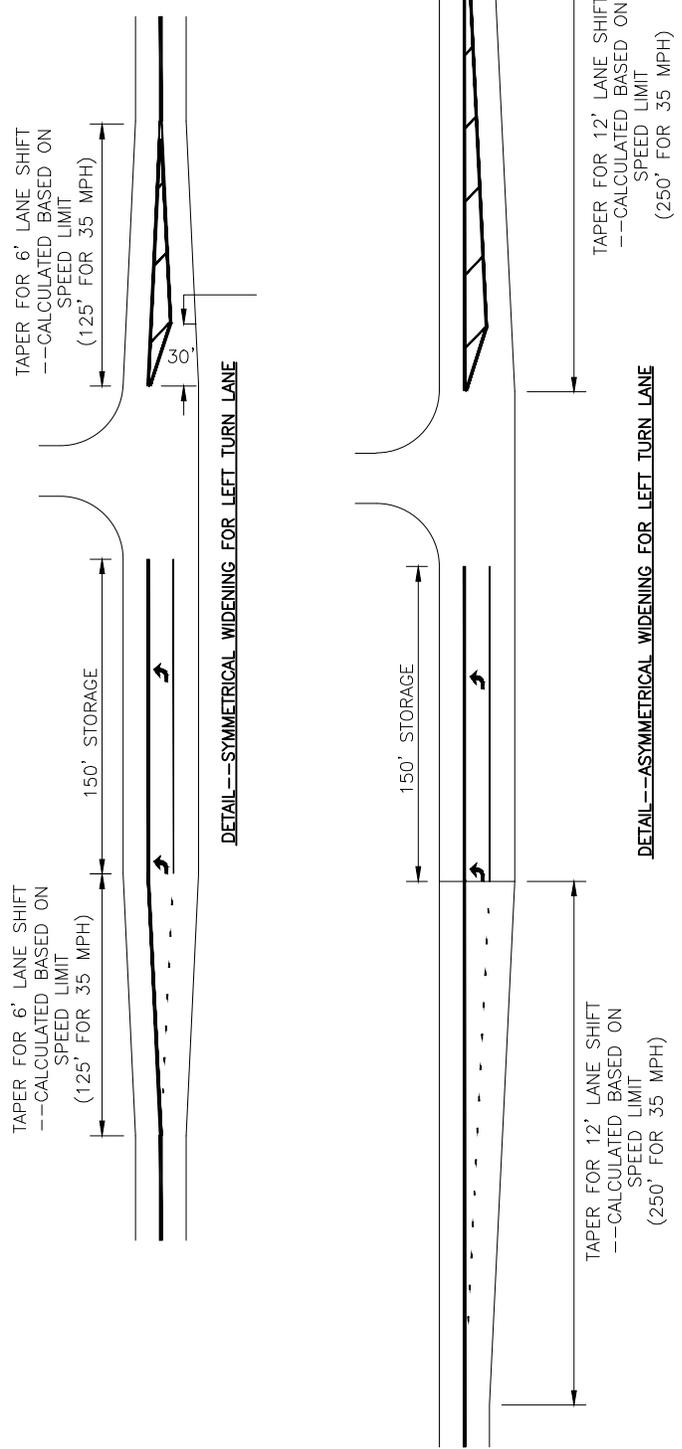
STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON NORTH CAROLINA</p> <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: 2003	<p>STANDARD DRIVEWAY WITH RIGHT TURN BAY (DECELERATION LANE)</p>	
DRAWN BY RB		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE		
		SD 8-18



CONSTRUCT DRIVEWAY PER
STANDARD DETAIL SD 8-05



STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: 2003	STANDARD DRIVEWAY WITH RIGHT TURN BAY (DECELERATION LANE)	
DRAWN BY RB		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE	SD 8-19	



STANDARD DETAIL

WIDENING OF
LEFT TURN LANE



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

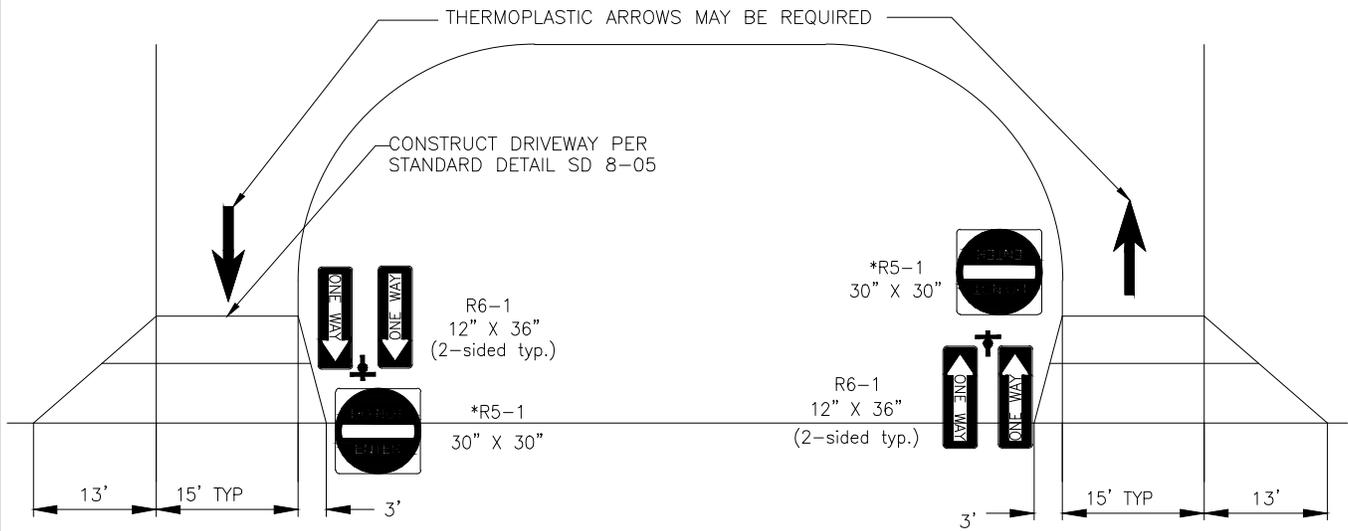
SD 8-20

DATE: 2003

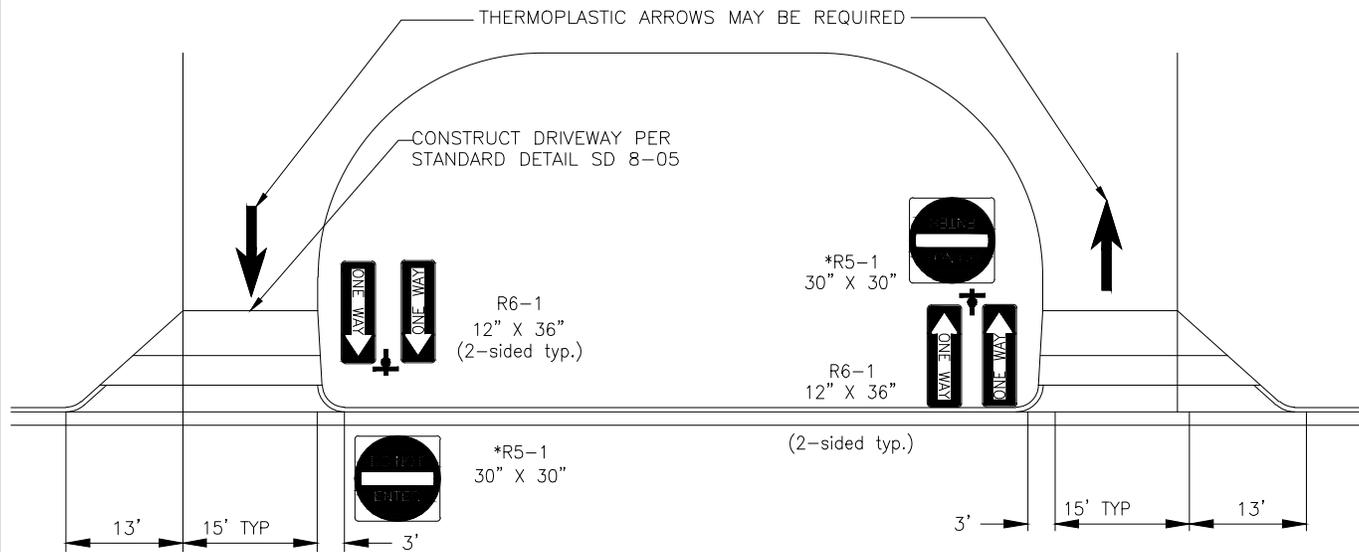
DRAWN BY RLB

CHECKED BY JRF

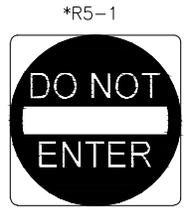
SCALE NOT TO SCALE



*SEE ENLARGEMENT BELOW RIGHT
STANDARD ONE-WAY DRIVEWAY PAIR (no curb on street)



*SEE ENLARGEMENT BELOW RIGHT
STANDARD ONE-WAY DRIVEWAY PAIR (curb on street)



DATE:	2003
DRAWN BY	RLB
CHECKED BY	JRF
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

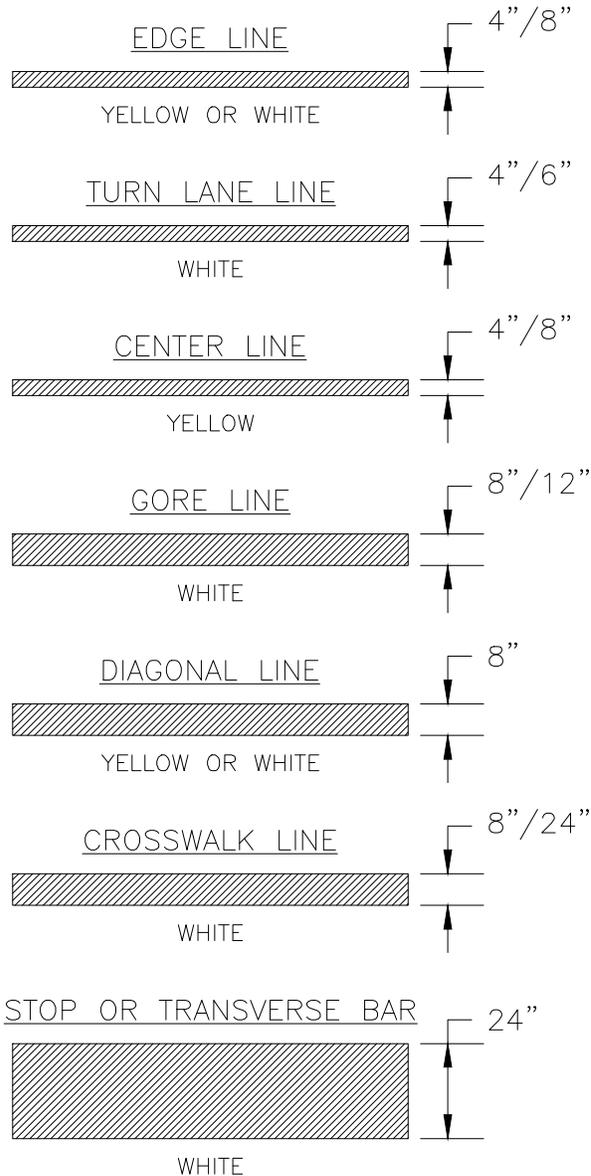
STANDARD DETAIL

STANDARD ONE-WAY DRIVEWAY

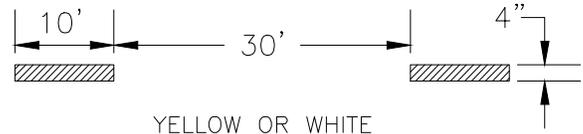

 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 8-21

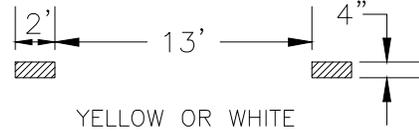
NORMAL/WIDE



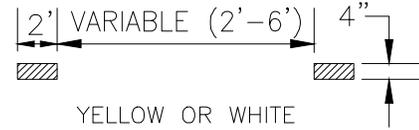
10' SKIP LINES



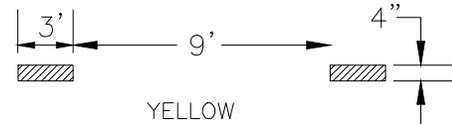
2' MINI-SKIP LINES



2' SKIP-LANE EXTENSIONS THRU INTERSECTION



3' SKIP MULTI-USE PATH



- 1-PAVEMENT MARKINGS AND SYMBOLS SHALL BE DESIGNED PER MUTCD WITH APPROVAL FROM CITY TRAFFIC ENGINEERING, AND INSTALLED IN ACCORDANCE WITH NCDOT DIVISION 12 SPECIFICATIONS.
- 2-GENERALLY, PERMANENT MARKINGS WILL BE UNIFORM AND SMOOTH AND WILL CONSIST OF 120MIL OF THERMOPLASTIC FOR ALL LINES AND SYMBOLS; TEMPORARY MARKINGS SHALL CONSISTS OF 15 MIL PAINT, EVERY 6 MONTHS.
- 3-DURING APPLICATION THE EXISTING PAVEMENT SHALL NOT SHOW SIGNS OF MOISTURE AND BE CLEAN, FREE OF DIRT AND OIL, ETC. THERMOPLASTIC SHALL ONLY BE INSTALLED WHERE PAVEMENT IS 50° F AND RISING. PAINT SHALL ONLY BE INSTALLED WHERE PAVEMENT IS 40° F AND RISING.

STANDARD DETAIL

PAVEMENT MARKINGS
LINE TYPES

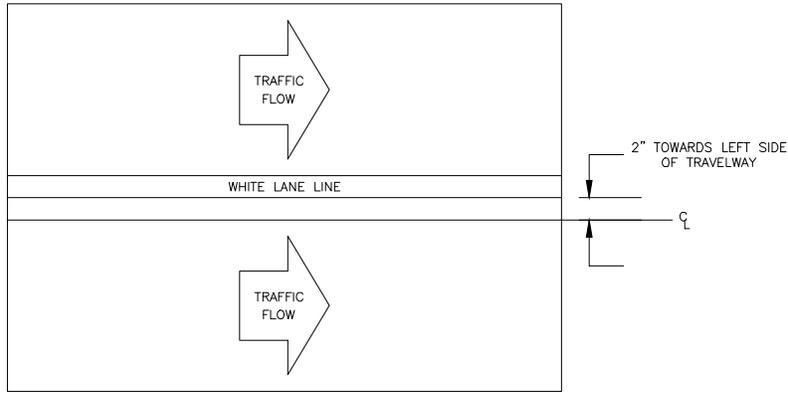


CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

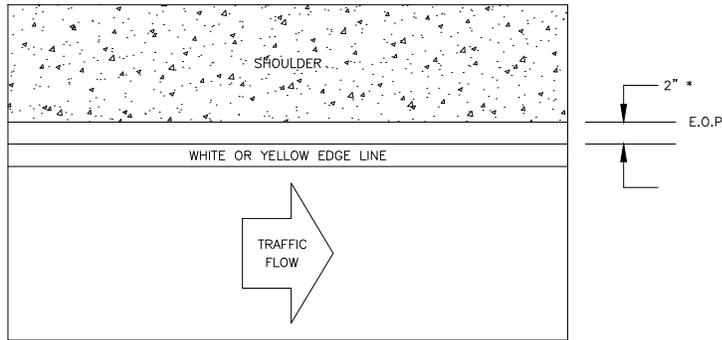
DATE:	DECEMBER, 2011
DRAWN BY	JSR
CHECKED BY	BDR, P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

SD 11-01

LANE LINE OFFSET DETAIL



EDGE LINE OFFSET DETAIL



*REFER ALSO TO TABLE

CENTER LINE OFFSET DETAIL

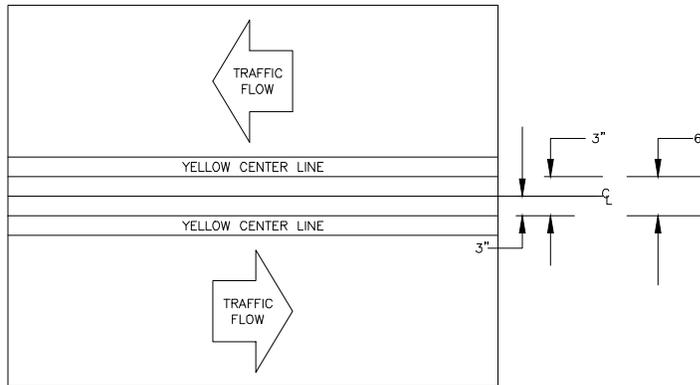


TABLE 1		
EDGE LINE OFFSETS FOR 2-LANE, 2-WAY ROADWAYS WITH UN-PAVED SHOULDERS		
WIDTH OF TRAVEL PAVEMENT	MAX. EDGE LINE OFFSET FROM E. O. P.	MINIMUM LANE WIDTH
16' - 20'	2"	8' - 10'
22'	2"	11'
24'	1'	11'
26'	2'	11'
28'	2'	12'
30'	3'	12'
32'	4'	12'

STANDARD DETAIL

PAVEMENT MARKINGS OFFSETS

DATE: 2003

DRAWN BY RLB

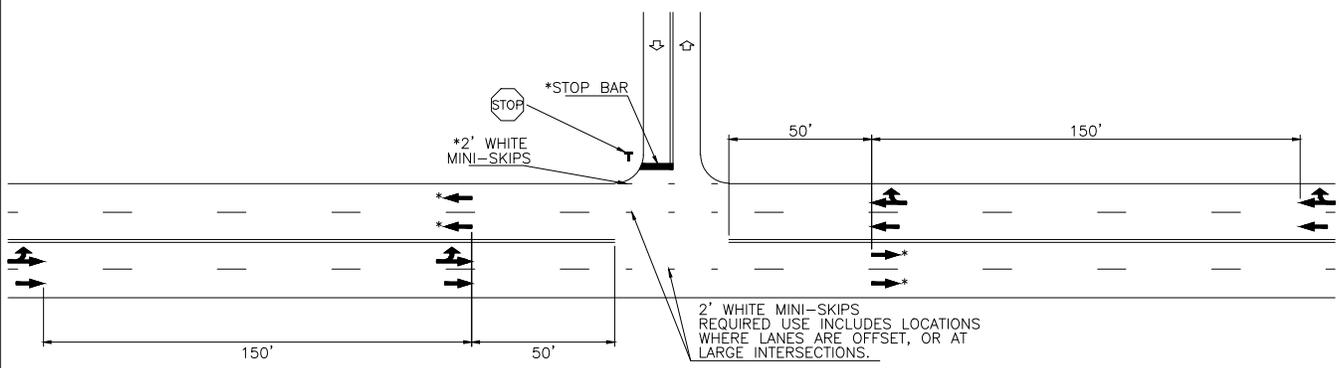
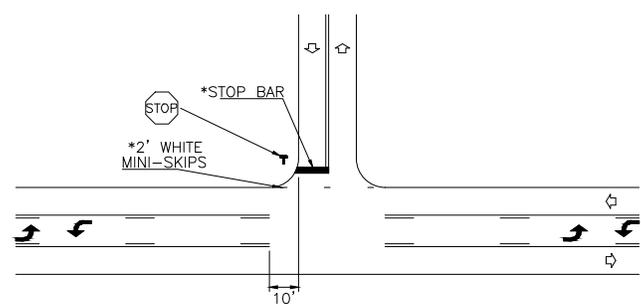
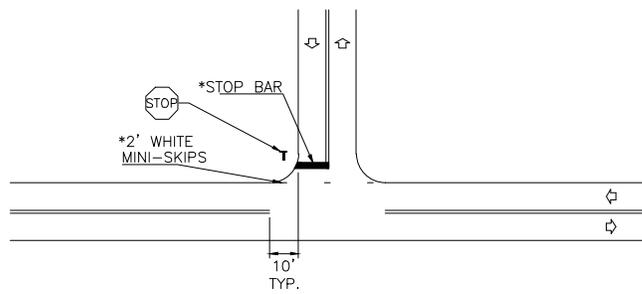
CHECKED BY RLB/JRF

SCALE NOT TO SCALE



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 11-02



LEGEND

↔ ↕ DIRECTION OF TRAFFIC FLOW

↪ PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOLS

* OPTIONAL

DATE: 2003
DRAWN BY RLB
CHECKED BY RLB/JRF
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

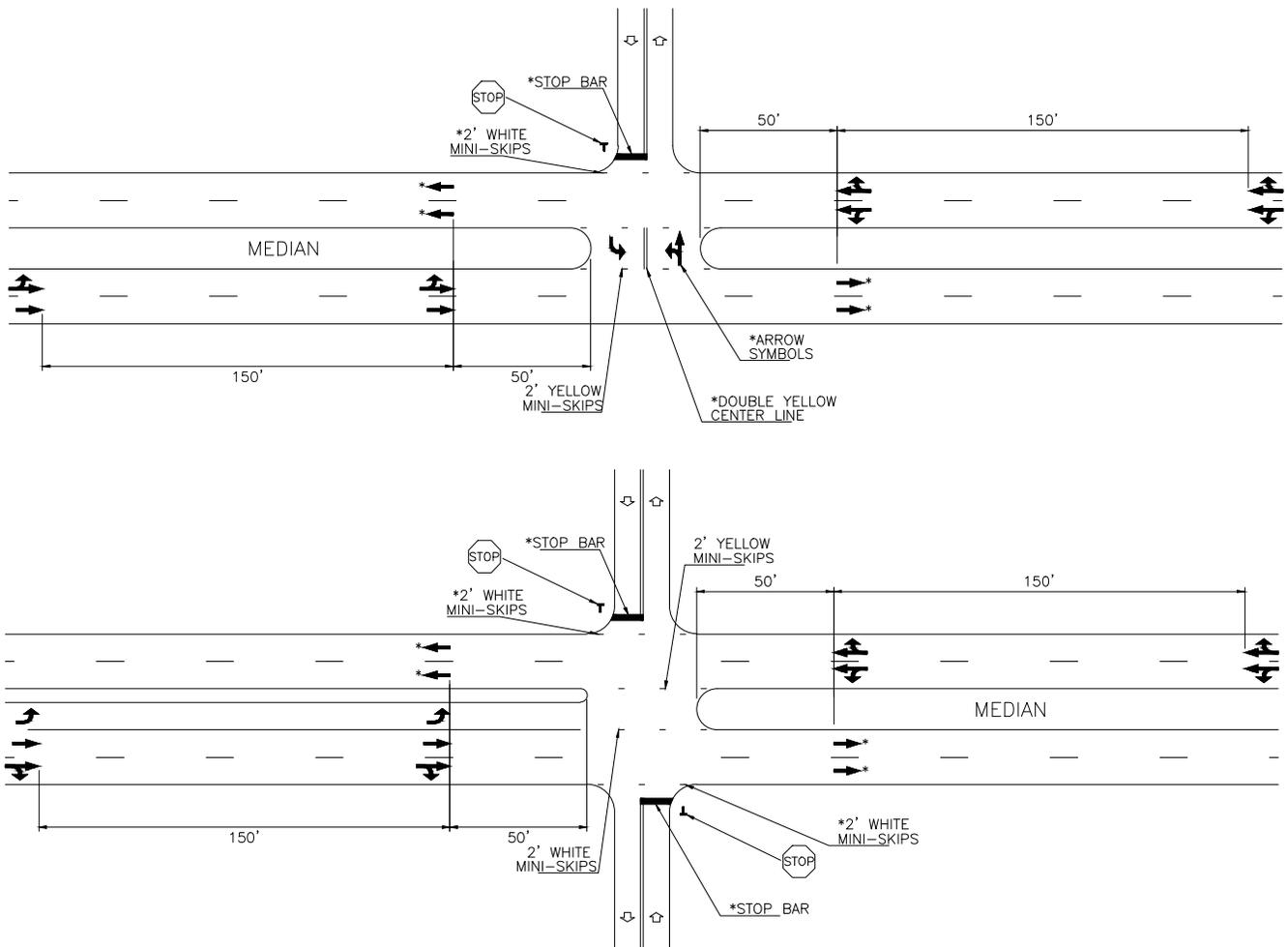
STANDARD DETAIL

**PAVEMENT MARKINGS
NON-SIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS**

WILMINGTON
CITY OF
NORTH CAROLINA

CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 11-04



LEGEND	
	DIRECTION OF TRAFFIC FLOW
	PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOLS
*	OPTIONAL

DATE: 2003
DRAWN BY RLB
CHECKED BY RLB/JRF
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL

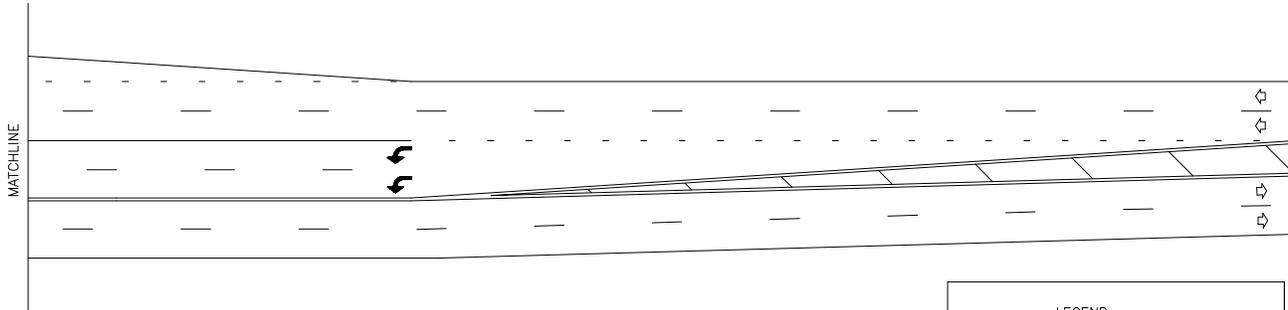
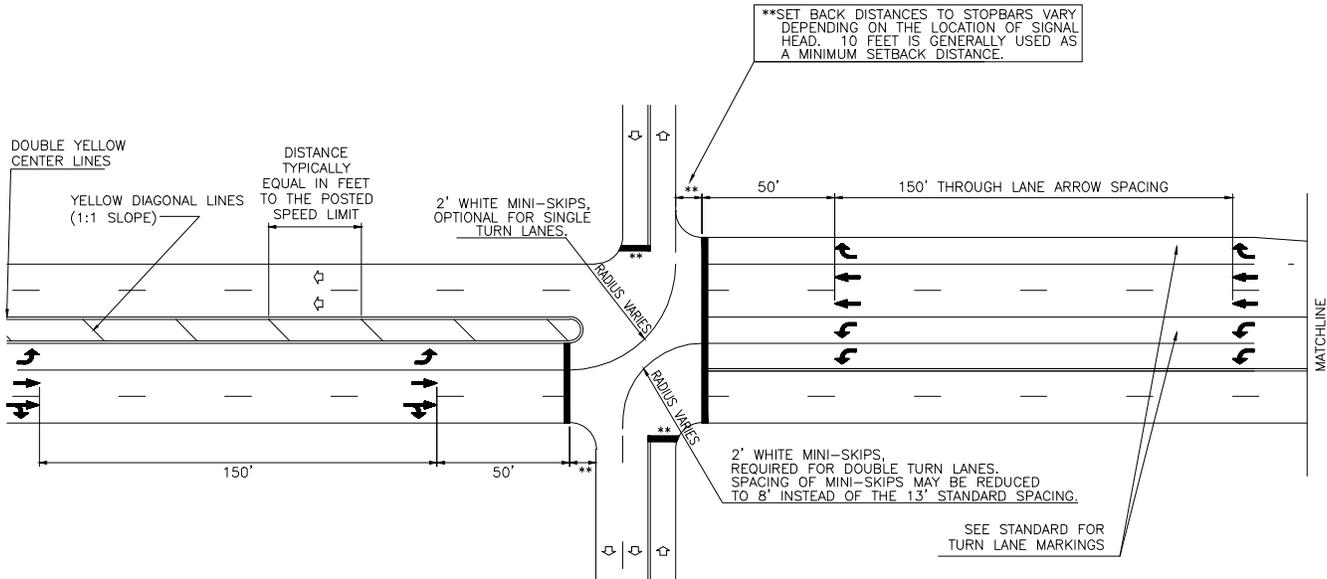
PAVEMENT MARKINGS

NON-SIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS

WILMINGTON
CITY OF
NORTH CAROLINA

CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 11-05



LEGEND	
	DIRECTION OF TRAFFIC FLOW
	PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOLS
	OPTIONAL

DATE: 2003
DRAWN BY RLB
CHECKED BY DRB/JRG
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

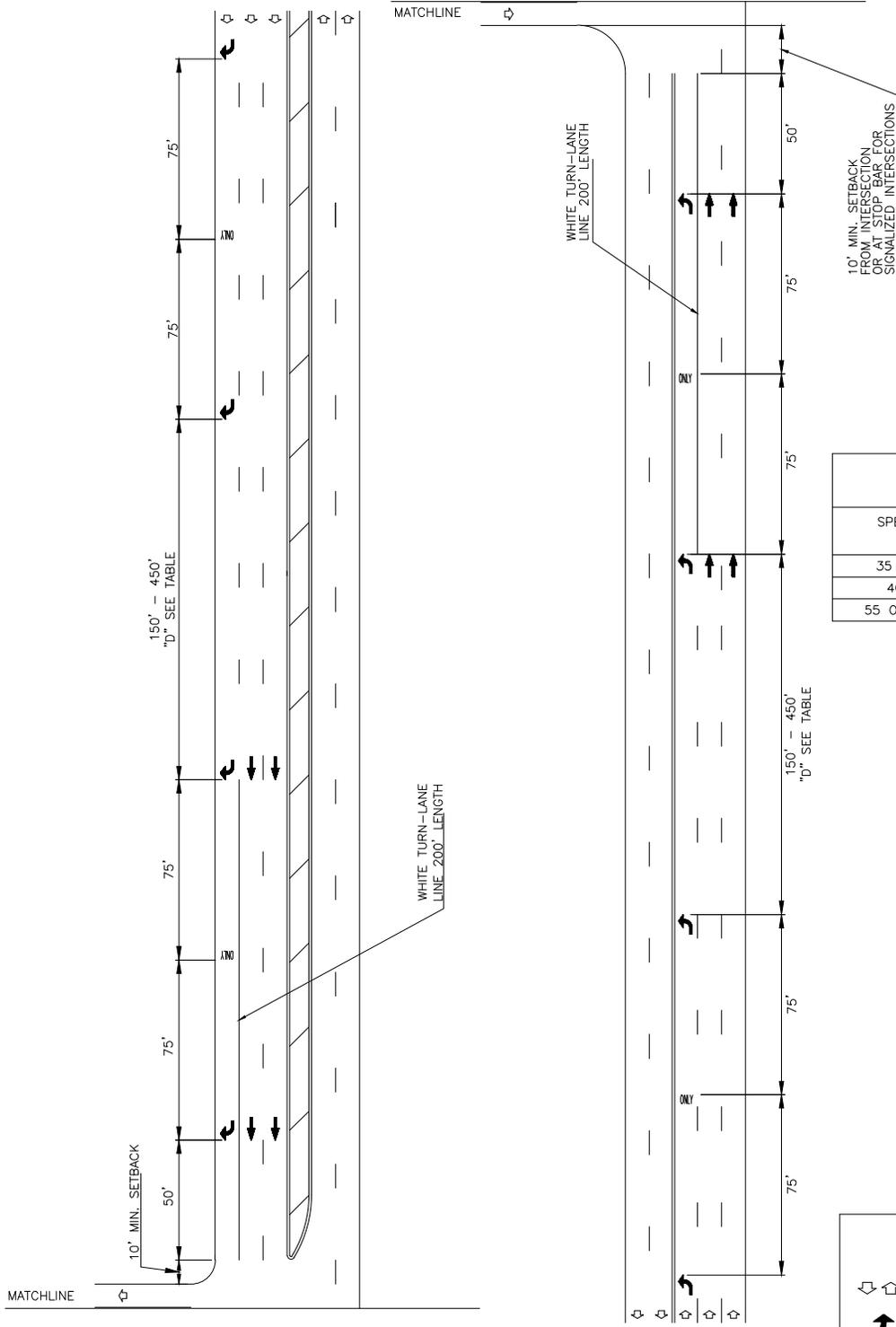
STANDARD DETAIL

PAVEMENT MARKINGS SIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS

WILMINGTON
CITY OF WILMINGTON
NORTH CAROLINA

CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 11-06



RECOMMENDED SPACING "D" BETWEEN SETS OF SYMBOLS	
SPEED LIMIT (MPH)	SPACING
35 OR LESS	150'
40 - 50	200'
55 OR GREATER	450'

LEGEND

DIRECTION OF TRAFFIC FLOW

 PAVEMENT MARKING SYMBOLS

DATE: 2003
DRAWN BY RLB
CHECKED BY DRB/JRF
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

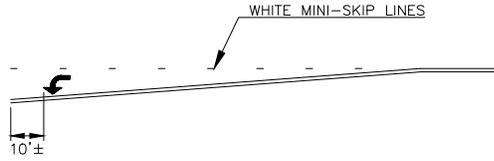
STANDARD DETAIL

PAVEMENT MARKINGS THROUGH-LANE DROP AT INTERSECTION

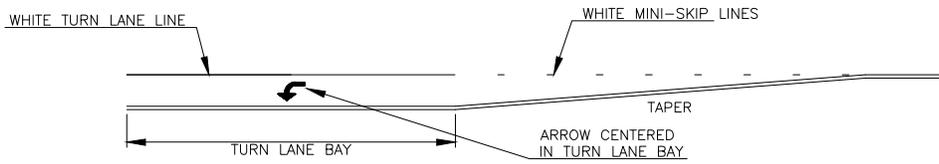
CITY OF WILMINGTON
 NORTH CAROLINA
 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 11-07

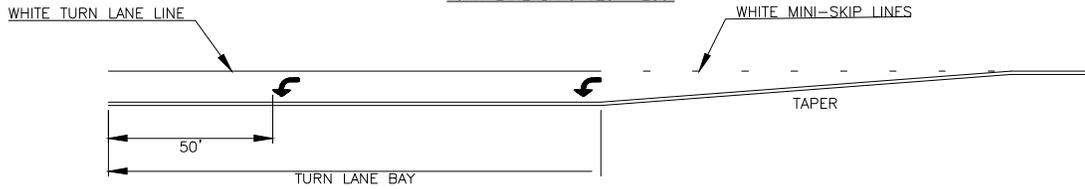
DIRECT TAPER TURN LANE



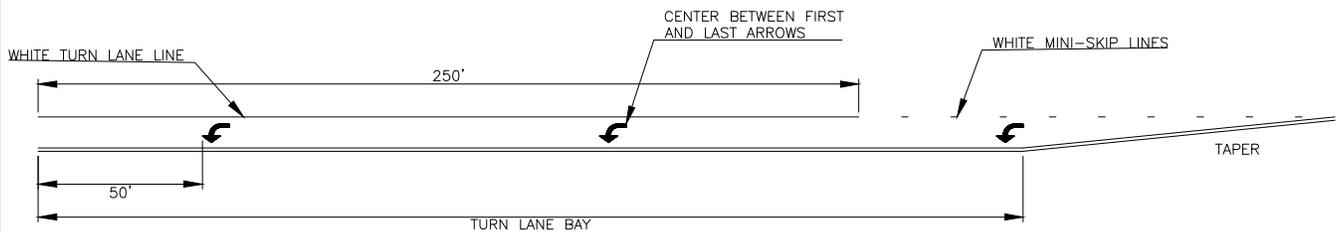
TURN LANE BAYS < 125'



TURN LANE BAYS 125' - 250'



TURN LANE BAYS > 250'



STANDARD DETAIL

PAVEMENT MARKINGS
TURN LANES

DATE: 2001

DRAWN BY RLB

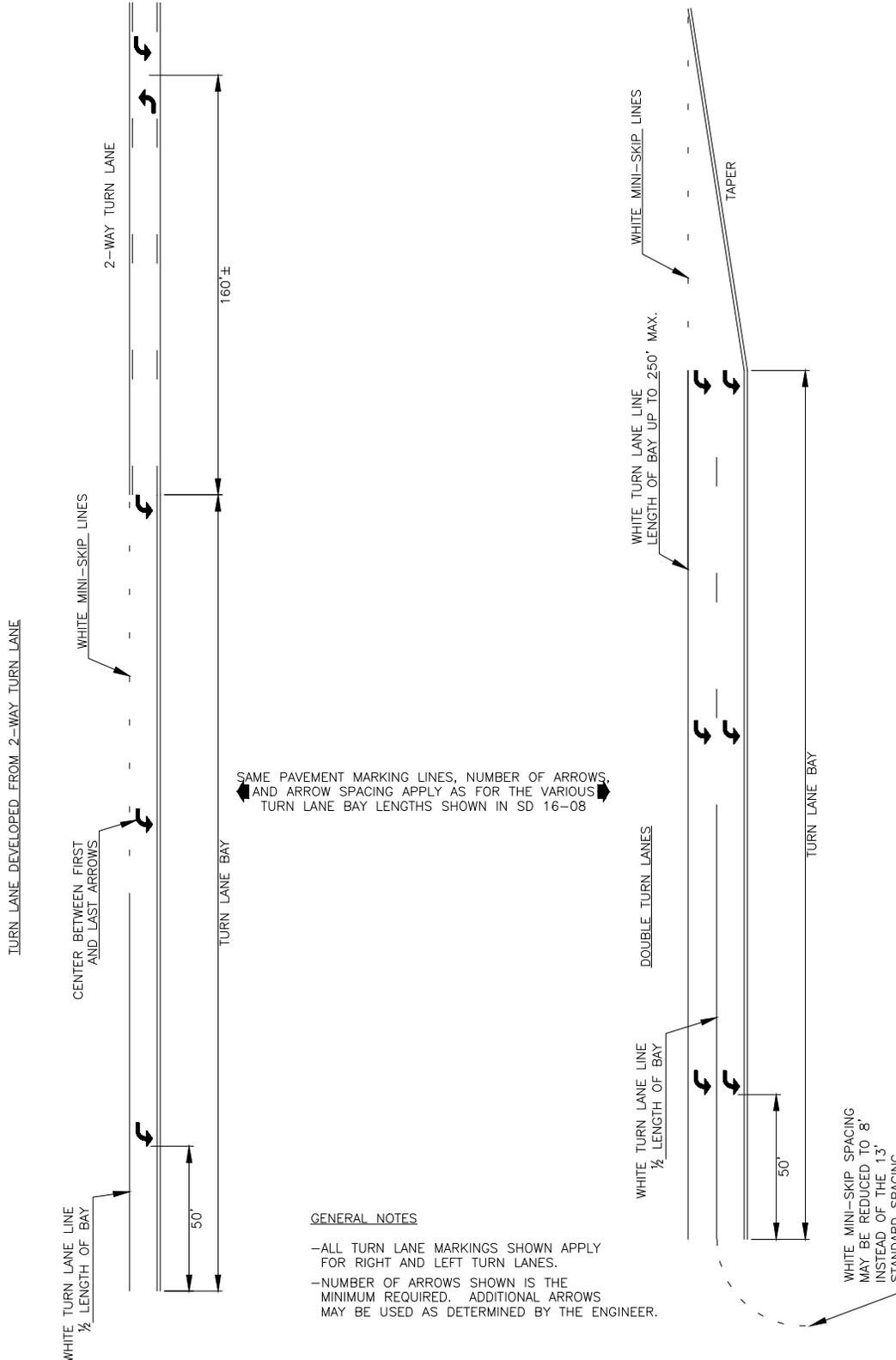
CHECKED BY DRB/JRF

SCALE NOT TO SCALE



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 11-08



SAME PAVEMENT MARKING LINES, NUMBER OF ARROWS, AND ARROW SPACING APPLY AS FOR THE VARIOUS TURN LANE BAY LENGTHS SHOWN IN SD 16-08

GENERAL NOTES

- ALL TURN LANE MARKINGS SHOWN APPLY FOR RIGHT AND LEFT TURN LANES.
- NUMBER OF ARROWS SHOWN IS THE MINIMUM REQUIRED. ADDITIONAL ARROWS MAY BE USED AS DETERMINED BY THE ENGINEER.

DATE:	2003
DRAWN BY	RLB
CHECKED BY	DRB/JRF
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL

PAVEMENT MARKINGS

TURN LANES



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 11-09

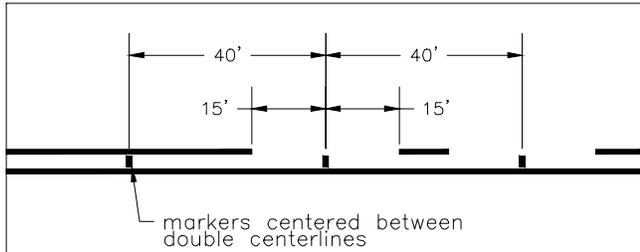
CAI 8@8AG@4E>8E'FC46A: '6; 4EG

TYPE OF PAVEMENT MARKING	TYPICAL SPACING in FT (speed limit <= 45mph)
Centerlines--along through lanes	40
Centerlines--along horizontal curves	per Traffic Engineering
Skip Lines--along through lanes	40
Turn Lanes--Skip Lines	40
Turn Lanes--Solid Lane Lines	20
Turn Lanes--Centerlines	40
Painted Islands--White	20
Painted Islands--Yellow	40
Raised Median Islands	40
Other Markings	per Traffic Engineering

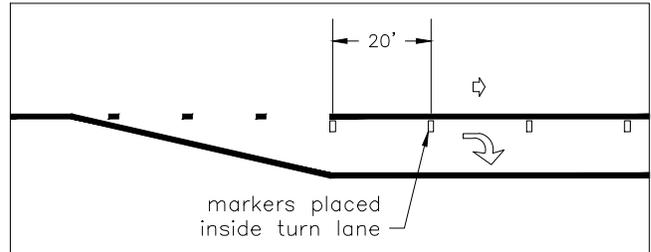
GENERAL NOTES

- CRYSTAL/RED MARKERS SHALL BE USED ALONG WHITE PAVEMENT MARKINGS UNLESS OTHERWISE DIRECTED BY TRAFFIC ENGINEERING. RED SIDE OF MARKER TO FACE "WRONG-WAY" TRAFFIC.
- PAVEMENT MARKERS SHOULD NOT BE PLACED CLOSER THAN 2 INCHES TO A PAVEMENT CONSTRUCTION JOINT, EXCEPT WHEN PLACED BETWEEN DOUBLE YELLOW CENTERLINES.
- PAVEMENT MARKERS SHALL NOT BE PLACED DIRECTLY ON PAVEMENT MARKINGS.
- PAVEMENT MARKERS USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH DOUBLE YELLOW CENTERLINES SHALL BE PLACED MID-WAY BETWEEN THE LINES, WITH A GAP BETWEEN MARKER AND MARKINGS.

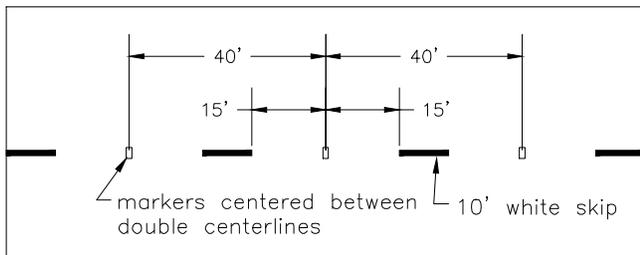
PLACEMENT ALONG YELLOW CENTERLINES



PLACEMENT ALONG TURN LANE LINES



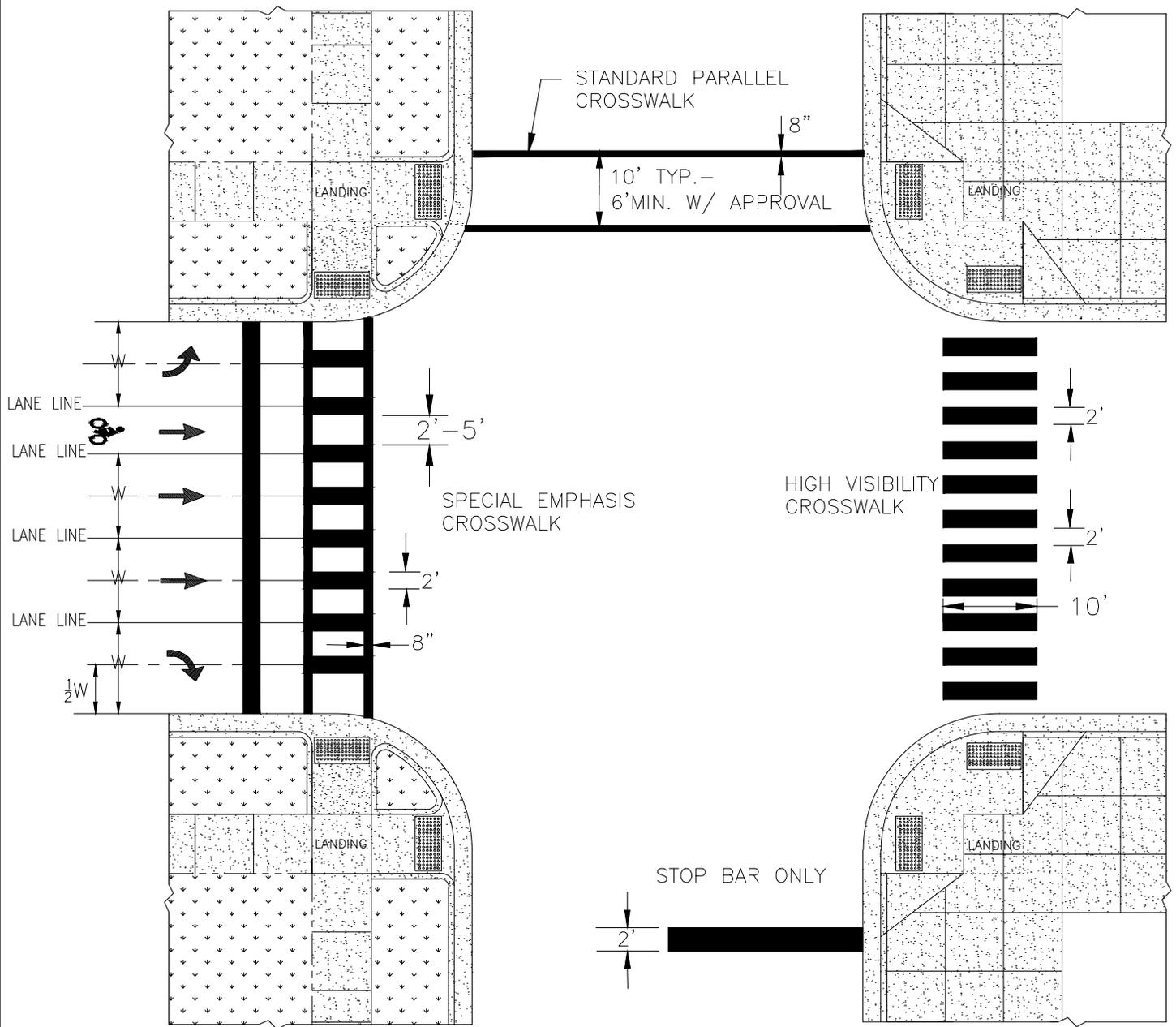
PLACEMENT ALONG WHITE SKIP LINES



LEGEND	
	DIRECTION OF TRAFFIC FLOW
	AMBER / AMBER MARKER
	CRYSTAL / RED MARKER

STANDARD DETAIL		 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807
DATE: 2003	PAVEMENT MARKINGS RAISED PAVEMENT MARKERS	
DRAWN BY RLB		
CHECKED BY DRB/JRF		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE		

SD 11-10



- 1-TYPICAL CROSSWALK DIMENSIONS ARE PROVIDED FOR REFERENCE. ALL APPLICATIONS SHALL CONSIDER PEDESTRIAN, BICYCLE AND TRAFFIC CONDITIONS AND SUBJECT TO ADA GUIDELINES. SPECIFIC LAYOUTS SHALL BE DIRECTED BY THE ENGINEER.
- 2-GENERALLY, STANDARD PARALLEL CROSSWALKS TO BE USED AT SIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS OR WHERE CROSSWALK TRAFFIC OR CONFLICT POINTS ARE AVERAGE. SPECIAL EMPHASIS CROSSWALKS AND HIGH VISIBILITY CROSSWALKS ARE NEEDED AT BUSY SIGNALIZED INTERSECTIONS AND WHERE BICYCLE AND PEDESTRIAN TRAFFIC REQUIRES INCREASED VISIBILITY.

STANDARD DETAIL

**CROSSWALK
PAVEMENT MARKINGS**

DATE: FEBRUARY, 2012

DRAWN BY JSR

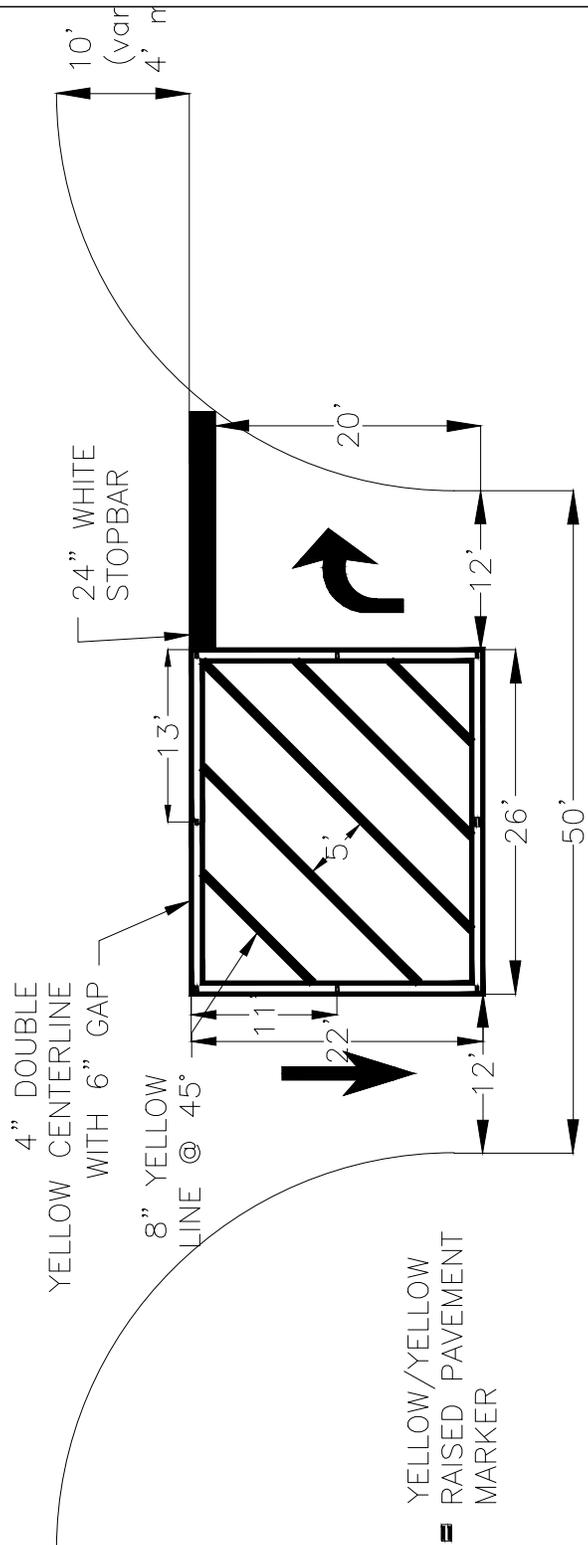
CHECKED BY BDR, P.E.

SCALE NOT TO SCALE



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 11-11



STANDARD DETAIL

THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKINGS - 50' DRIVEWAY (NO LEFT TURN)



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

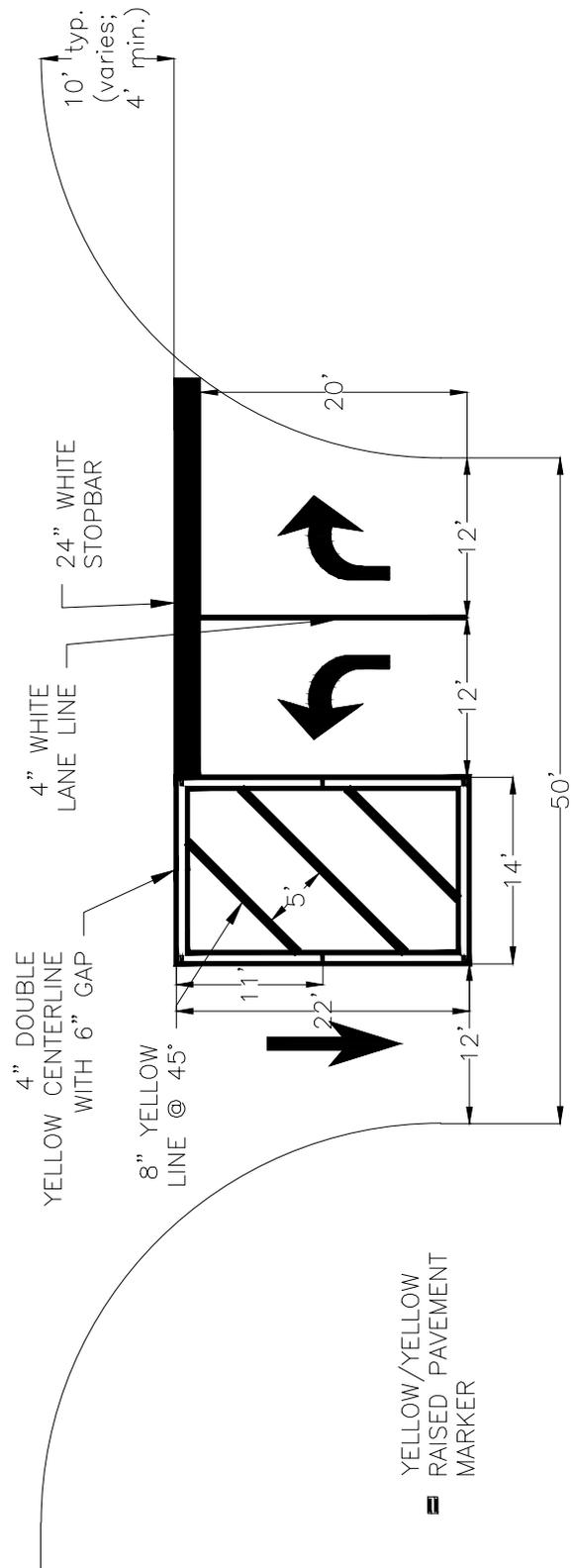
SD 11-12

DATE: 2003

DRAWN BY RLB

CHECKED BY JRF

SCALE NOT TO SCALE



STANDARD DETAIL

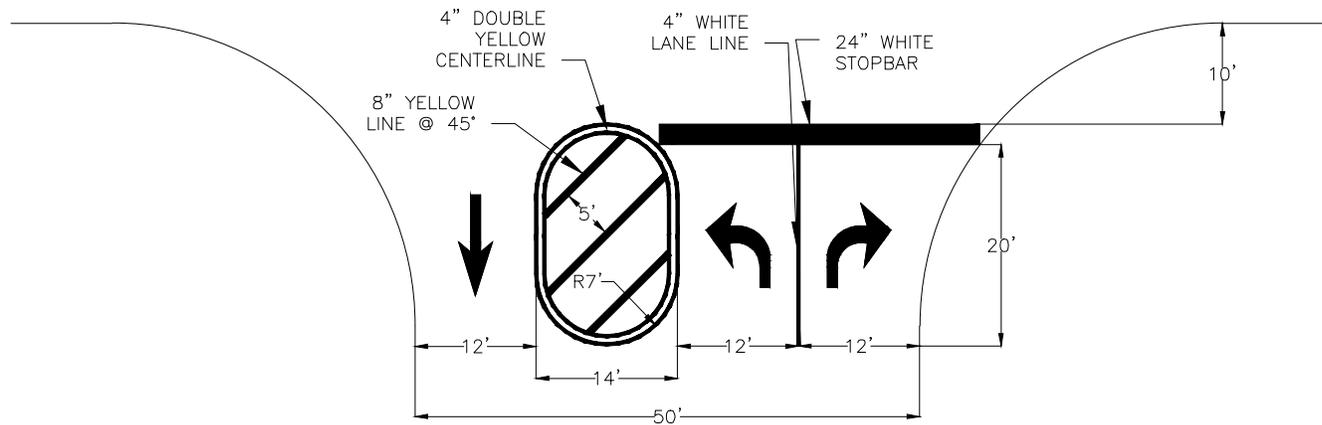
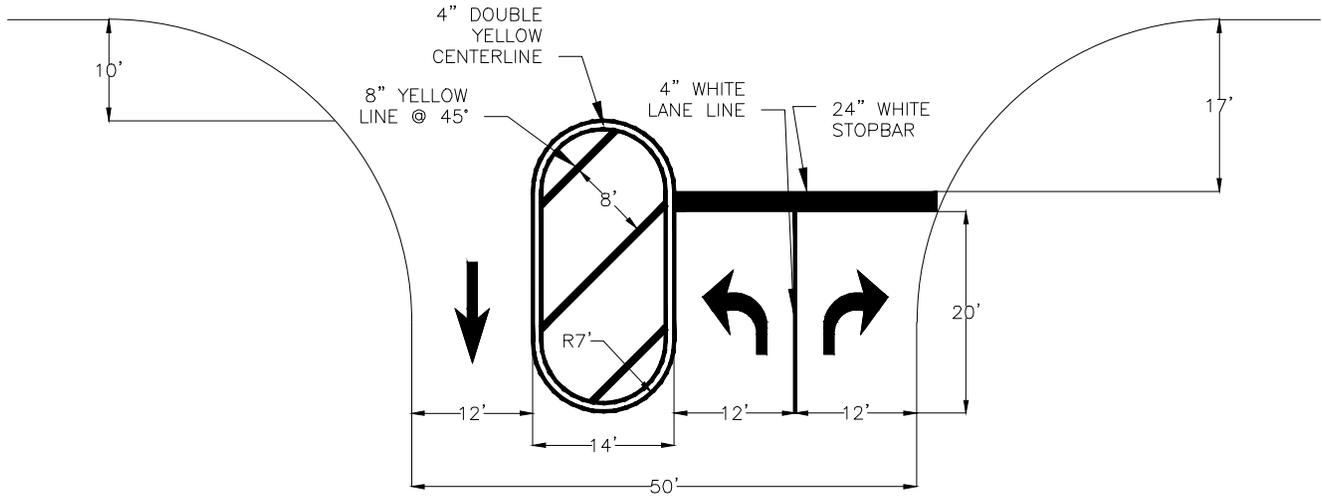
THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKINGS-50' DRIVEWAY



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 11-13
 SHEET 1 OF 2

DATE:	2003
DRAWN BY	RLB
CHECKED BY	JRF
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE



STANDARD DETAIL

THERMOPLASTIC PAVEMENT MARKINGS-50' DRIVEWAY



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

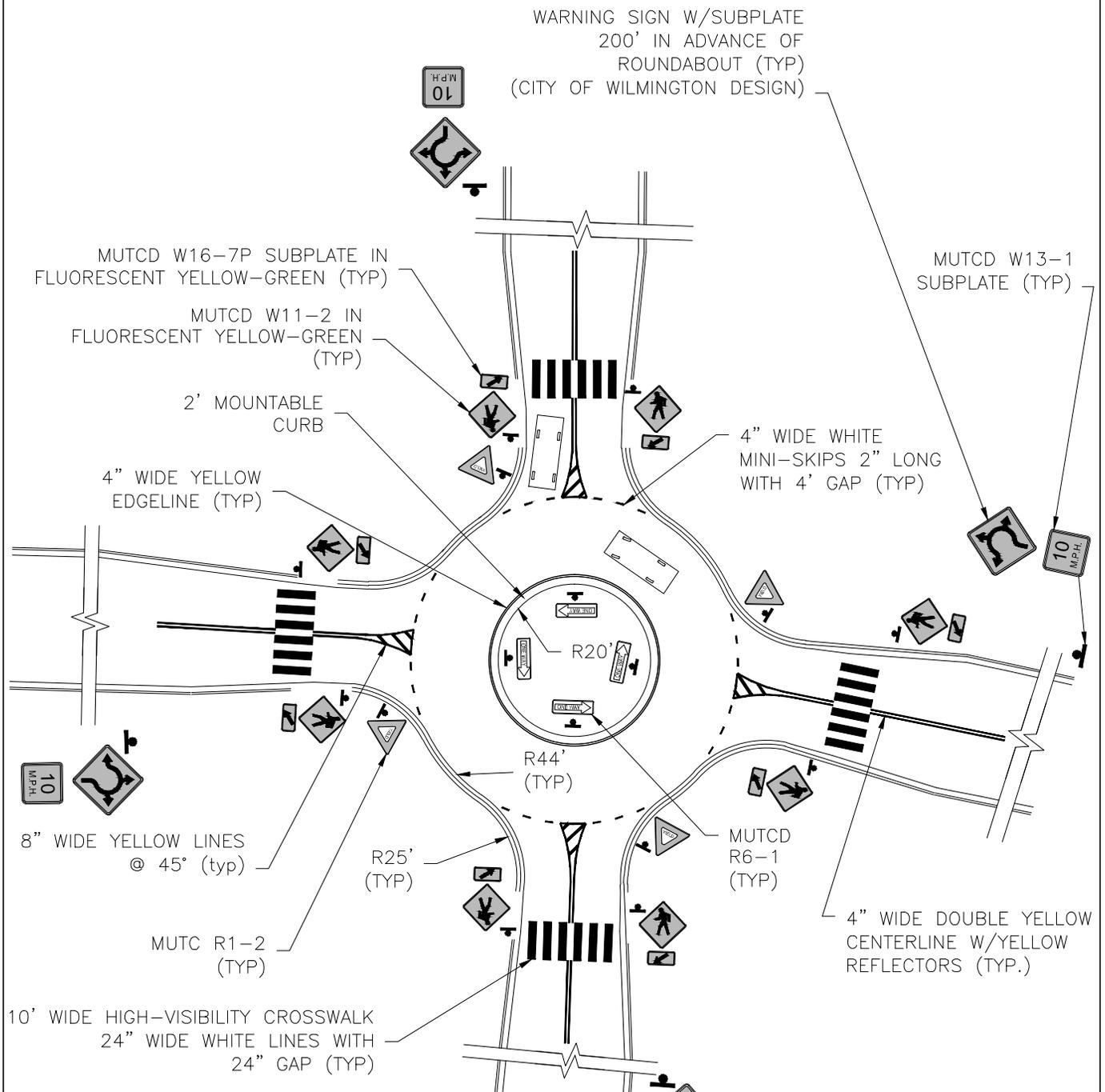
SD 11-13
 SHEET 2 OF 2

DATE: 2003

DRAWN BY RLB

CHECKED BY JRF

SCALE NOT TO SCALE



WARNING SIGN W/SUBPLATE
200' IN ADVANCE OF
ROUNDBOUT (TYP)
(CITY OF WILMINGTON DESIGN)

MUTCD W16-7P SUBPLATE IN
FLUORESCENT YELLOW-GREEN (TYP)

MUTCD W11-2 IN
FLUORESCENT YELLOW-GREEN
(TYP)

2' MOUNTABLE
CURB

4" WIDE YELLOW
EDGELINE (TYP)

4" WIDE WHITE
MINI-SKIPS 2" LONG
WITH 4' GAP (TYP)

MUTCD W13-1
SUBPLATE (TYP)

8" WIDE YELLOW LINES
@ 45° (typ)

R44'
(TYP)

MUTCD
R6-1
(TYP)

MUTC R1-2
(TYP)

R25'
(TYP)

4" WIDE DOUBLE YELLOW
CENTERLINE W/YELLOW
REFLECTORS (TYP.)

10' WIDE HIGH-VISIBILITY CROSSWALK
24" WIDE WHITE LINES WITH
24" GAP (TYP)

NOTE: ALL SIGNS MOUNTED
AT 7' EXCEPT FOR ONE WAY
SIGNS, WHICH ARE TO BE
MOUNTED AT 5'

STANDARD DETAIL

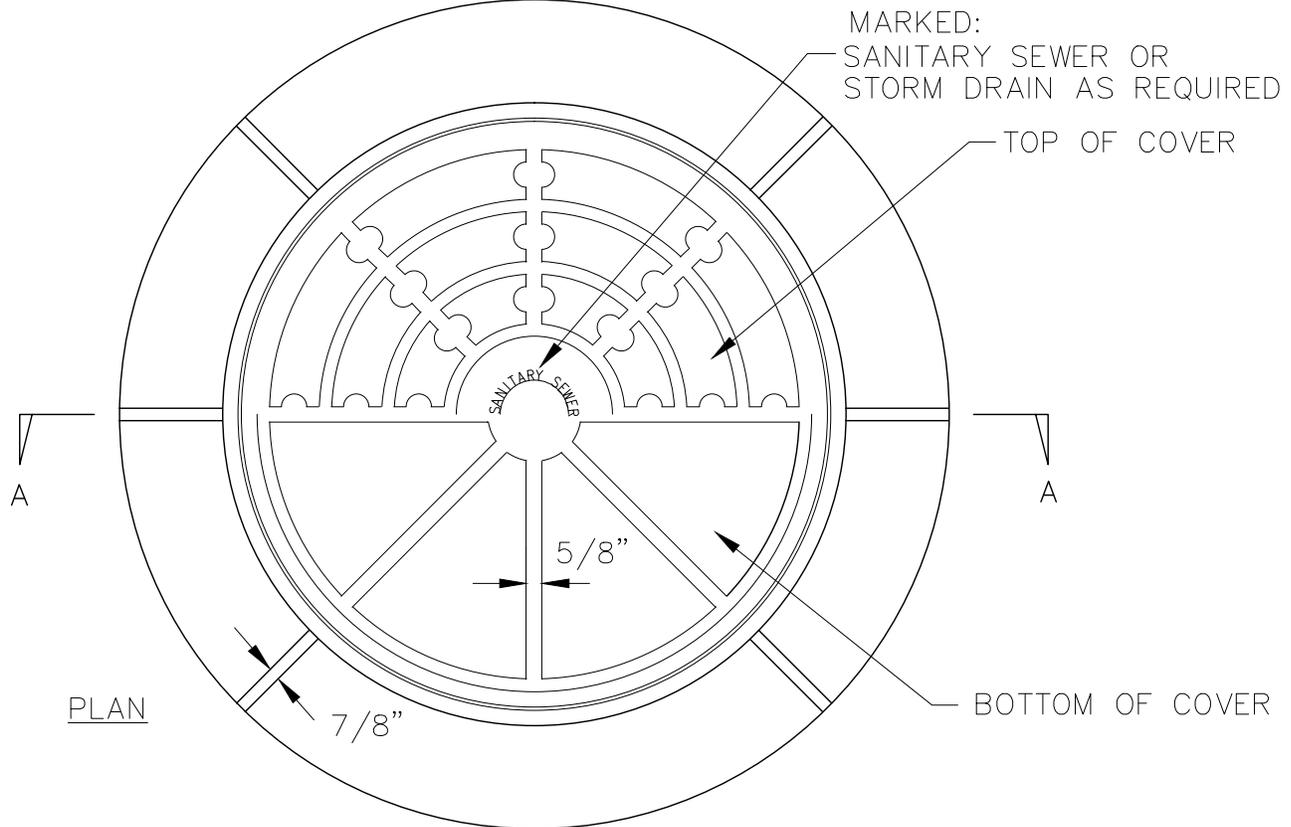
PAVEMENT MARKINGS
ROUNDBOUT



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

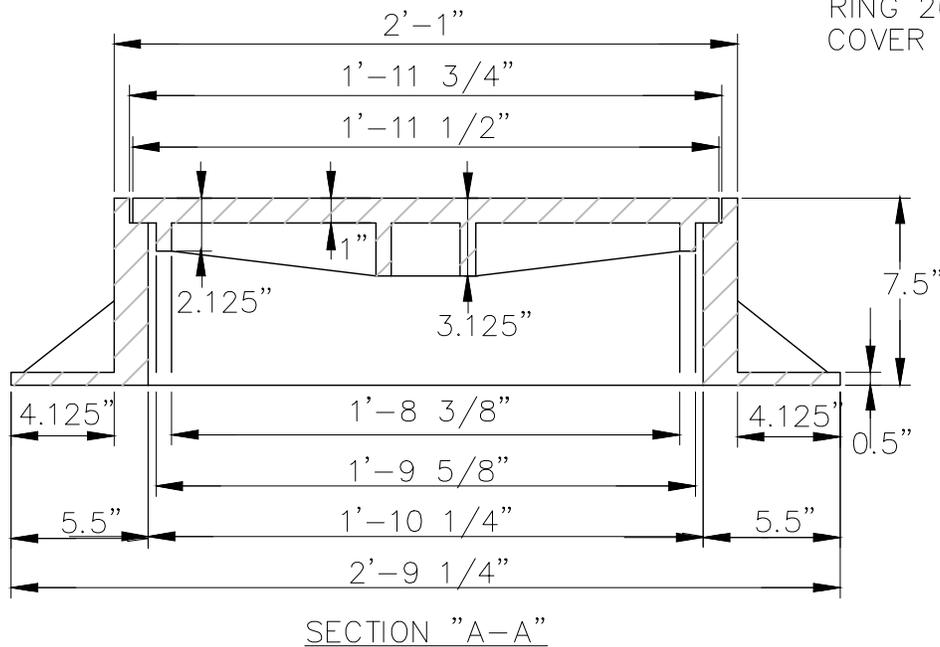
DATE:	2003
DRAWN BY	RLB
CHECKED BY	JRF
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

SD 11-14

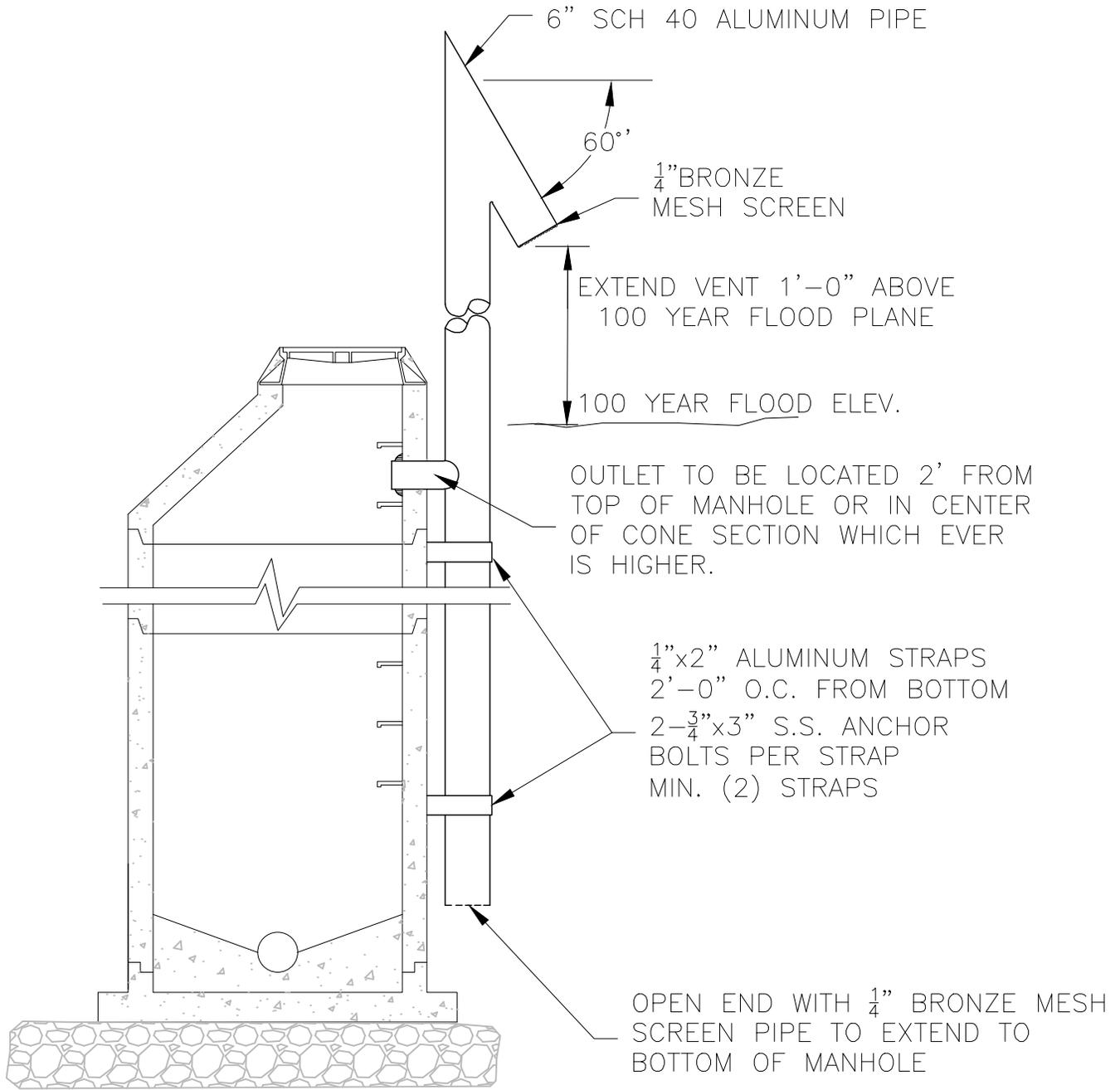


NOTE:
RING & COVER CONTACT SURFACES SHALL
BE MACHINED TO INSURE EVEN BEARING
OF COVER AND RING

MINIMUM WEIGHTS:
RING 261 LBS.
COVER 120 LBS.



STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: 2001	<p>STANDARD MAN-HOLE RING AND COVER</p>	
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE		SD 14-02



STANDARD DETAIL

STANDARD MAN-HOLE
VENTED SECTION



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

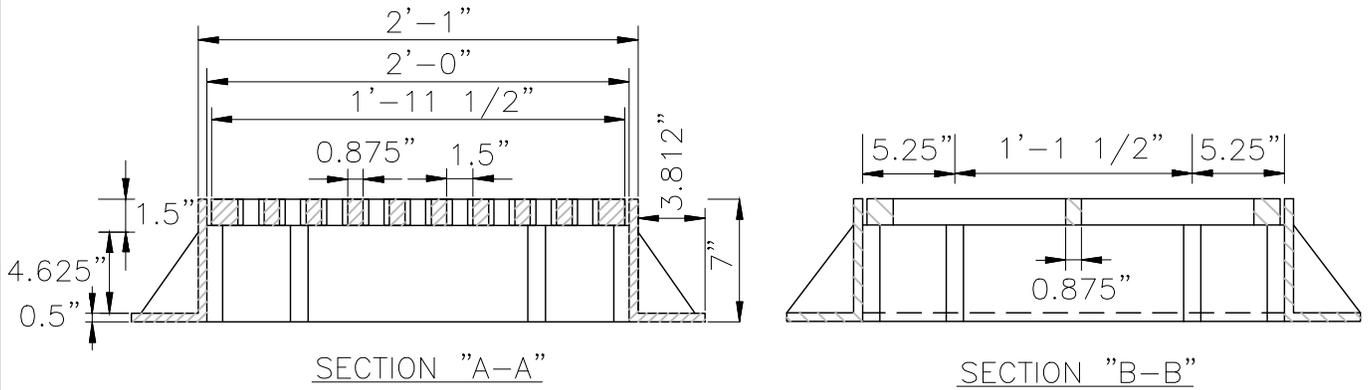
SD 14-03

DATE: 2001

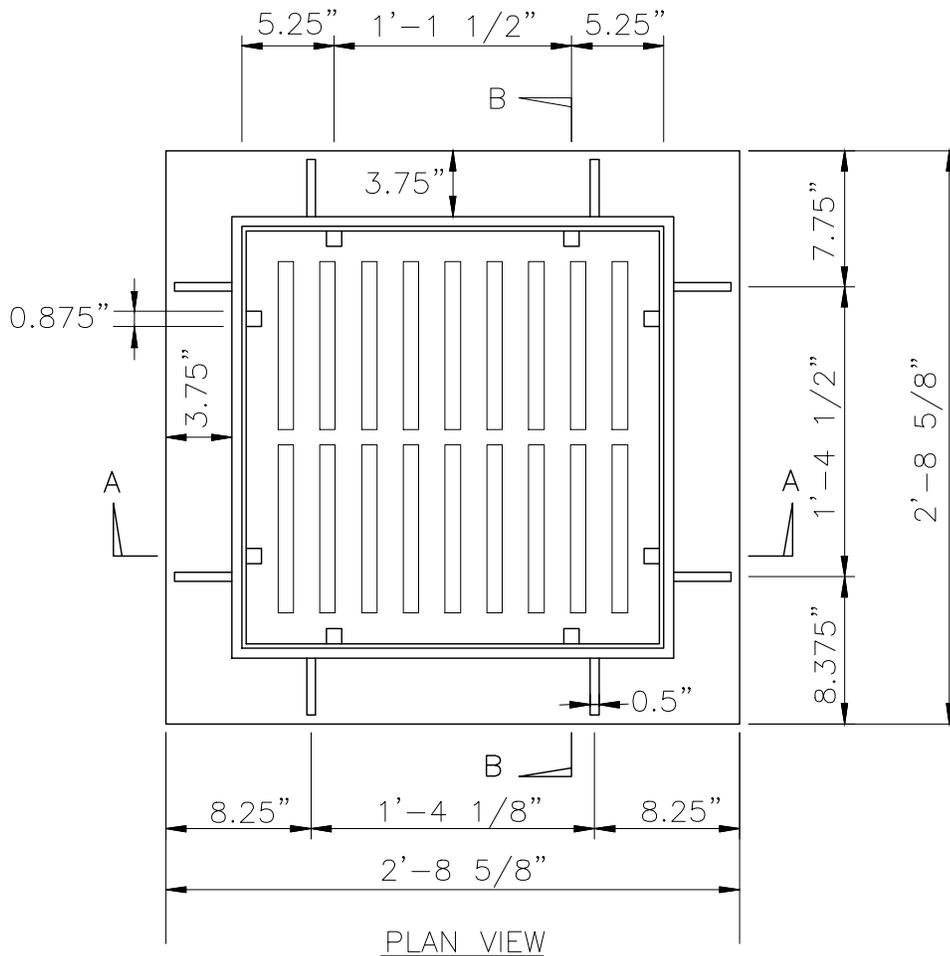
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR

CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.

SCALE NOT TO SCALE



MINIMUM AVERAGE WEIGHT
 FRAME 195 LBS.
 GRATE 145 LBS.



DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

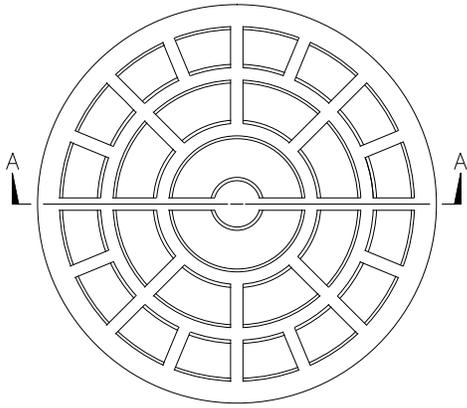
STANDARD DETAIL

GRILL BASIN CASTINGS

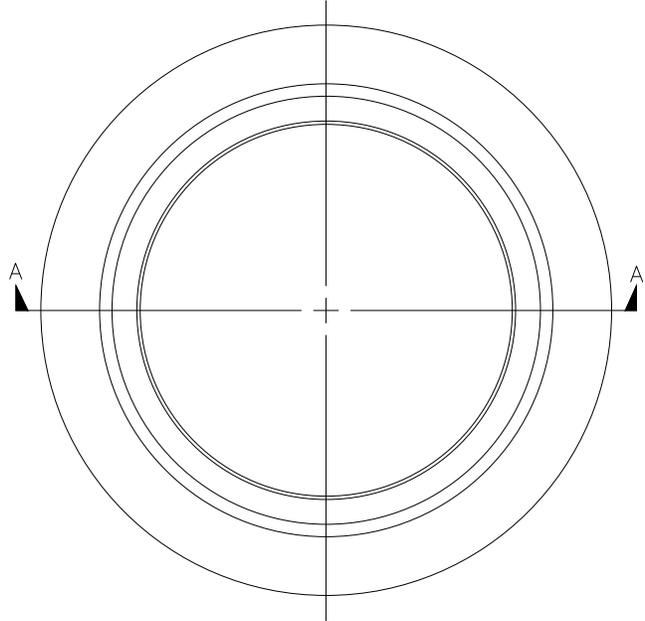
WILMINGTON
 CITY OF
 NORTH CAROLINA

CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 14-04



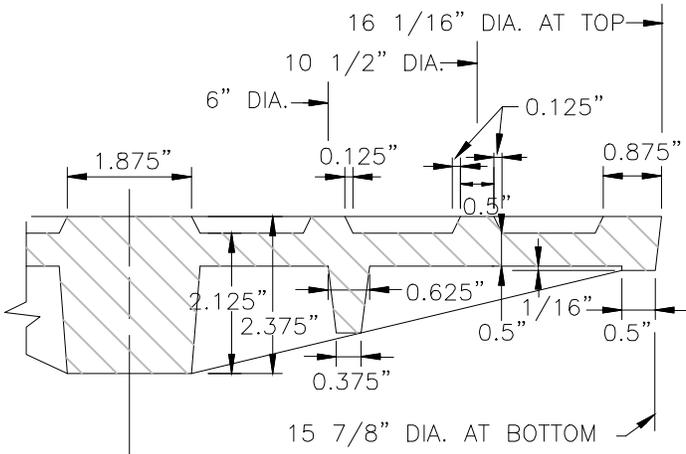
COVER PLAN VIEW
(TOP)



RING PLAN VIEW

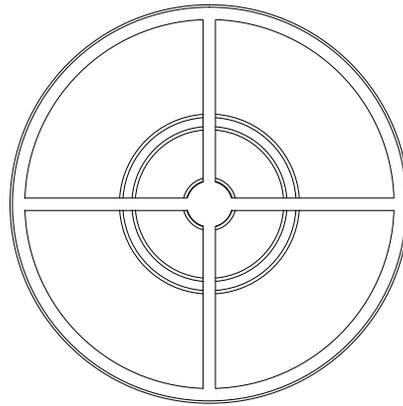


SECTION 'B-B'

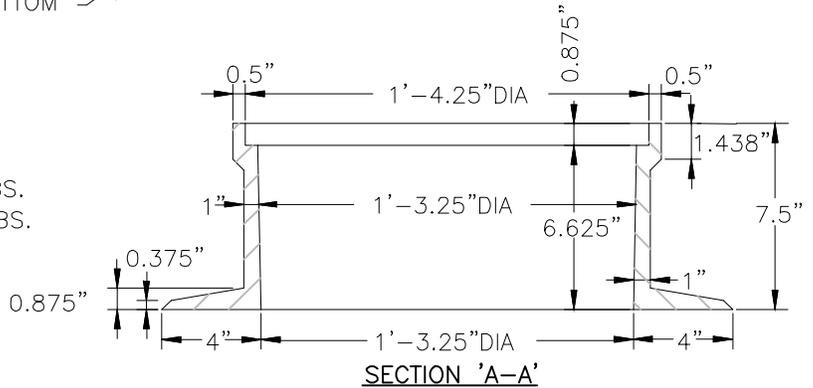


PART OF SECTION
ENLARGED

MINIMUM AVERAGE WEIGHT: RING 120 LBS.
COVER 40 LBS.



COVER PLAN VIEW
(BOTTOM)



SECTION 'A-A'

STANDARD DETAIL

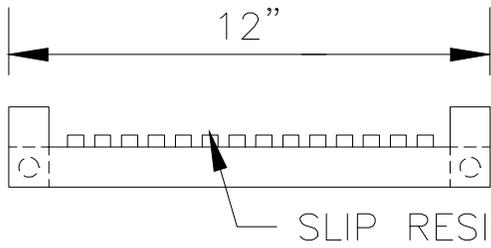
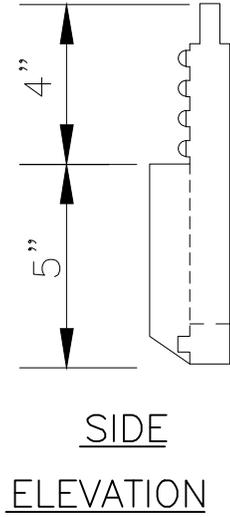
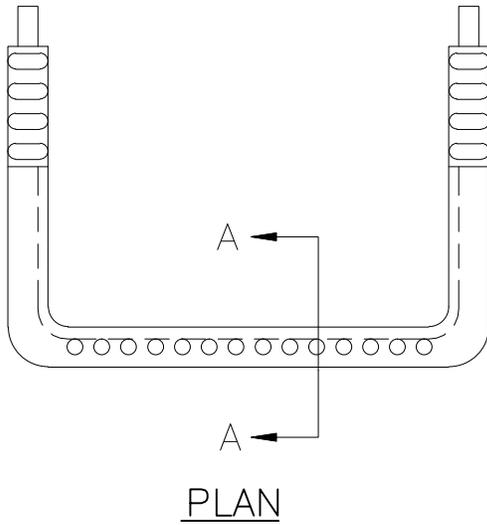
MONUMENT
CASTING DETAIL



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

DATE: 2001
 DRAWN BY JSR/CMR
 CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.
 SCALE NOT TO SCALE

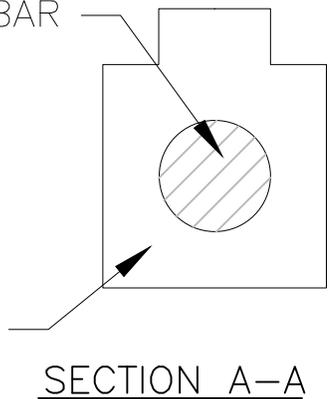
SD 14-05



#3 OR #4 REBAR

SLIP RESISTANT CLEATS

CORROSION RESISTANT MATERIAL
(RUBBER, PLASTIC)



ELEVATION

SECTION A-A

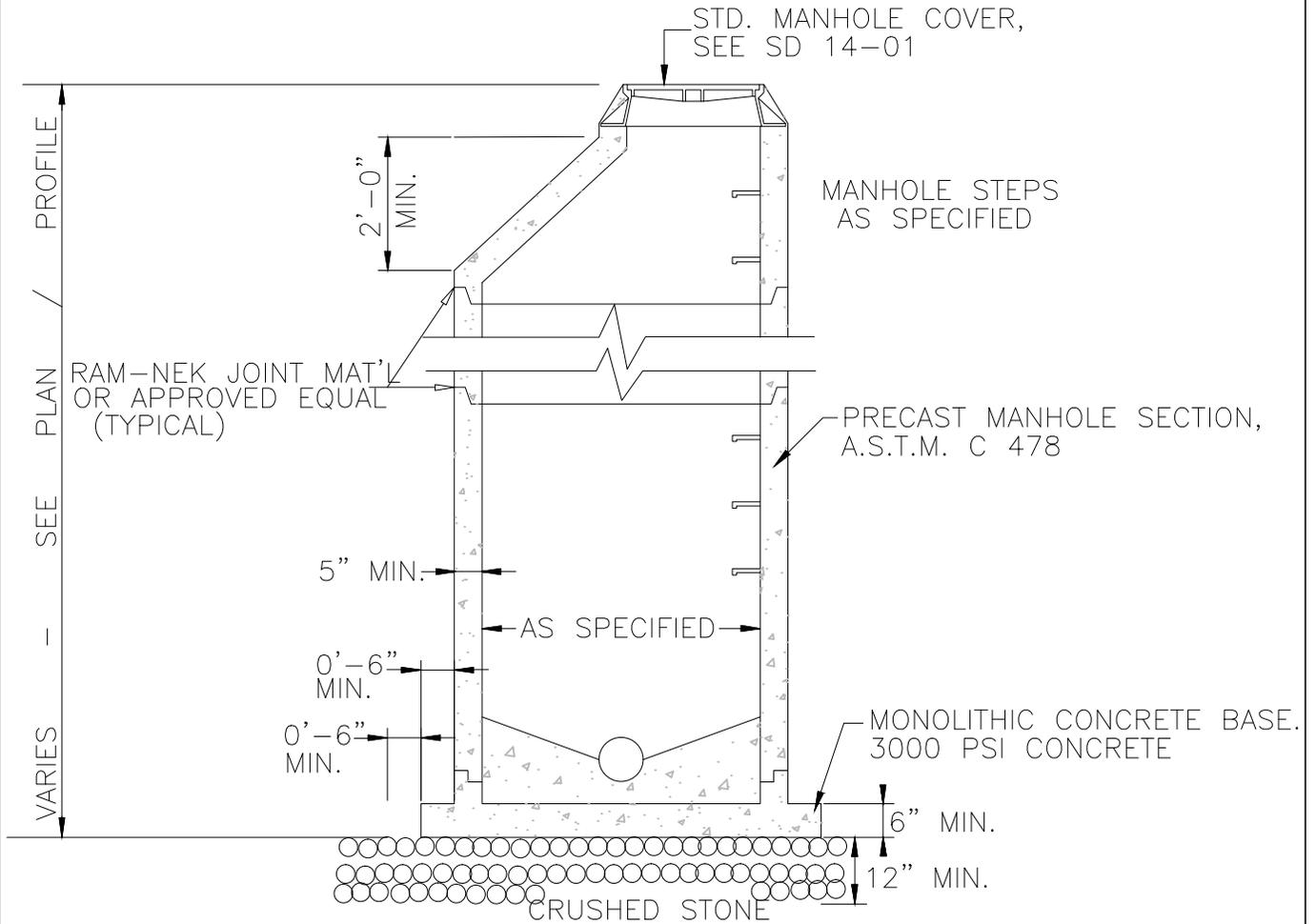
DATE: 2001
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL

**SLIP RESISTANT
MANHOLE STEP**

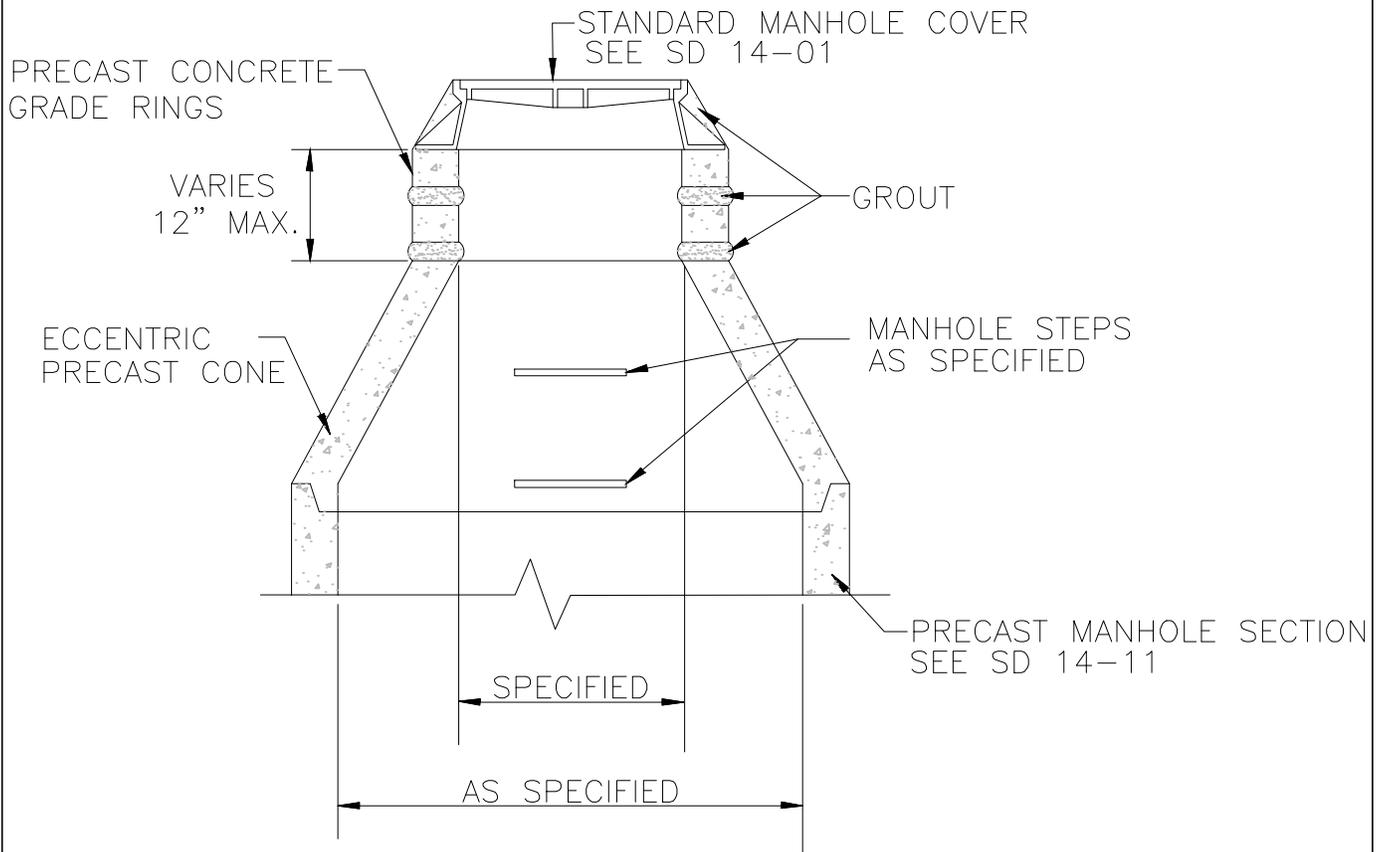
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 14-10



NOTE:
 EXTENDED BASE MAY NOT BE REQUIRED WHERE MANHOLES
 ARE GREATER THAN 4 FEET INSIDE DIAMETER

STANDARD DETAIL		 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807
PRECAST MANHOLE		
DATE: 2001		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;">SD 14-11</div>
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE		



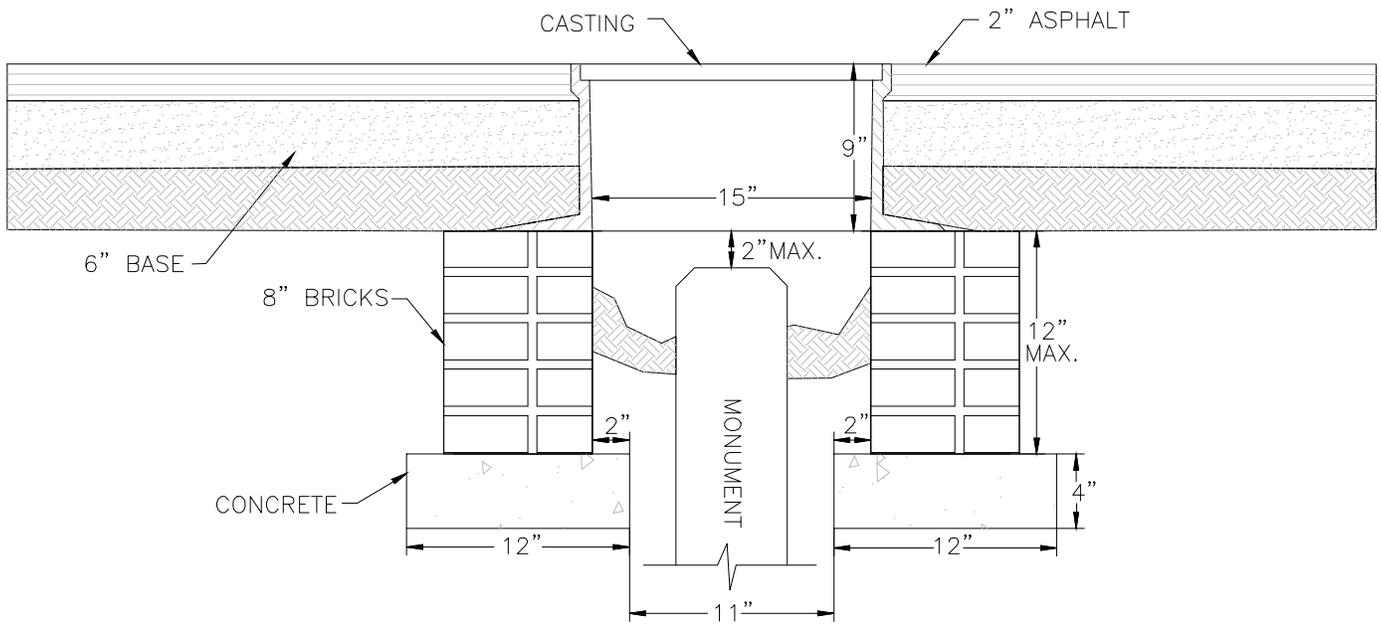
DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL

**PRECAST MANHOLE
RING EXTENSION**


 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 14-12



STANDARD DETAIL

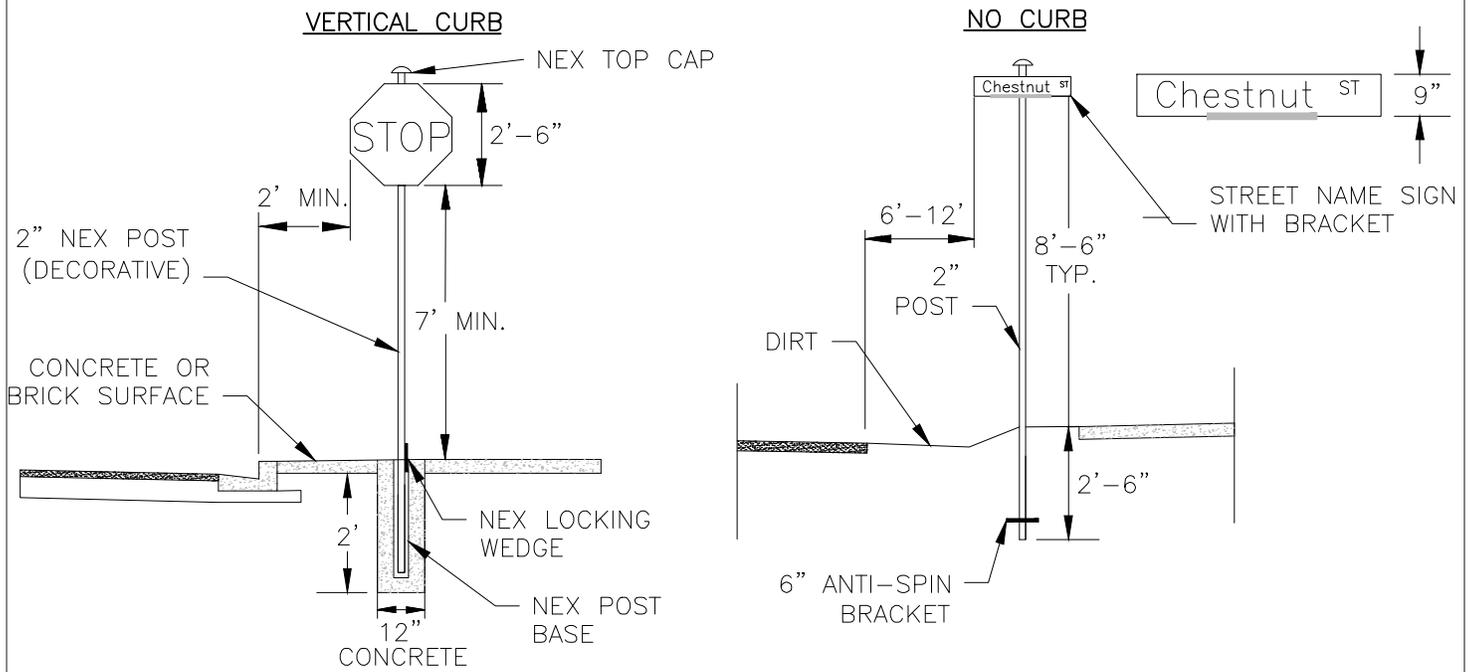
MONUMENT CASTING
AND BASE



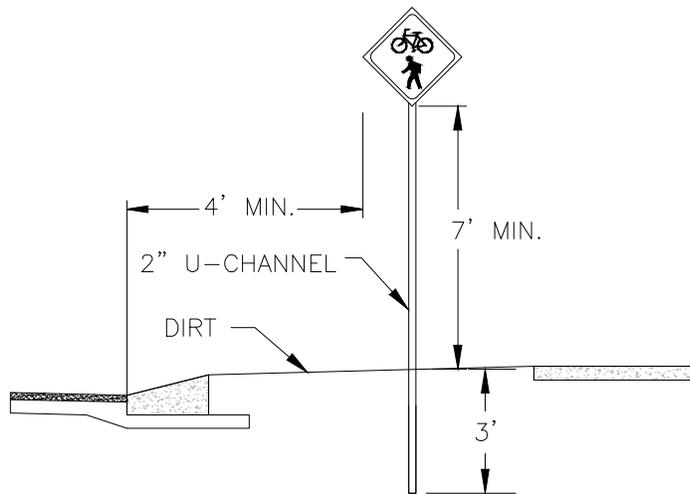
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

DATE: SEPTEMBER, 2012
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.
SCALE NOT TO SCALE

SD 15-01



SLOPE CURB



*DETAILS SHOW VARIOUS TYPES AND LOCATION, BUT NOT ALL COMBINATIONS.

STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE:	NOVEMBER, 2011	
DRAWN BY	JSR	
CHECKED BY	BDR, P.E.	
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE	
STREET SIGNS AND LOCATION		SHEET 1 of 2
		SD 15-03

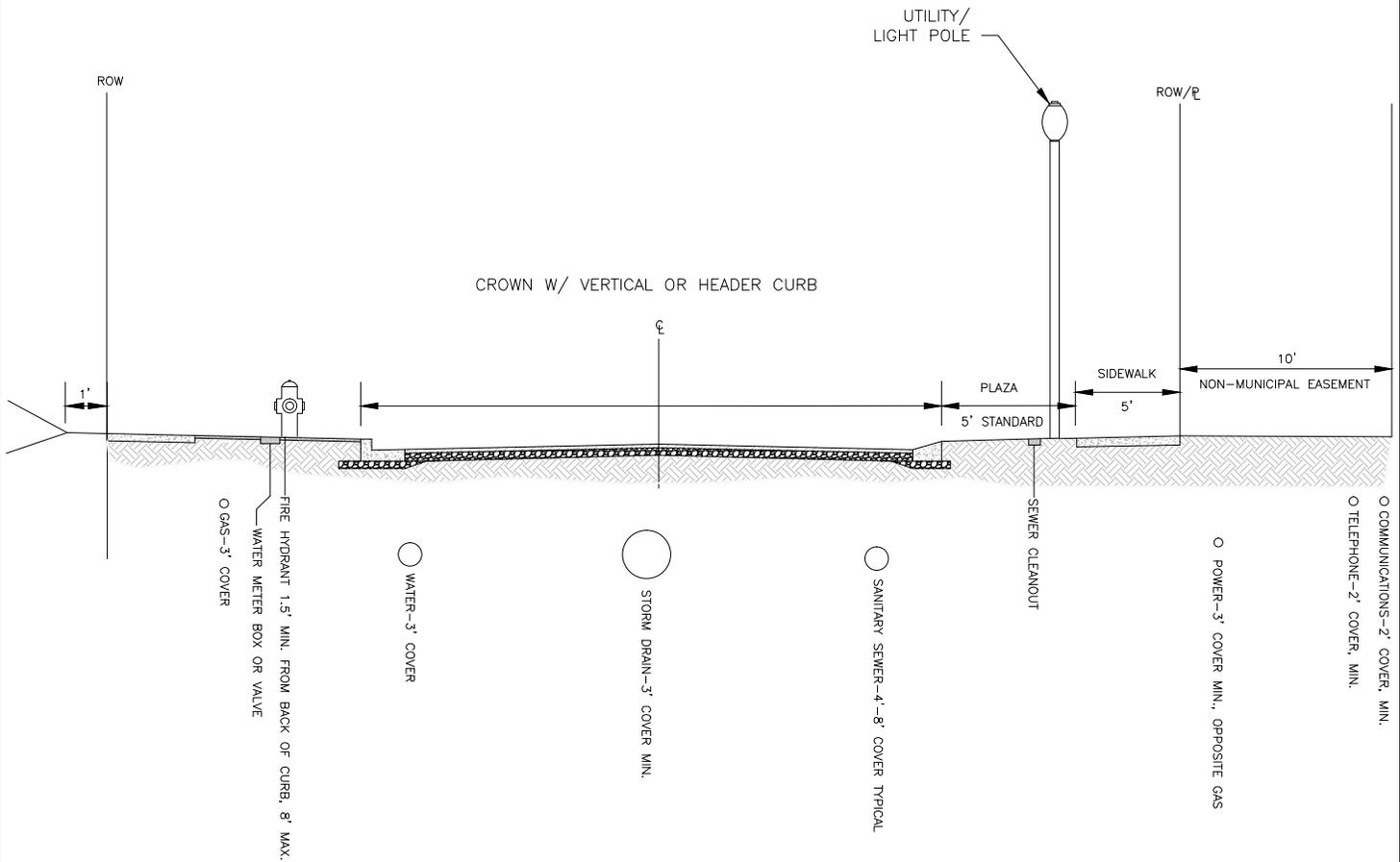
SIGNS

1. All signs shall meet the requirements of MUTCD and City Traffic Engineering in effect at the time of construction.
2. All Traffic Control Signs including multi-use paths shall be fabricated with 0.080 inch aluminum blanks using high intensity prismatic reflective sheeting Type IV or better. STOP signs shall be a minimum of 30"x30".
3. SPECIAL DESIGNATION signs by location and type shall adhere to City of Wilmington signage plan (ie. downtown, historic, cross-city trail, parks, riverfront, scenic by-way, parking, etc.) and all associated policies.
4. POST MOUNTED STREET NAME SIGNS shall be fabricated with 9" extruded aluminum street name sign blanks using a standard cut-out. Minimum sign length is 18" long and increasing in 6" increments to 54" maximum as dictated by the number of letters in the name. The color scheme shall be white letters on a green background without a border. Generally, in the downtown and historic areas or as designated in the City of Wilmington signage plan the background shall be blue and contain a topper.
5. Decorative sign posts shall consist of the NEX sign support system, 2" octagonal tube, 14 gauge, powder coated glossy black and include cap, post, base and wedge.
6. All other sign posts shall be u-channel posts made of galvanized steel with 8' posts 2lbs/ft or 12' posts 3lbs/ft. Galvanized NEX post may be substituted with approval from the City Signs and Markings Engineer.
7. OVERHEAD STREET NAME SIGNS shall be fabricated with 0.080 inch aluminum flat sign blanks 18" in height using a standard cut-out. Sign length will be dictated by the number of letters in the name. For mast-arm type traffic signal supports and other overhead support systems refer to the design plans for maximum sign length.
8. All sign lettering, colors and fonts shall adhere to the MUTCD in effect at the time of construction. Florescent Yellow-Green shall be used on signs, in place of Yellow, when listed as an optional color in the MUTCD. Generally, the font will be FHWA series fonts (Highway Gothic.) Other font types require prior City Signs and Markings Engineer approval .

LOCATION

9. Sign locations depend on the edge of road condition. Generally, signs shall be a minimum 2' from face of a vertical curb, 4' from front of slope face curb, and 6' from edge of pavement without curb. Signs shall not be located more than 12' from any of these locations.
10. Sign posts installed in dirt shall be buried a minimum of 36". Octagonal posts shall utilize an anti-spin device, 6" in length minimum. Sign posts installed in concrete or brick shall utilize a base cast in concrete 24" x 12" diameter.
11. Street name signs shall be installed 8'-6" from the ground to the bottom of the sign. Street name signs co-located with STOP signs shall be installed above the STOP sign. A 6" space shall be maintained between the STOP sign and a Street name sign that is parallel to the STOP sign face. All other signs should be mounted per MUTCD guidelines for Urban Areas.

	STANDARD DETAIL	 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: NOVEMBER, 2011	<h1>STREET SIGNS AND LOCATION</h1>	
DRAWN BY JSR		
CHECKED BY BDR, P.E.		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE		
	SHEET 2 of 2	SD 15-03



STANDARD DETAIL

TYPICAL
UTILITY LOCATION

DATE: SEPTEMBER, 2012

DRAWN BY JSR

CHECKED BY B.D.R., P.E.

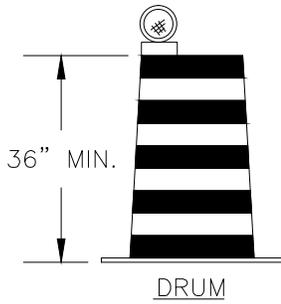
SCALE NOT TO SCALE



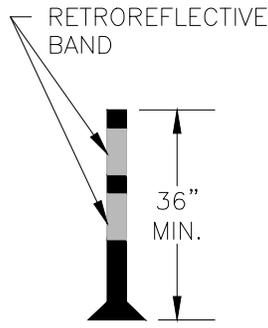
CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 15-05

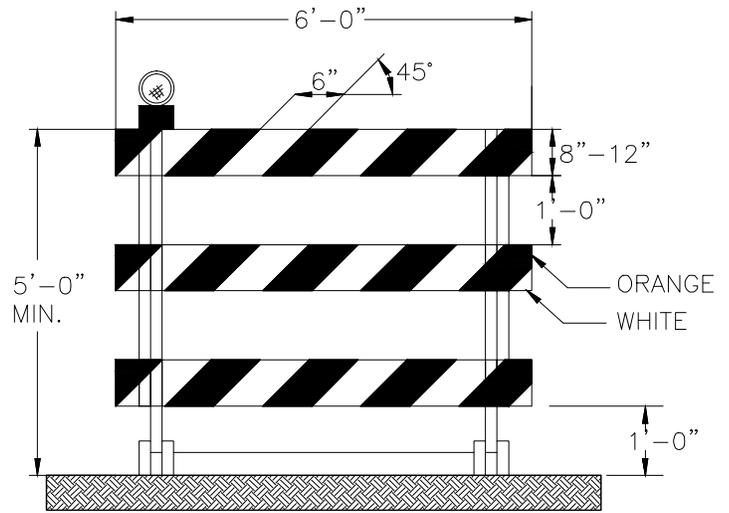
EXAMPLES ONLY:



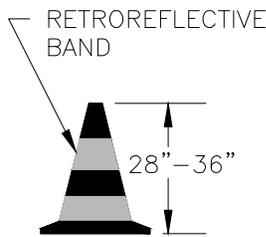
DRUM



TUBULAR MARKER



TYPE III BARRICADE



NIGHT AND/OR FREEWAY
HIGH-SPEED ROADWAY
(≥45 MPH)



DAY AND LOW-SPEED
ROADWAY (≤40 MPH)

CONES



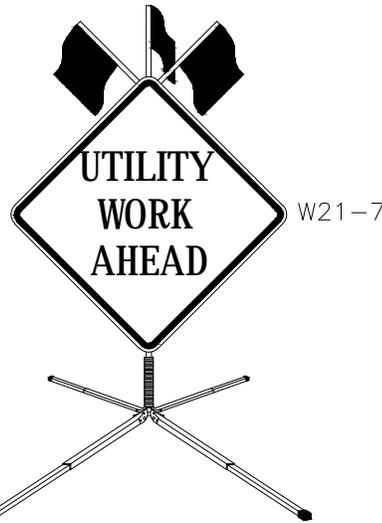
R11-3a



W20-3



R9-11a



W21-7



W21-6

- 1-ALL CONSTRUCTION, MAINTENANCE AND UTILITY WORK IN THE RIGHT OF WAY SHALL BE PERMITTED AND FOLLOW MUTCD (PART 6) AND/OR NCDOT GUIDELINES FOR TEMPORARY TRAFFIC CONTROL (TTC).
- 2-A TTC PLAN SHALL CONSIDER SAFETY AND ACCESSIBILITY OF ALL MOTORISTS, BICYCLISTS AND PEDESTRIANS AND BE PERMITTED BY THE CITY PRIOR TO PLACING SIGNS, ETC.

STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: DECEMBER, 2011

DRAWN BY JSR

CHECKED BY BDR., P.E.

SCALE NOT TO SCALE

GUIDELINES FOR
TEMPORARY TRAFFIC
CONTROL



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

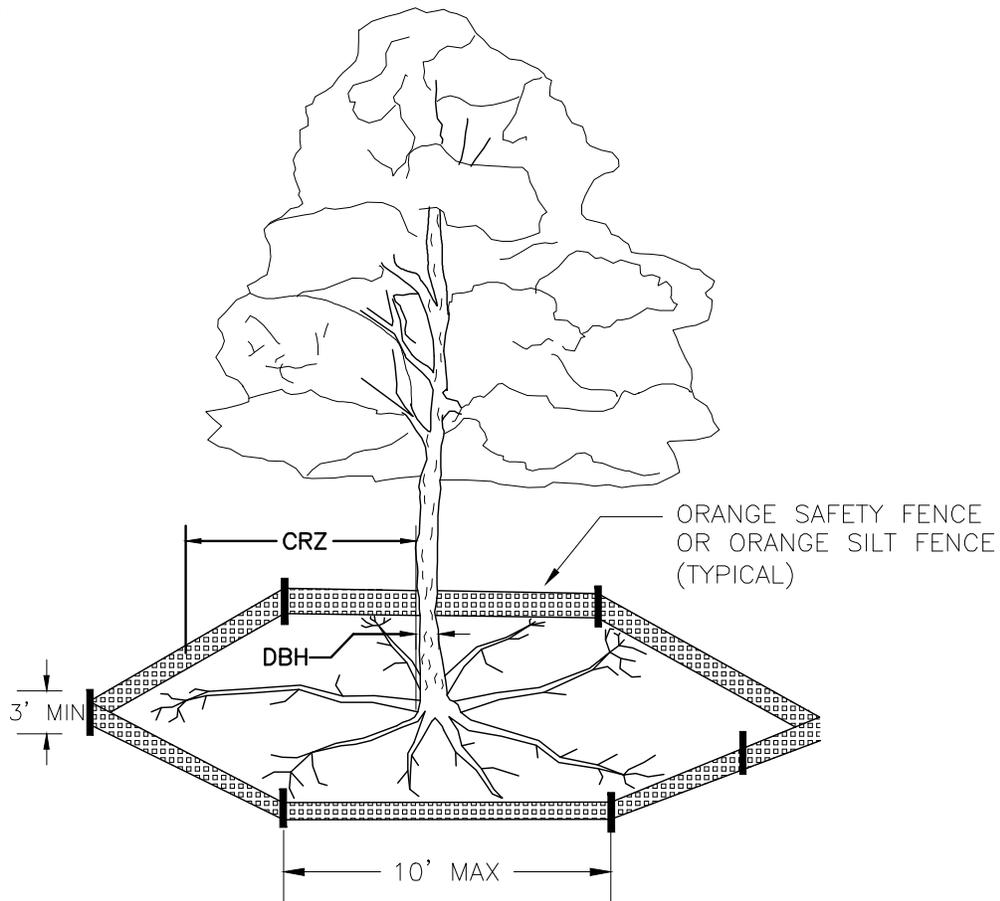
SD 15-07

NOTE:

THE CRITICAL ROOT ZONE (CRZ) OF A TREE IS WHERE THE MAJORITY OF A TREE'S ROOTS LAY. 85% OF MOST TREE ROOTS ARE FOUND IN THE TOP 24" OF THE SOIL AND SUPPLY THE MAJORITY OF NUTRIENTS AND WATER. GENERALLY, ROOTS SPREAD OUT 2-3X THE HEIGHT OF THE TREE.

NOTE:

CROWN OF THE TREE IS NEEDED FOR LEAF GROWTH TO PRODUCE OXYGEN, FILTER THE AIR, REDUCE WIND AND SOFTEN NOISE. DO NOT DISFIGURE CROWN WITH INTENSIVE PRUNING.



NOTES:

1. PROTECT CRITICAL ROOT ZONE (CRZ) OF TREES PRIOR TO CONSTRUCTION. CLEARLY MARK THE TREES AND ERECT A PROTECTIVE BARRIER AT THE CRZ. BARRIER SHALL BE MAINTAINED UNTIL CONSTRUCTION IS COMPLETE.
2. CRZ RADIUS IS 1 FT PER INCH OF TREE DIAMETER AT BREAST HEIGHT (DBH).
3. WHERE SIDEWALKS AND PATHWAYS PASS WITHIN CRZ, EXTRA CARE SHALL BE TAKEN TO AVOID DAMAGE TO THE ROOTS. ALTERNATE CONSTRUCTION METHODS, SUCH AS A REINFORCED SIDEWALK, SHALL BE IMPLEMENTED AS NECESSARY.
4. FOR ALL TREES, CUTTING OF LARGE STRUCTURAL ROOTS LOCATED NEAR THE BASE OF THE TRUNK IS PROHIBITED. DO NOT COMPACT SOIL BENEATH TREES. NO VEHICLE SHALL BE ALLOWED TO PARK UNDER TREES. NO HEAVY MATERIALS SHALL BE STORED BENEATH TREES. DAMAGING THE BARK WITH LAWNMOWERS, CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT, OR ANYTHING ELSE IS PROHIBITED. CONTRACTOR SHALL REPAIR DAMAGE TO TREES.
5. FAILING TO INSTALL OR MAINTAIN PROTECTION MEASURES MAY RESULT IN A STOP WORK ORDER AND FINE OF \$500/DAY. DISTURBANCE OTHER THAN THAT ALLOWED ON THE APPROVED PLAN WILL REQUIRE OWNER TO POST A LETTER OF CREDIT FOR 3 YRS FOR TREE MITIGATION.

STANDARD DETAIL

**TREE PROTECTION
DURING
CONSTRUCTION**

SHEET 1 of 2



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 15-09

DATE: NOV, 2011

DRAWN BY JSR

CHECKED BY BDR, P.E.

SCALE NOT TO SCALE

1" DBH=1' RADIUS OF THE
CRITICAL ROOT ZONE
(DBH=DIAMETER BREAST HEIGHT)

EXAMPLE
30" DBH TREE

TREE PROTECTION
BARRIER

EXAMPLE
30' RADIUS
CRZ

10' MAX
BETWEEN STAKES

NOTE: DRAWINGS ARE NOT TO SCALE. USE
AS A GUIDE FOR DETERMINING MINIMUM CRZ.

STANDARD DETAIL

DATE: NOV, 2011

DRAWN BY JSR

CHECKED BY BDR, P.E.

SCALE NOT TO SCALE

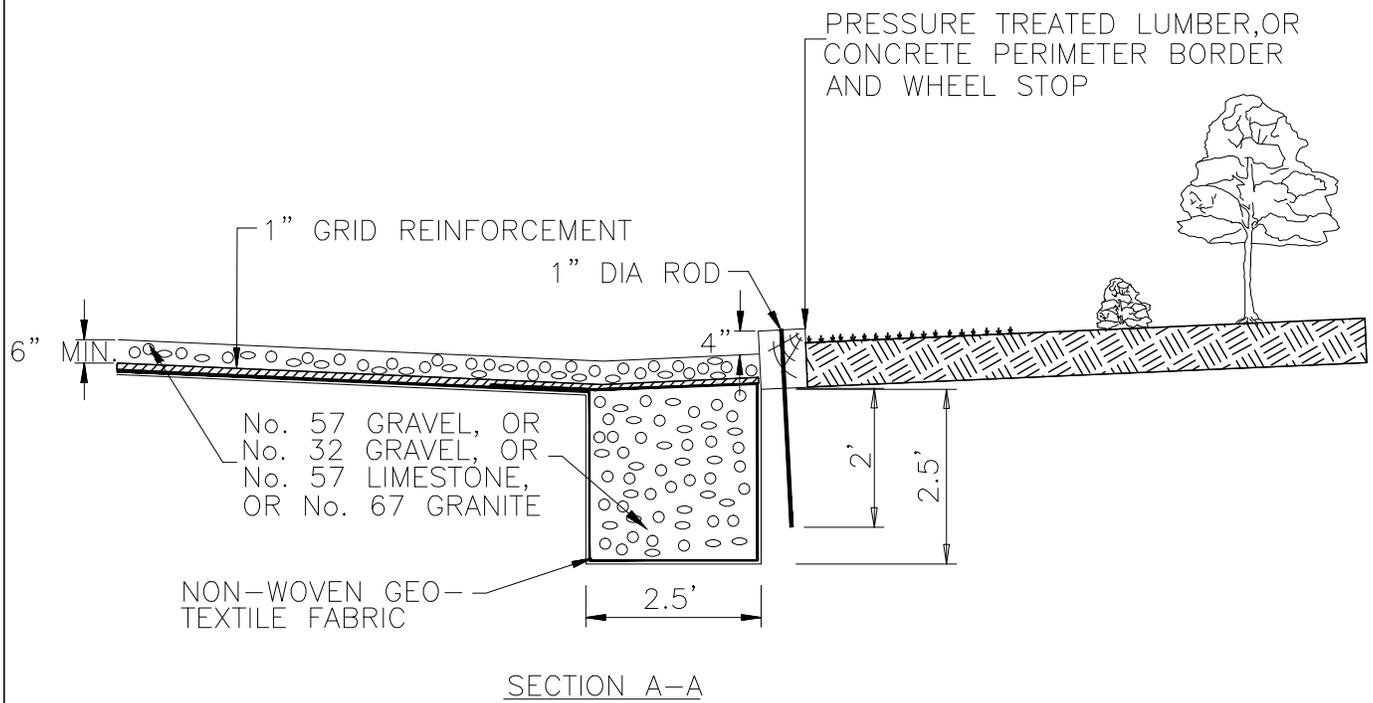
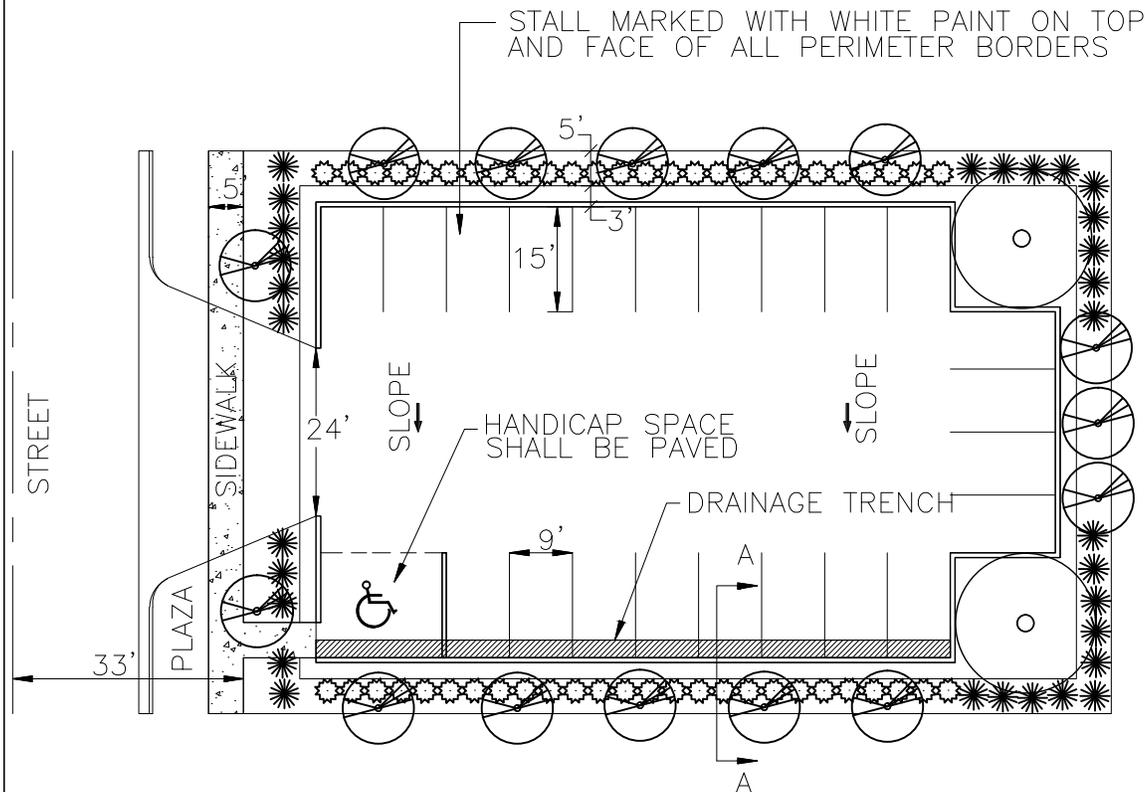
TREE PROTECTION
DURING
CONSTRUCTION

SHEET 2 of 2

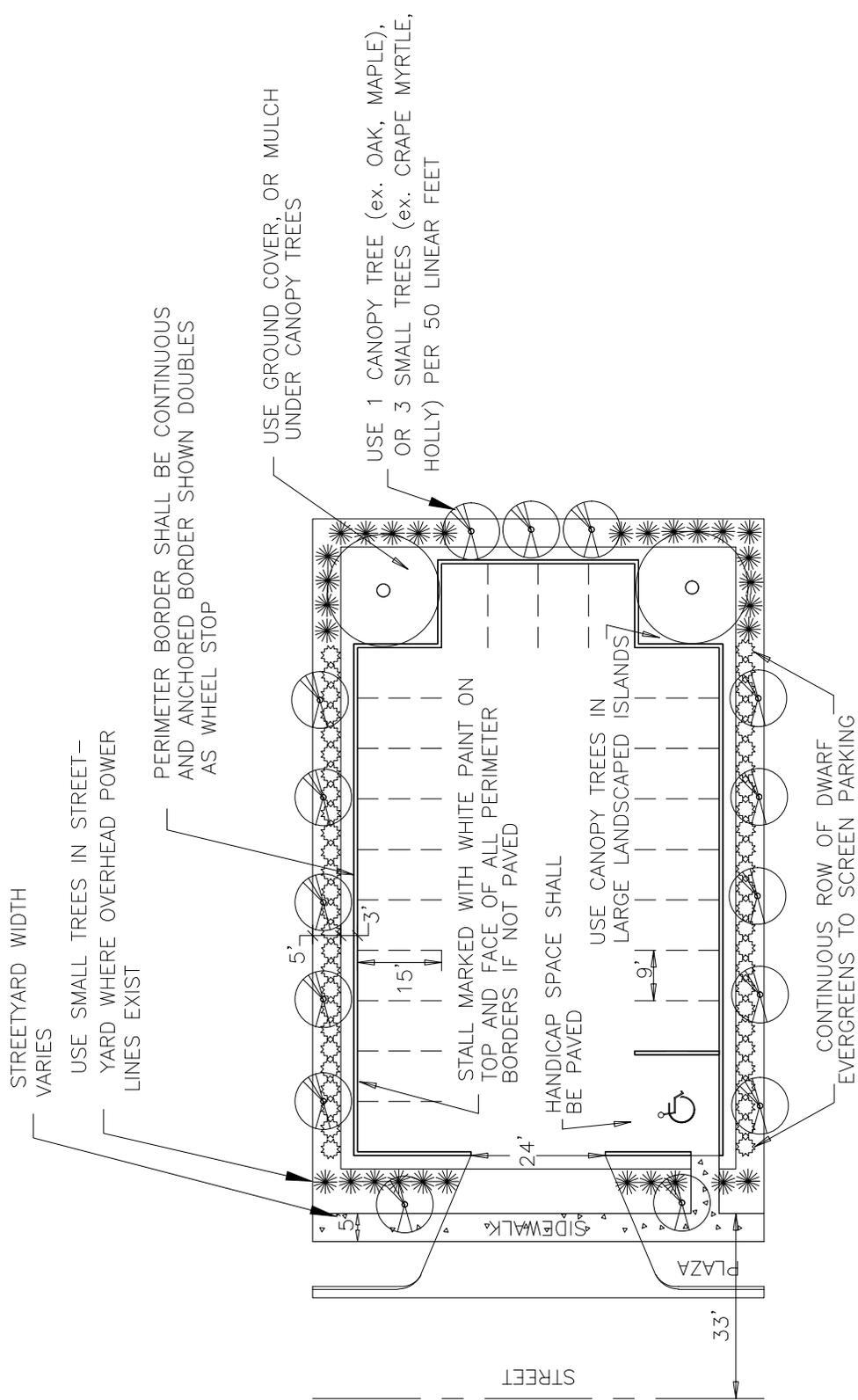


CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 15-09



STANDARD DETAIL		 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807	TYPICAL UNPAVED PARKING FACILITY UNDER 25 STALLS
DATE:	2001		
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR		
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.		
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE	SD 15-10	



DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

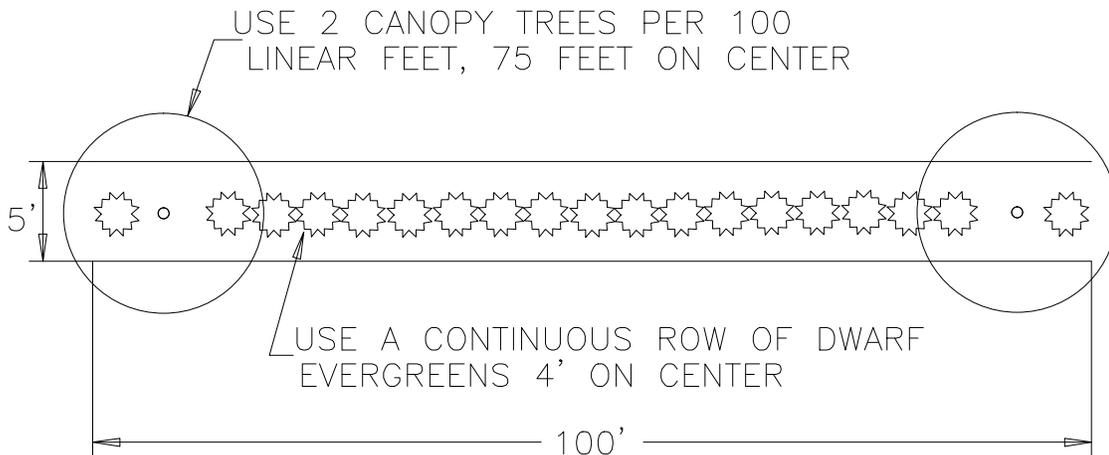
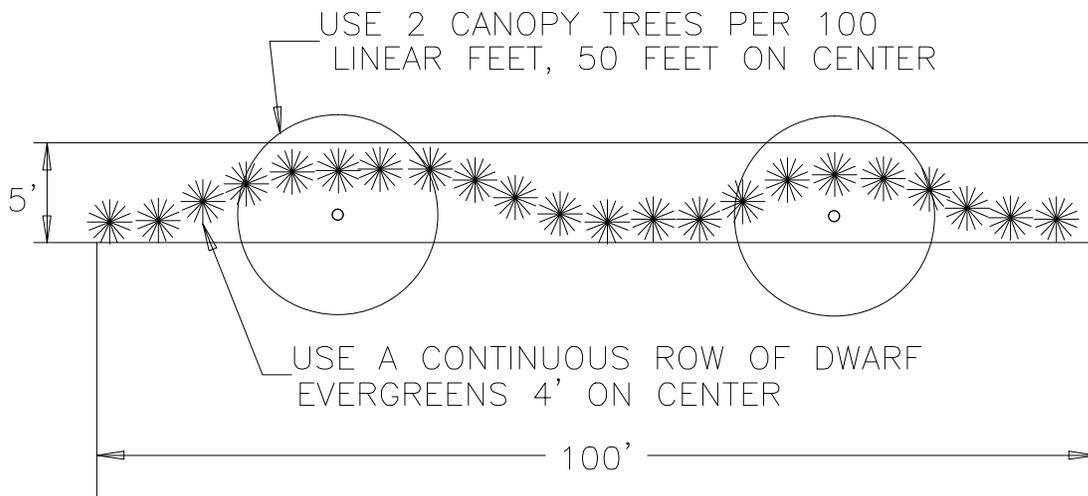
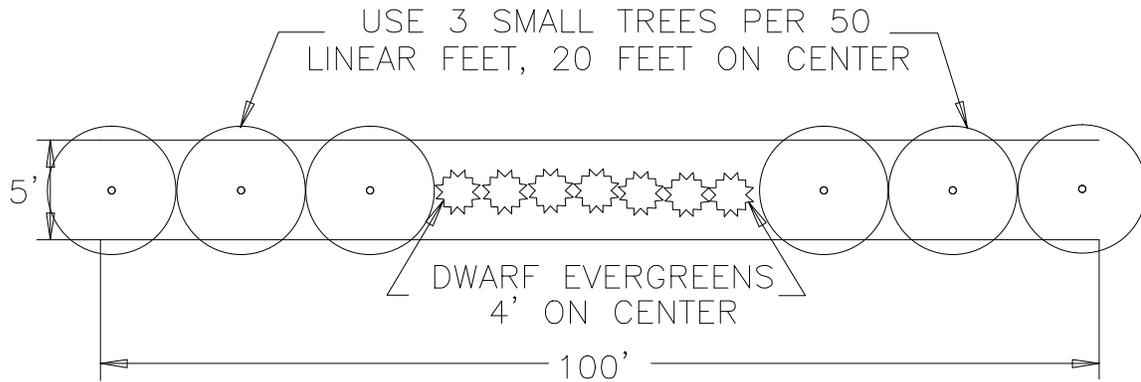
STANDARD DETAIL

**PARKING FACILITY
UNDER 25 STALLS
PAVED OR UNPAVED**

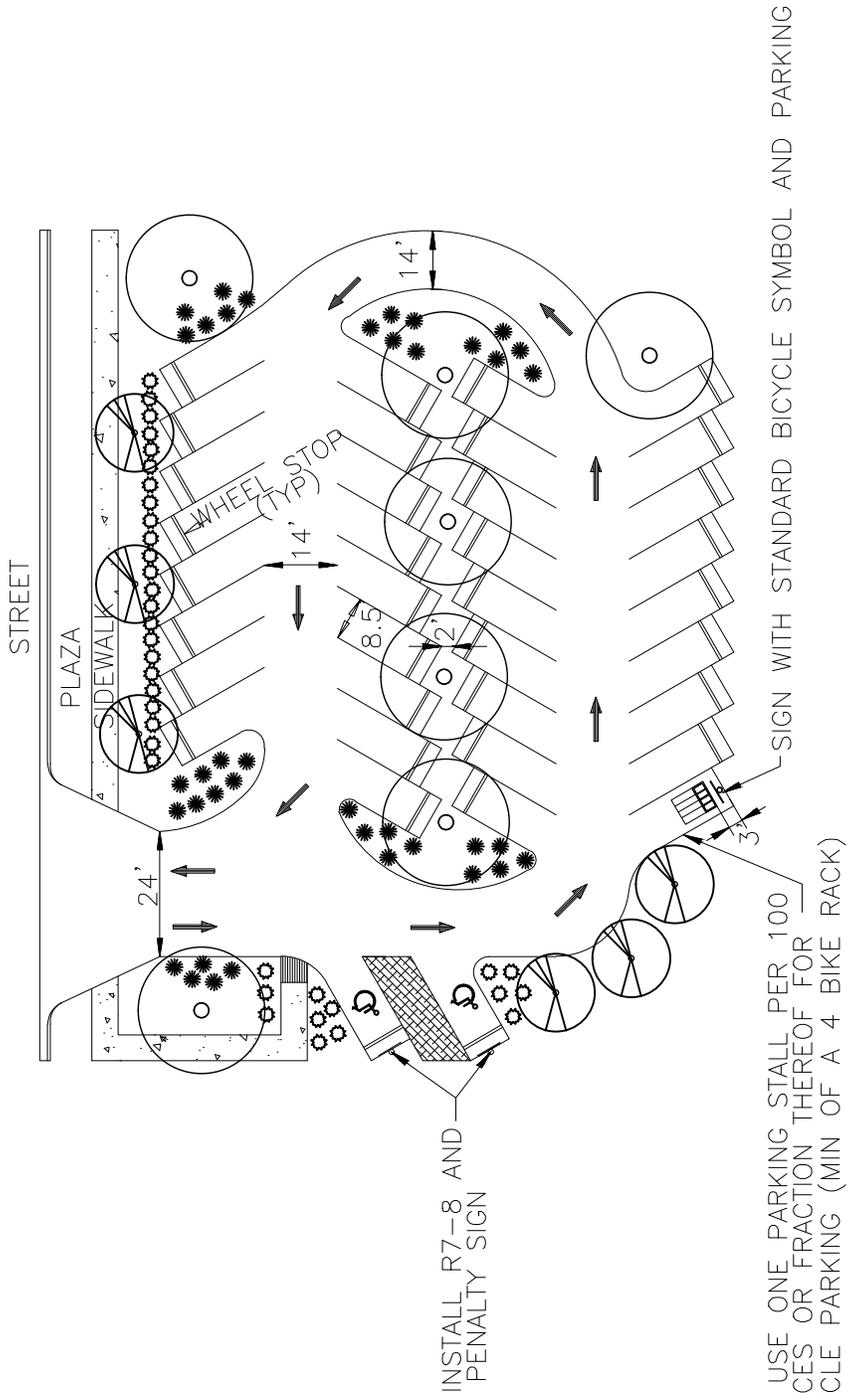
SHEET 1 OF 2


 CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
 PO BOX 1810
 WILMINGTON, NC 28402
 (910) 341-7807

SD 15-11



STANDARD DETAIL		CITY OF WILMINGTON NORTH CAROLINA
PARKING FACILITY UNDER 25 STALLS PAVED OR UNPAVED		
DATE: 2001	SHEET 2 OF 2	CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807
DRAWN BY JSR/CMR		SD 15-11
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE NOT TO SCALE		



NOTES:

- 1 - SEE PARKING LOT DESIGN STANDARDS FOR ALTERNATIVE PARKING LOT DIMENSIONS
- 2 - SEE "LANDSCAPE" FOR RECOMMENDED PLANT LIST T-10.4

MAY USE ONE PARKING STALL PER 100 SPACES OR FRACTION THEREOF FOR BICYCLE PARKING (MIN OF A 4 BIKE RACK)

SIGN WITH STANDARD BICYCLE SYMBOL AND PARKING

DATE:	2001
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE

STANDARD DETAIL

**PARKING FACILITY
EQUAL TO OR GREATER
THAN 25 STALLS**

SHEET 2 OF 2



CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING
PO BOX 1810
WILMINGTON, NC 28402
(910) 341-7807

SD 15-12

1. Variances on stall widths, angle and other dimensions will be allowed only upon approval of the Traffic Engineer.
2. Wheel stops shall be required three (3) feet from the end of parking stall when using eighteen (18) feet deep stalls.
3. Curbing, crossties, utility poles, etc., can be used as wheel stops. (Must be anchored down)
4. All medians shall be a minimum of six (6) feet wide.
5. Parking bays which terminate at a circulation way shall provide for a minimum turning radius of twenty-five (25) feet, as measured from the edge of the travel portion.
6. All parking stall markings and lane arrows shall be white.
7. All other pavement markings, signs or other traffic control devices shall conform to the latest edition and/or interpretation of the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD).
8. No obstructions will be allowed adjacent to a parking stall which would prevent safe ingress and egress from a parked vehicle.
9. Parking in fire lanes and in non-residential driveways shall be prevented by standard signs and as needed by portable barricades.

STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>WILMINGTON NORTH CAROLINA</p> <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE:	2001	
DRAWN BY	JSR/CMR	
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.	
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE	
PARKING FACILITY DESIGN NOTES		SD 15-13

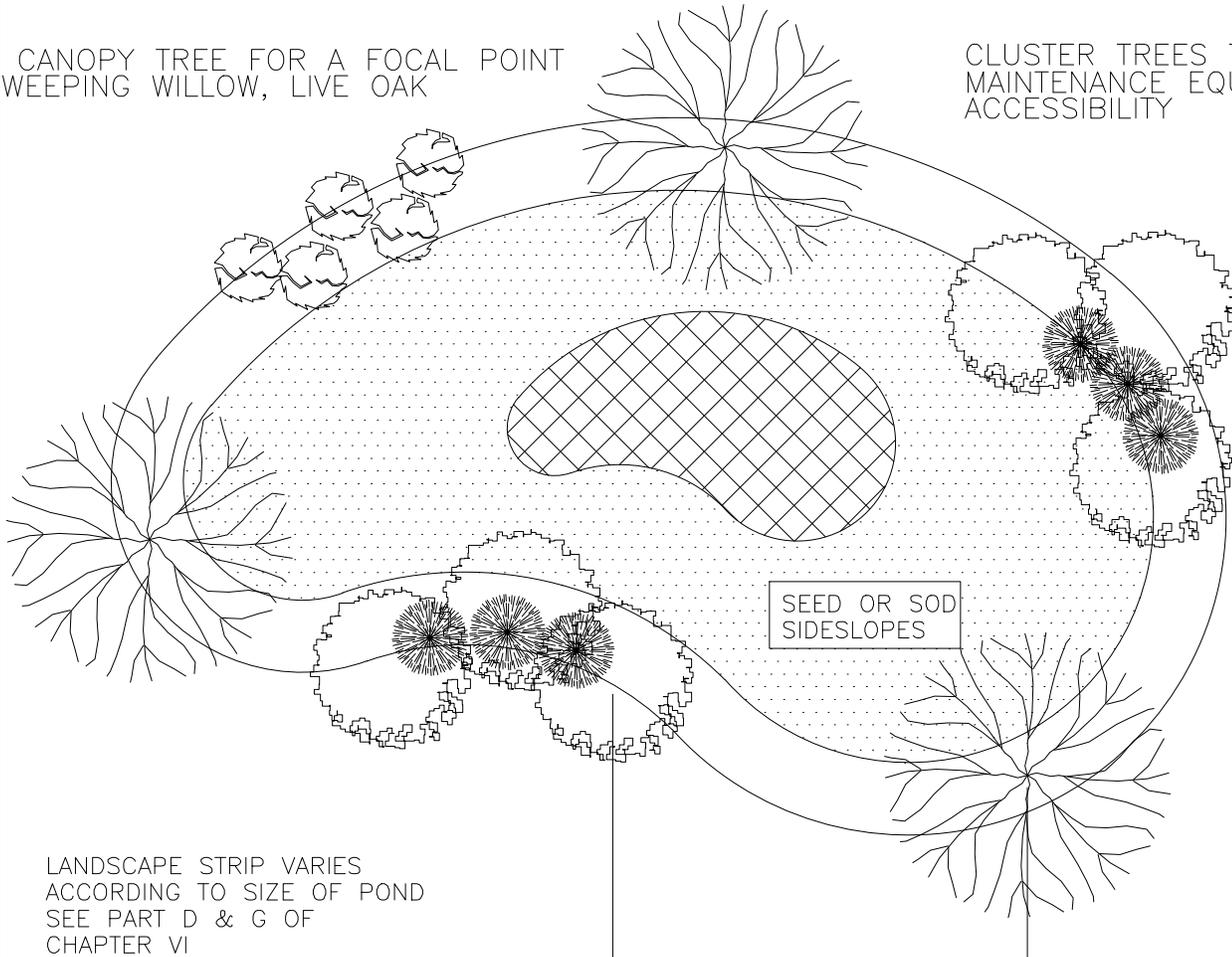
1. No plantings over thirty (30) inches in height allowed in vision clearance.
2. Protection from vehicular traffic provided around all landscaping with a minimum height of six (6) inches.
3. Owner is responsible for maintenance to ensure plant material lives and prospers.
4. Planting plans shall be approved by Landscape Designer prior to installation.
5. Landscaping shall be required at the ends of all parking rows.
6. A low buffer shall be required where parking is within fifty (50) feet of the Right-of-Way.
7. Landscaped islands shall be a minimum width of twelve (12) feet (back of curb to back of curb) and a minimum of two hundred and sixteen (216) square feet.
8. A minimum of fifteen (15) trees 2 inches or greater in diameter as measured 6 inches above ground per disturbed acre.
9. For recommended Plant List see "Landscape" T-10.4.

	STANDARD DETAIL	 <p style="font-size: small;">CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE: APRIL, 2008	LANDSCAPE NOTES	
DRAWN BY JSR		
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.		
SCALE <u>NOT TO SCALE</u>		
		SD 15-14

CLUSTER SHRUBS FOR
LOW MAINTENANCE

CANOPY TREE FOR A FOCAL POINT
WEEPING WILLOW, LIVE OAK

CLUSTER TREES TO ALLOW
MAINTENANCE EQUIPMENT
ACCESSIBILITY



SEED OR SOD
SIDESLOPES

LANDSCAPE STRIP VARIES
ACCORDING TO SIZE OF POND
SEE PART D & G OF
CHAPTER VI

100'
VEGETATION MUST BE EVENLY
DISTRIBUTED AT APPROXIMATELY
100' INTERVALS AROUND POND

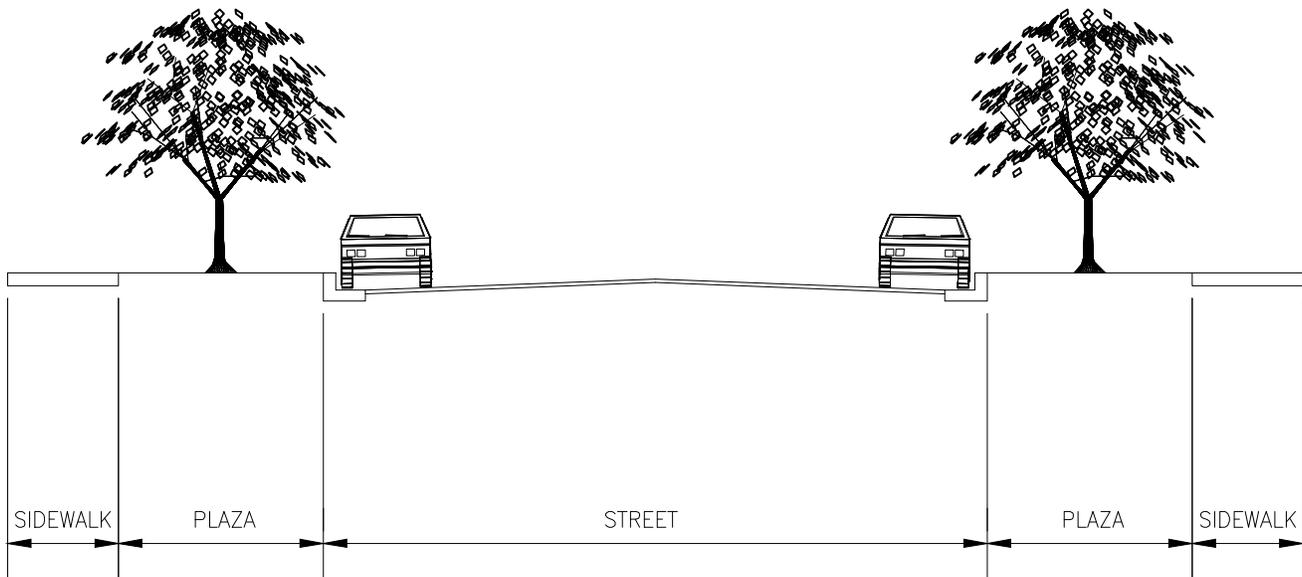
Notes:

1. If possible, locate pond where vegetation exists.
2. Suggest minimal clearing to conserve visual quality of site and minimize the additional of tree planting. An irregular shape provides a more natural appearance.
3. Landscape strip shall be a maximum slope of 7:1 in order to plant vegetation.
4. Provide a minimum of 3 inches of mulch around all vegetation.

STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON NORTH CAROLINA</p> <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE:	JULY 2003	
DRAWN BY	JSR	
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.	
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE	
TYPICAL STORM WATER FACILITY LANDSCAPING PLAN		SD 15-16

RESIDENTIAL STREET TREE STANDARDS

1. Street trees shall be installed along residential streets after all driveways have been installed.
2. The developer shall notify Landscape Designer prior to installation to ensure proper tree selection and spacing.
3. Each tree shall be a minimum of two (2) caliper inches.
4. Phasing of a project shall be permitted, however, Street Trees on the same block shall be planted at the same time to avoid size irregularities.
5. Trees within the same block shall be the same species.



RECOMMENDED STREET TREE SPACING ACCORDING TO PLAZA WIDTHS

4'–6'
ex. CREPE MYRTLE
HOLLY

6'–8'
ex. JAPANESE MAPLE
ZELKOVA

GREATER THAN 8'
ex. DARLINGTON OAK
RED MAPLE

25'–30'
SPACING

35'–40'
SPACING

50'
SPACING

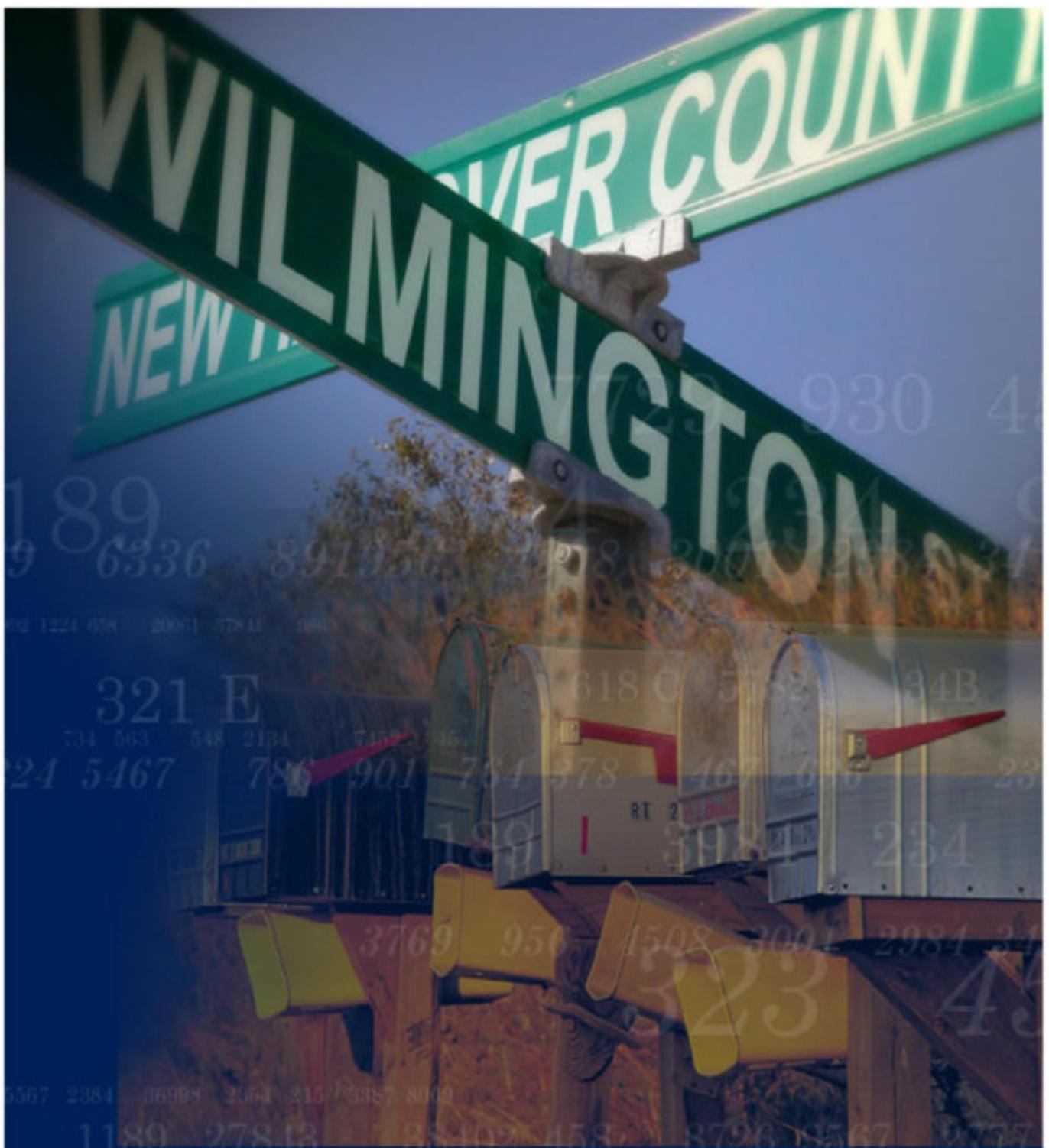
STANDARD DETAIL		 <p>WILMINGTON NORTH CAROLINA</p> <p>CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING PO BOX 1810 WILMINGTON, NC 28402 (910) 341-7807</p>
DATE:	2006	
DRAWN BY	JSR	
CHECKED BY	B.P., P.E.	
SCALE	NOT TO SCALE	
RESIDENTIAL STREET TREE STANDARDS		SD 15-17

C CURVE DATA				
CURVE	A	R	T	L
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				

LEGEND

	EXISTING WATER LINE		PROPOSED WATER LINE
	EXISTING SD (STORM DRAIN)		PROPOSED STORM DRAIN
	EXISTING SS (SANITARY SEWER)		PROPOSED SANITARY SEWER
	EXISTING SANITARY SEWER FORCE MAIN		PROPOSED MANHOLE
	EXISTING GAS LINE		PROPOSED SANITARY CLEANOUT
	EXISTING LOT LINES		PROPOSED WATER VALVE
	EXISTING RIGHT OF WAY LINES		PROPOSED WATER METER
	EXISTING MANHOLE		PROPOSED FIRE HYDRANT
	EXISTING SANITARY CLEANOUT		PROPOSED CATCH BASIN
	EXISTING WATER VALVE		PROPOSED GRILL BASIN
	EXISTING WATER METER		
	EXISTING POWER POLE		
	EXISTING FIRE HYDRANTS		
	EXISTING CATCH BASIN		
	EXISTING GRILL BASIN		
	EXISTING LIGHT POLE		
	EXISTING IRON PIPE (PROPERTY CORNER)		
	EXISTING TREE		

STANDARD DETAIL		CITY OF WILMINGTON ENGINEERING OFFICE 305 CHESTNUT STREET PO. BOX 1810 WILMINGTON N.C. 28402 (910) 341-7807	 SD 15-18
DATE: JULY 2003	STANDARD FORMS		
DRAWN BY JSR			
CHECKED BY B.P., P.E.			
SCALE NOT TO SCALE			



Addressing Standards & Procedures Manual
for New Hanover County
& the City of Wilmington

ADOPTED:
New Hanover County Commissioners - May 20th, 2002.
Wilmington City Council - August 6th, 2002.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>Section</u>	<u>Page #</u>
1. INTRODUCTION	7
<u>1.1 PURPOSE OF THIS DOCUMENT</u>	7
<u>1.2 AUTHORITY</u>	
<u>1.3 ADDRESSING ROLES IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT</u>	7
<u>1.4 DOCUMENT MAINTENANCE</u>	8
<u>1.5 CONTACTS</u>	9
2. STREET NAME ASSIGNMENT	11
2.0.1 Introduction	
2.0.2 Key Terms	
<u>2.1 WHEN A STREET MUST BE NAMED</u>	11
2.1.1 Street Naming Process in the City of Wilmington, NC	
2.1.2 Street Naming Process in New Hanover County, NC	
2.1.3 Addressing Coordinator Responsibilities	
2.1.4 Official Street Naming Authority in the City of Wilmington, NC	
2.1.5 Official Street Naming Authority in New Hanover County, NC	
<u>2.2 BASIC GUIDELINES TO FOLLOW WHEN NAMING A STREET</u>	13
2.2.1 Minimum Length	
2.2.2 Maximum Length	
2.2.3 No Special Characters	
2.2.4 No Directional Names	
2.2.5 No Same Names	
2.2.6 Continuous Streets Must Not Have Breaks	
2.2.7 Numeric Names	
2.2.8 Street Names Vs. Route Numbers	
<u>2.3 NAMING SITUATIONS TO CONSIDER (SPECIFIC TRAFFIC PATTERNS)</u>	15
2.3.1 Forks	
2.3.2 Cul-de-sacs	
2.3.3 Loops	
2.3.4 Continuous Streets Passing Through New Subdivisions	
2.3.5 Continuous Streets Passing Through Intersections	
<u>2.4 WHEN TO ASSIGN A STREET SUFFIX</u>	18
2.4.1 Street Suffix Usage Guide	
<u>2.5 WHEN TO ASSIGN A STREET DIRECTION</u>	18
<u>2.6 BASIC GUIDELINES TO FOLLOW WHEN ASSIGNING STREET DIRECTIONALS</u>	19
2.6.1 Directional Grid System for Wilmington and New Hanover County	
2.6.2 Directional Abbreviations	
2.6.3 No 45 Degree Directionals	
2.6.4 Must Have Directionals in Pairs	
2.6.5 Facing Cul-de-sacs	
<u>2.7 WHEN A STREET MUST BE RE-NAMED</u>	20
2.7.1 Street Renaming Process in the City of Wilmington, NC	
2.7.2 Street Renaming Process in New Hanover County, NC	
2.7.3 Official Street renaming Authority in the City of Wilmington, NC	
2.7.4 Official Street renaming Authority in New Hanover County, NC	
<u>2.8 BASIC GUIDELINES TO FOLLOW WHEN RENAMING STREETS</u>	21
2.8.1 Street Renaming Priority	

<u>2.9 RENAMING SITUATIONS TO CONSIDER</u>	21
2.9.1 Street Closures	
3. STREET NUMBERING/ADDRESSING ASSIGNMENT	22
3.0.1 Introduction	
3.0.2 Key Terms	
<u>3.1 WHEN TO ASSIGN ADDRESS NUMBERS</u>	22
3.1.1 Street Addressing Process in the City of Wilmington, NC	
3.1.2 Street Addressing Process in New Hanover County, NC	
3.1.3 Official Street Addressing Authority in the City of Wilmington, NC	
3.1.4 Official Street Addressing Authority in New Hanover County, NC	
<u>3.2 BASIC GUIDELINES TO FOLLOW WHEN NUMBERING/ADDRESSING STREETS</u>	23
3.2.1 The New Hanover County Grid Numbering System	
3.2.2 Placement of Odd and Even Numbers	
3.2.3 Addresses in Sequential Order	
3.2.4 Numbers Only	
<u>3.3 ADDRESSING SPACING</u>	24
3.3.1 The Basic Process of Addressing Spacing	
3.3.2 High Density Spacing	
3.3.3 Mixed Use Spacing	
3.3.4 Residential Spacing	
3.3.5 Rural & Forest Lands Spacing	
<u>3.4 STREET ADDRESSING SITUATIONS TO CONSIDER</u>	27
3.4.1 Addressing Corner Lots	
3.4.2 Addressing Circular Streets	
3.4.3 Addressing Cul-de-sacs	
3.4.4 Adding Garage Apartments, Additions, & Mobile Homes to Single Properties	
3.4.5 Addressing Family Street	
3.4.6 Addressing Mobile Home Parks	
3.4.7 Addressing Duplexes	
3.4.8 Addressing Single Level Condominiums	
3.4.9 Addressing Multi Level Condominiums	
<u>3.5 ADDRESSING APARTMENT COMPLEXES</u>	29
3.5.1 Addressing Single Level Apartments	
3.5.2 Addressing Multi Level Apartments on Named Streets	
3.5.3 Unit Numbering for Multi Level Apartments on Named Streets	
3.5.4 Addressing Multi-Level Apartments on Private Streets	
3.5.5 Unit Numbering for Multi-Level Apartments on Private Streets	
<u>3.6 ADDRESSING MULTIPLE BUSINESSES</u>	31
3.6.1 Universal Business Addressing Rule	
3.6.2 Addressing Single Level Businesses (Malls/Strip Malls)	
3.6.3 Addressing Multi-Level Businesses (Office Buildings)	
<u>3.7 WHEN A STREET MUST BE RENUMBERED</u>	32
3.7.1 Street Renumbering Process in the City of Wilmington, NC	
3.7.2 Street Renumbering Process in New Hanover County, NC	
3.7.3 Basic Guidelines to Follow When Renumbering a Street	
4. APPENDIX A – ELECTRONIC DATA ORGANIZATION AND MAINTENANCE STANDARDS	33
<u>4.1 INTRODUCTION</u>	
<u>4.2 ELECTRONIC ADDRESS CHARACTERISTICS</u>	33

4.2.1 Unique physical address represented as a point in GIS.	
4.2.2 Generalized linear address represented by centerlines with block-by-block address ranges in GIS.	
<u>4.3 ELECTRONIC ADDRESS FORMAT</u>	34
4.3.1 Unique Identifier	
4.3.2 Address Number	
4.3.3 Address Sub-Number	
4.3.4 Directional Prefixes	
4.3.5 Street Name	
4.3.6 Street Type	
4.3.7 Unit Type	
4.3.8 Unit Number	
4.3.9 City Code	
<u>4.4 FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ADDRESS MANAGEMENT AND ENTRY</u>	36
4.4.1 Address Data Management	
4.4.2 General Functionality for Street Name/Address Data Management	
4.4.3 Management of Master Street Name List	
4.4.4 Management of Master Address List	
4.4.5 Address Data Entry	
4.4.6 Querying and Reporting Functions	
<u>4.5 ADDRESS POINT DATASET MODEL</u>	39
4.5.1 Master Address Database	
4.5.2 Master Street Name Table	
4.5.3 Defined Attribute Domain for Street Directional Prefix	
4.5.4 Defined Attribute Domain for Street Type	
4.5.5 Defined Attribute Domain for City Code	
4.5.6 Street Name Transaction Table	
4.5.7 Street Name QC Table	
4.5.8 Defined Attribute Domain for Street Name Status	
4.5.9 Defined Attribute Domain for Street Name QC Code	
<u>4.6 MASTER ADDRESS TABLE</u>	43
4.6.1 Defined Attribute Domain for Unit Type	
<u>4.7 ADDRESS QC TABLE</u>	44
4.7.1 Defined Attribute Domain for Address Status	
4.7.2 Defined Attribute Domain for Address QC Code	
<u>4.8 ADDRESS TRANSACTION TABLE</u>	45
<u>4.9 MASTER ADDRESS TABLE RELATIONSHIPS DEFINED (CHART)</u>	46
5. APPENDIX B - ENFORCEMENT PROCEDURES	47
<u>5.1 CURRENT STANDARDS IN THE CITY OF WILMINGTON, NC</u>	47
<u>5.2 STANDARDS OF ADDRESS DISPLAY IN NEW HANOVER COUNTY</u>	47
<u>5.3 ENFORCEMENT OF THESE STANDARDS IN NEW HANOVER COUNTY</u>	47
6. APPENDIX C - STREET SIGNAGE TECHNICAL STANDARDS	49
<u>6.1 STREET NAME SIGNS</u>	49
6.1.1 Tubular Aluminum or Galvanized Steel Posts	
6.1.2 Bottom of sign a minimum of seven (7) feet above ground	
6.1.3 Hardware	
<u>6.2 COLOR & LETTERING</u>	49
6.2.1 All Block Capitals.	
6.2.2 Height of Blade and Street	
6.2.3 Height of Prefixes and	

- 6.2.4 Block Numbers (Required)*
- 6.2.5 Color and Reflective
- 6.2.6 Private Street Placement

7. APPENDIX D - KEY TERMS

51

1. INTRODUCTION

1.1 PURPOSE OF THIS DOCUMENT

The purpose of this document is to set standards for addressing, by providing guidelines by which house numbers and street names can be assigned, recorded, and maintained.

Addresses are very important. They provide a common systematic means by which people, places, and events can be located within a community. Address information is commonly used in local government to dispatch emergency services, process tax billing, describe locations, and record events.

Although widely used, addresses information is not always assigned, recorded, or maintained in a standard manner or format. This can create numerous problems for people who need to share, or access address information.

Standard addressing rules will provide guidelines for assigning house numbers and street names. A standard database format for recording address information will simplify the maintenance, exchange, and interpretation of address information between governmental agencies and the community.

1.2 AUTHORITY

This document was approved and adopted by the New Hanover County Board of Commissioners on May 20th, 2002 as the official addressing standards and procedures manual of New Hanover County, NC. The standards and procedures detailed in this document support the requirements established in the New Hanover County Code of Ordinances (Chapter 47 - Streets, Sidewalks and Other Public Places).

This document was approved and adopted by the City of Wilmington City Council on August 6th, 2002 as the official addressing standards and procedures manual of the City of Wilmington, NC. The standards and procedures detailed in this document support the requirements established in the City of Wilmington Code of Ordinances, and the City of Wilmington Technical Standards and Specifications Manual.

Reference: City of Wilmington Code: Part II GENERAL ORDINANCES, CHAPTER 11 STREETS AND SIDEWALKS, Article 1 IN GENERAL and ARTICLE II STREETS GENERALLY; Part III TECHNICAL CODES, CHAPTER 18 SUBDIVISION REGULATIONS, ARTICLE III REQUIRED IMPROVEMENTS; City of Wilmington Technical Standards and Specifications Manual.

1.3 ADDRESSING ROLES IN LOCAL GOVERNMENT

Most importantly address information is pivotal to the protection of human life, the preservation of property, and the maintenance of general security within our community. Address information is used on a daily basis to direct emergency response services such as police, fire, and EMS to a specify location so they may provide assistance in an emergency.

Address information plays a key role in the daily activities of virtually all of the departments within New Hanover County, and the City of Wilmington government offices.

In New Hanover County offices address information is used by the Planning Department, the Engineering Department, and the Building Inspections Department to pinpoint properties, review planned developments, issue building permits, and conduct inspections.

The E911 Center, the Sheriff's Department, and the Fire Services Department use addresses to dispatch and respond to calls for help.

The Registrar of Deeds, the Tax Office, and Legal Collections Office use address information to prepare and record information about property ownership, conduct title searches administer tax billing.

Environmental Management, the Health Department, the Department of Social Services, the Parks Department and the Department of Aging, the County Museum, and the County Library use address information to plan coordinate medical programs, social services, and community programs.

The Office of Voter Registration uses address information to verify precinct and voting district locations

In the City of Wilmington offices address information is used by:

Development Services
Police Dept.
Fire Dept.
Engineering Dept.
Information Technology
Storm Water Services
Utility Services
Public Utilities
Solid Waste
Streets & Traffic
Billing & Collections

1.4 DOCUMENT MAINTENANCE

This document is maintained by both the City of Wilmington and New Hanover County. A regional Addressing Standards Committee administers maintenance of this document. This committee is composed of members of the City of Wilmington Development Services, City of Wilmington Planning Department, City of Wilmington GIS, New Hanover County Planning Department, and New Hanover County Information Technologies Department.

All proposed changes to this document should be presented to the City of Wilmington Development Services, or the New Hanover County Planning Department. The proposed

changes will be forwarded to the Addressing Standards Committee for review and possible inclusion into this document

1.5 CONTACTS

Both the City of Wilmington, and New Hanover County have offices and positions, which are responsible for the assignment, recordation, and notification of all new street addresses information. These offices are also responsible for coordinating changes to exist street names and house numbers. For questions regarding street address information please contact one of the following offices.

City of Wilmington
Addressing Coordinator
(910) 342-2723

New Hanover County Addressing
Planning Department.
Addressing / GIS Technician
(910) 341-7165

2. STREET NAME ASSIGNMENT

2.0.1 Introduction

The rules and guidelines in this section were designed to facilitate the proper naming of streets in every possible naming scenario that occurs in New Hanover County. In our county, streets must be named in a logical easy to understand manner in order to help citizens and emergency personnel quickly locate people places and events.

2.0.2 Key Terms

Street – A Street is any single lane and multi-lane corridor or conveyance, which is passable by a motor vehicle. This includes private and public, improved (paved), unimproved (unpaved) roadways, and alleys.

Intersection – The meeting of two or more passable roadways or possibly where a roadway passes over a named body of water.

Block – A block is a group of buildings that form a unit from one intersection to another. The unit could be a 100 block or 1000 block.

Cul-de-sac -They are extended streets with a wide circular turn-a-round at their ends and only one outlet, they provide access to 4 or more lots.

2.1 WHEN A STREET MUST BE NAMED

A planned or existing street, public or private, should be named and when its has a length greater than 200ft, and serves as the primary means of ingress and egress for a minimum of four (4) or more homes, dwellings, or commercial structures. These requirements should be universally applied. The purpose is to provide consistency and simplicity to naming and numbering of streets. Minor exceptions may be granted for cul-de-sacs only. (See Section 2.3.2)

2.1.1 Street Naming Process in the City of Wilmington, NC:

Street naming process for newly planned developments- When preliminary subdivision plans are submitted for review, all proposed public streets, private streets, and driveways that require naming, must be identified (See Section 2.1 for Definition). Proposed street names should be submitted to the City Address Coordinator for review and approval. All proposed streets, which are in obvious alignment with other existing and named streets, shall bear the assigned name of the existing street (Section 18-70(h) of the City Code of Ordinances). In no case shall the name for the proposed street be duplicate or phonetically similar to an existing street name within New Hanover County (including street names within all municipalities of New Hanover County).

Street naming process for existing un-named streets – City Council, City Planning Commission, or any department of the City of Wilmington may initiate the naming of any street or alley within the corporate limits of Wilmington. In addition, any one or more interested parties may initiate a naming or renaming by submitting a Street Naming/Renaming Application and an application fee to City of Wilmington Address Coordinator. A complete and valid application must have the signatures of the majority (51 %) of property owners owning the majority of property abutting the street or alley to be named. Upon receiving the completed application, required fees, and required additional information, the City Address Coordinator shall transmit copies to the affected agencies and City departments for review and recommendations. Upon the review of recommendations from affected agencies, the City Address Coordinator shall present the original application, the required information, and the

recommendations to the City Manager for review. After review by the City Manager, the street naming will be placed on the agenda for City Council to consider an Ordinance to Name or Rename the street or alley at a public hearing. The applicant(s) is requested to be present at all public hearings at which the request for naming or renaming will be reviewed.

If the street to be named or renamed is not a major thoroughfare, then not less than ten (10) days prior to the public hearing for the naming or renaming of a street or alley, the City Clerk shall advertise for one (1) day the proposal to name or rename a street or alley in a local newspaper of general circulation. The City Address Coordinator will notify all affected property owners by first class mail and post a sign in at least two locations along the street or alley to be named or renamed, causing notice of the time, place, and subject matter of the hearing.

If the street to be named or renamed is a major thoroughfare, then not less than thirty (30) days prior to the public hearing for the naming or renaming of a street or alley, the City Clerk shall advertise the proposal to name or rename a street or alley once a week for two (2) successive weeks in a local newspaper of general circulation. The City Address Coordinator will notify all affected property owners by first class mail and the North Carolina Department of Transportation (if the street or alley is under the authority of the NC DOT) of the public hearing and cause notice of the time, place, and subject matter of the hearing to be prominently posted in at least two (2) locations along the street or alley to be named or renamed. Where an application for the naming or renaming of a street or alley has been signed by all the property owners (100%) fronting on the street or alley, the City Council may adopt an Ordinance for Naming or Renaming the street without publishing the notice in the local newspaper or along said street or alley to be named or renamed.

Where E911 dispatch has notified the City Staff that any street address, other than those of major thoroughfares, could not be located so as to provide emergency service, the City Council, upon finding that it is in the interest of the public welfare and safety, may adopt an Ordinance to Name or Rename the street or alley without posting or publishing the notice in the local newspaper or along said street or alley to be named or renamed.

Upon the approval of the naming or renaming by City Council and the signing of the Order to Name or Rename the street or alley by the Mayor and attested by the City Clerk, and upon receipt of the total administrative expenses for advertising, mailing notices, posting signs, and recording fees for the Ordinance, the City Clerk shall record the signed Ordinance in the Office of the New Hanover County Register of Deeds. Copies shall be made of the order and will be delivered to the City Address Coordinator. The Address Coordinator will distribute copies to the NCDOT, New Hanover County GIS Department, City Development Services, United States Postal Service, and the affected property owners.

Reference: "RESOLUTION AMENDING CITY POLICY FOR NAMING AND RENAMING STREETS OR ALLEYS", adopted by the Wilmington City Council on June 17, 2003

2.1.2 Street Naming Process in New Hanover County, NC: *A newly planned development proposes construction of a new street.* In this situation a plan is submitted to the County Planning Department for review. As part of the development review process the County Planning Department will assign a street name to all newly proposed streets, public and private, that require naming (*See Section 2.1 for Definition*), and will assign house numbers to all newly proposed lots.

A street naming request is submitted to the County Planning Department by staff or by a citizen or a group of citizens - Before a street public or private can be assigned an official street name, it must meet the following requirements. The street must be a minimum length of 200ft, and serve as the primary means of ingress/egress for a minimum of four (4) homes, dwellings or

commercial structures. If a street meets these two requirements, a citizen can request the street be named by submitting a written request to the County Planning Office. The request must include the proposed street name along with the signatures of at least fifty-one (51%) of the affected property owners signing in agreement to the proposed name. A public hearing is then scheduled to discuss the proposed street name. At least 10 days before the hearing, a notice of the subject matter should be posted in the county courthouse, in at least two places, usually at the beginning and end of the street, and a notice is published in the local newspaper for general circulation within the county. The commissioners will grant final approval of the new name.

2.1.3 Addressing Coordinator Responsibilities

An Addressing Coordinator shall be appointed at both the New Hanover County & City of Wilmington.

The Addressing Coordinator will/shall be responsible for overseeing street naming and address assignment in accordance with the guidelines outlined in this document. The naming of all streets shall be subject to the approval of the City Council or New Hanover County Board of Commissioners.

It shall be the duty of the Addressing Coordinator to maintain maps or listings of the official names of the streets within the City/County as they may now exist or may be extended or renamed by the City Council or Board of Commissioners.

It shall be the duty of the Addressing Coordinator from time to time to review the official street names of the city and recommend to the city/county manager and the City Council or Board of Commissioners any changes in names which he or she feels to be justified in order to permit clarity of street designation.

Based on his/her official record of street names, the Addressing Coordinator shall, as submitted, review street names submitted for new subdivisions or multi-unit developments to ensure that new street names are not duplicates of names already used.

From his/her official record, the Addressing Coordinator from time to time shall issue listings of official street names for use by the various departments of the city/county and other interested persons and agencies.

2.1.4 Official Street Naming Authority in the City of Wilmington, NC: Current City of Wilmington Code of Ordinances designates the City Address Coordinator with primary responsibility for assigning and maintaining addresses and new street names.

Reference: City of Wilmington Code of Ordinances (Chapter 11, Article 1, Sec 11-10), (Chapter 11, Article 1, Section 11-30)

2.1.5 Official Street Naming Authority in New Hanover County, NC: The Planning Department is responsible for street name information. The Planning Department is authorized to assign and rename streets within the unincorporated portions of New Hanover County. The New Hanover County Commissioners grant final approval on all new and changed street names.

Reference: New Hanover County Code of Ordinances (Ch. 47, Art. IV, Sec. 47-102)

2.2 BASIC GUIDELINES TO FOLLOW WHEN NAMING A STREET

2.2.1 Min Length - Street names must be a minimum of three (3) characters in length.

2.2.2 Max-Length – Full Street names, including suffix and optional directionals should be limited to a maximum of twenty-four (24) characters in length.

2.2.3 No Special Characters - Street names should avoid the use of special characters, such as hyphens, apostrophes, or periods in the spelling of the name.

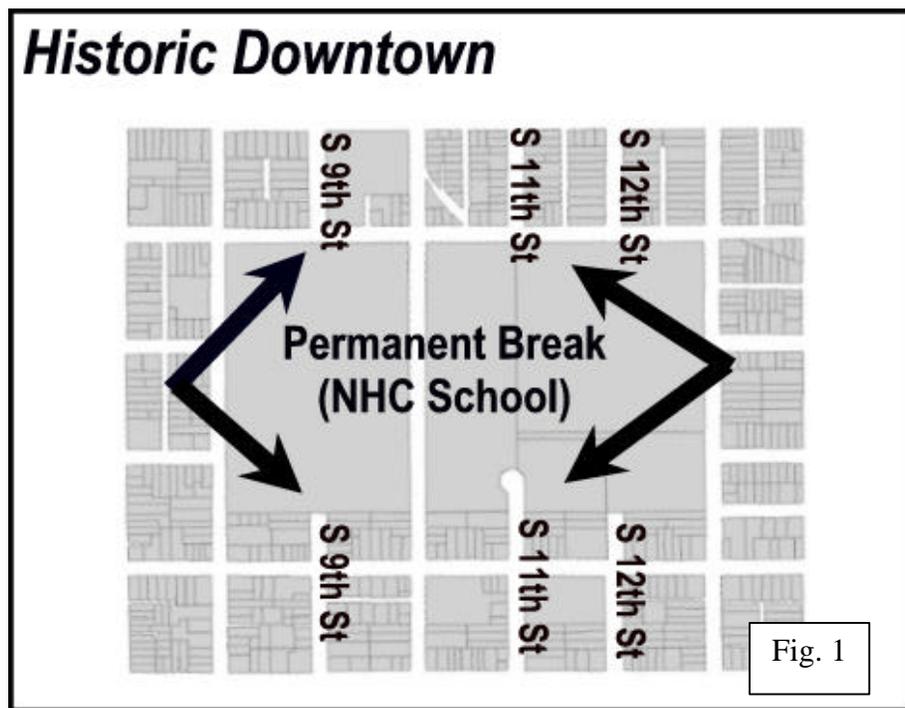
2.2.4 No Directional Names - Street names should avoid the use of words or syllables that might be confused with directional or street type designations. (i.e. Northglen Dr, or Circle Dr).

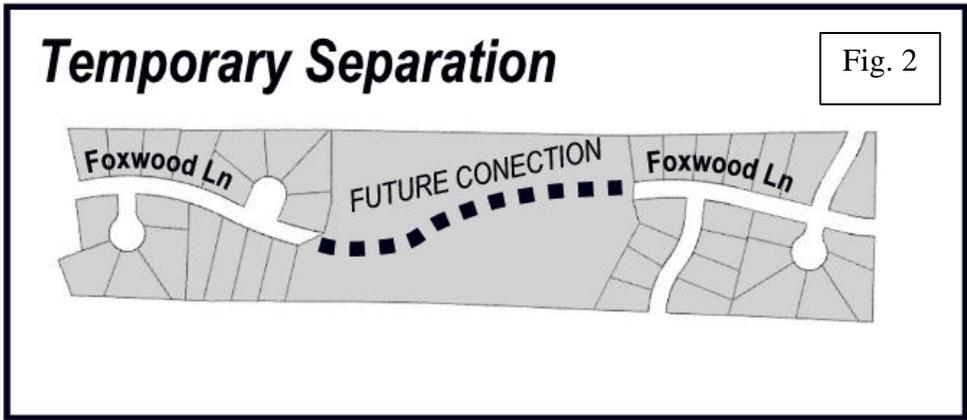
2.2.5 No Same Names - Street names shall not be duplicated. All street names within New Hanover County must be unique. A street name is considered to be a duplicate if any of the following conditions exist:

Same Names/Different Suffixes - Two streets have the same name, but two different suffixes, are still considered a duplicate street. (i.e. Oak Ln, Oak Ave)

Same Sounding Names - A street name sounds similar phonetically to the name of another street, despite differences in spelling, is still considered a duplicate street. (i.e. Beach Ave & Beech Ave, Main St & Maine St, Apple Rd & Apple Hill Rd)

2.2.6 Continuous Streets Must Not Have Breaks - Streets with the same name must be continuous and not have permanent breaks in them. In special cases they can have breaks if they are part of the *Historic Downtown* (Fig 1.) numeric blocks, or they are in a state of *Temporary Separation* (Fig 2. next page) as new phases of subdivisions are being built.



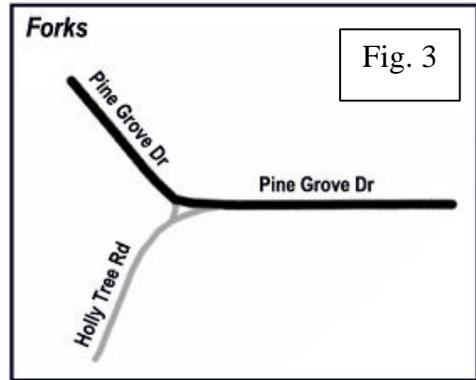


2.2.7 Numeric Names - Numeric street names should end with the appropriate numeric format for the particular number, (i.e. 54th, 23rd, 2nd, etc.) and *NOT* textual format (Fifty-Fourth, Twenty-Third, or Second).

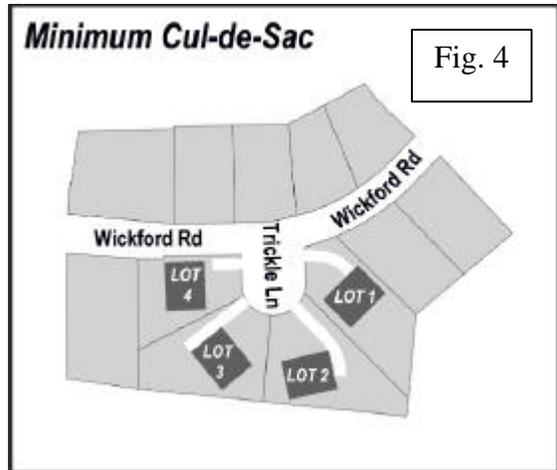
2.2.8 Street Names Vs. Route Numbers - U.S., state and local route numbers are secondary to the names that have been given to the streets. (i.e. US 17 is secondary to Market St.)

2.3 NAMING SITUATIONS TO CONSIDER (SPECIFIC TRAFFIC PATTERNS)

2.3.1 Forks - Names should be assigned based on traffic patterns. (i.e. When a street forks into two streets, the fork with the higher traffic volume should continue the same name. See Fig. 3)



2.3.2 *Cul-de-sacs (Rule Exception) - Cul-de-sacs are extended streets with a wide circular turn-a-round at their ends, and provide access to at least 4 or more lots facing the cul-de-sac (See Fig. 4). A cul-de-sac must be named if it serves 4 or more homes or dwellings, regardless of street length. Any cul-de-sac that provides direct access to 3 or less homes or dwellings must be addressed off of the adjacent street.



2.3.3 Loops - A continuous named street may loop back and terminate on itself. A continuous named street *May Not* loop back and cross over itself creating a situation where the same street name is shared by both intersecting streets (See Fig. 5).

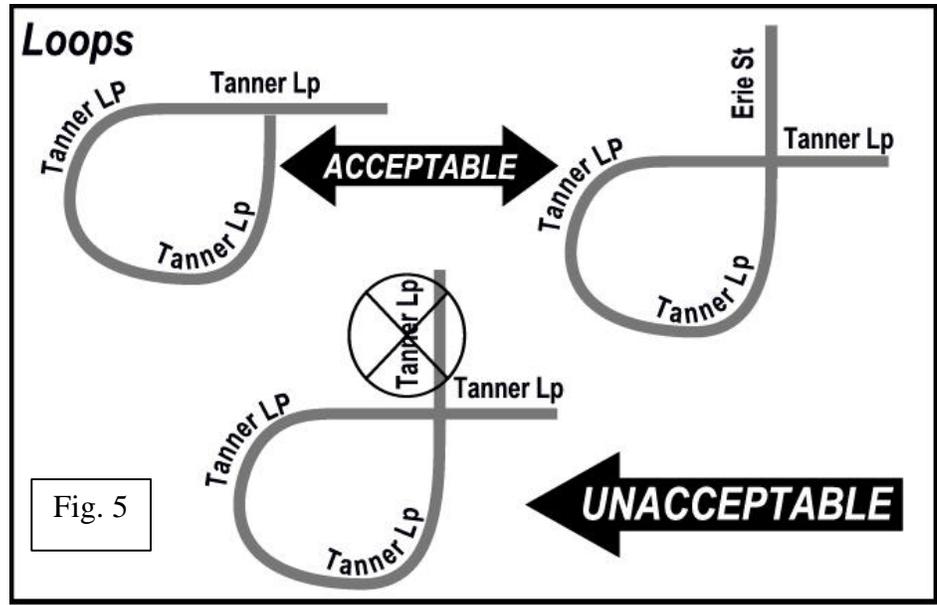


Fig. 5

2.3.4 Continuous Streets Passing Through New Subdivisions – Continuous Streets passing from one existing subdivision to a new one should continue the same name (See Fig 6).

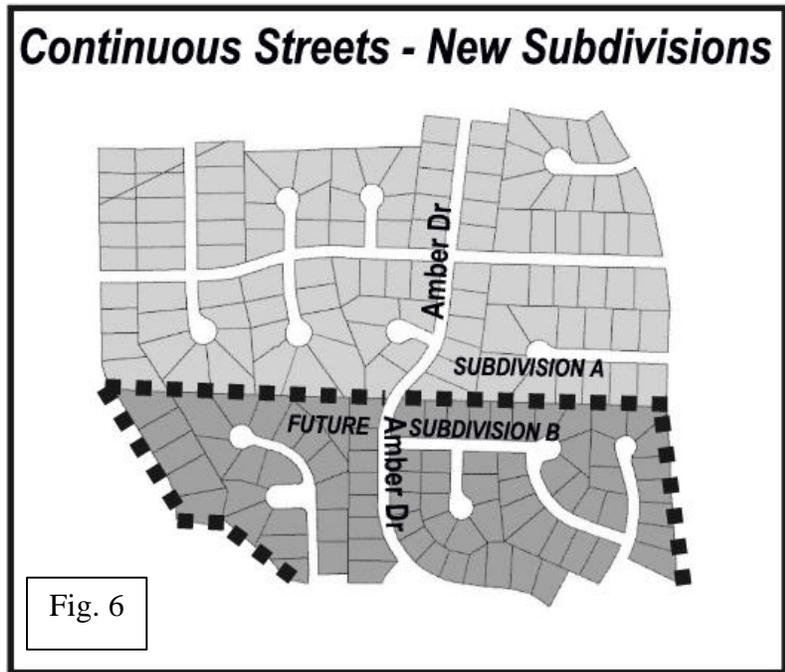


Fig. 6

2.3.5 Continuous Streets Passing Through Intersections - Streets with the same alignment and passing through *minor intersections* (See Fig. 7) should assume the same name. However, continuous street names *CAN* change, if the street crosses one of these defined arterial roads at a *major intersection* (See Fig 8 next page).

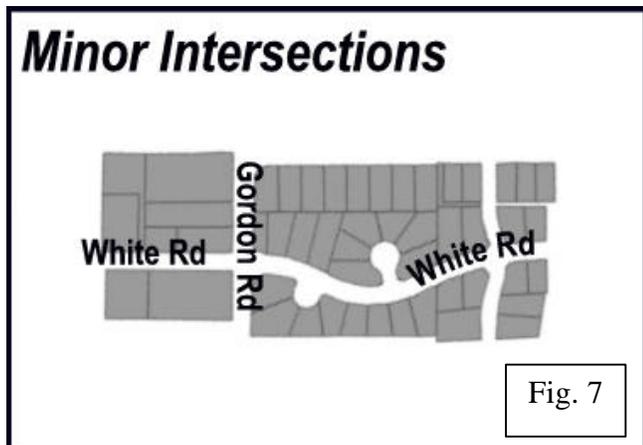
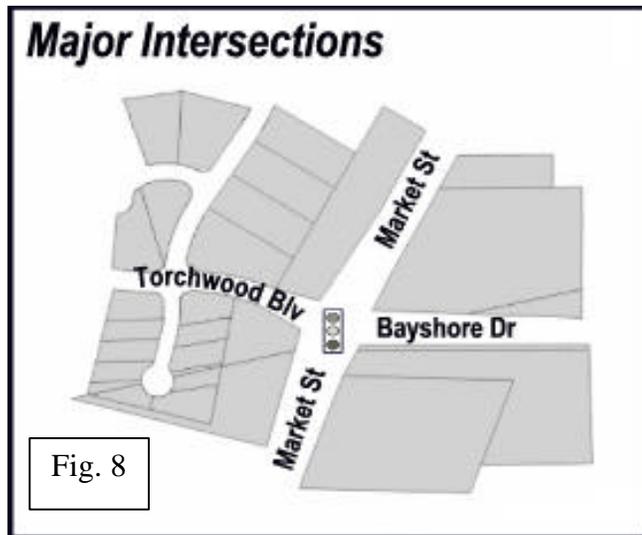


Fig. 7

Defined Arterial Roads:

Eastwood Rd
Oleander Dr
College Rd
Wrightsville Ave
Blue Clay Rd
Kerr Ave
Castle Hayne Rd
US HWY 421
Carolina Beach Rd
Shipyard Blvd
River Rd
Myrtle Grove Rd
Masonboro Loop Rd
Independence Blvd
Piner Rd
Gordon Rd
Market St.



2.4 WHEN TO ASSIGN A STREET SUFFIX

A street suffix (type) should be assigned to any official named street using one of the street type definitions listed below. A street name with any suffix other than one listed below will be considered to have a null or absent street type. For example, “Whistler Trace,” “Wellington Glen,” and “Knobby Hollow,” would all be considered street names with null types.

2.4.1 Street Suffix Usage Guide

Street suffixes shall be selected from the list below and on next page:

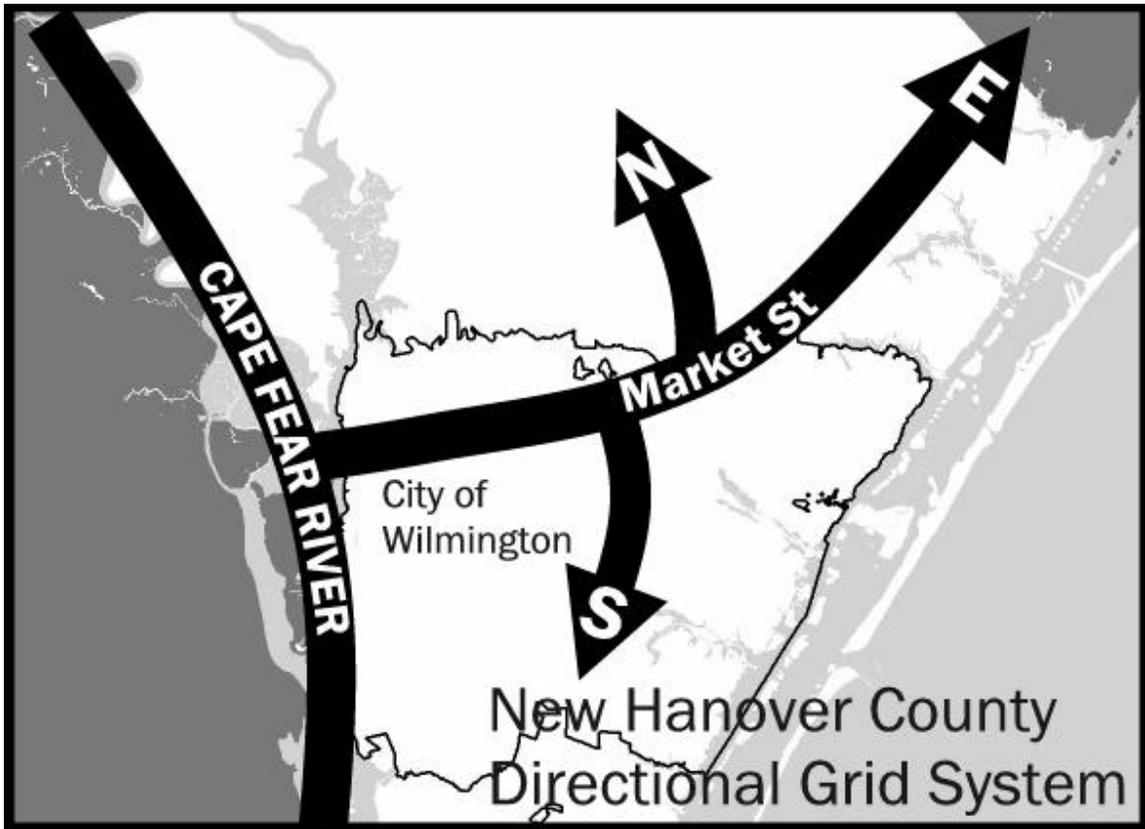
Abbreviation	Represents	Description when to Use *
ALY	ALLEY	A right-of-way, substandard in width, designed to bisect a block for pedestrians or service vehicles, such as garbage collection and delivery trucks. No permanent parking will be allowed in alleys.
AVE	AVENUE	A street more than 1,000 feet in length.
BLV	BOULEVARD	A street divided by a landscaped median.
CIR	CIRCLE	A street less than 1000' in length that returns to itself.
CT	COURT	A cul-de-sac or permanent dead-end road.
DR	DRIVE	A curvilinear street of more than 1,000 feet in length.
HWY	HIGHWAY	A State, Inter-State, or US Highway distinction
LN	LANE	A curvilinear street of less than 1,000 feet in length.
LP	LOOP	A street that loops around and terminates on itself.
PKY	PARKWAY	A special scenic route or park drive.
PL	PLACE	A cul-de-sac or permanent dead-end road.
PLZ	PLAZA	A multi-use road with businesses and homes.
PT	POINT	A road that is adjacent to a waterway.
RD	ROAD	A street more than 1,000 feet in length.
ROW	ROW	No existing specifications
RUN	RUN	No existing specifications
ST	STREET	A street more than 1,000 feet in length.
TER	TERRACE	A curvilinear street of more than 1,000 feet in length.
TRL	TRAIL	A street serving as a collector for one or more local thoroughfares
WAY	WAY	A curvilinear street of less than 1,000 feet in length.
WLK	WALK	A pedestrian walkway that has been named.

2.5 WHEN TO ASSIGN A STREET DIRECTION

A Directional is an option only for streets that are both exceptionally long (10+ Blocks) and cross the predetermined North/South and East/West Grid Streets in New Hanover County. Minor exceptions may be granted for opposing cul-de-sacs only.

2.6 BASIC GUIDELINES TO FOLLOW WHEN ASSIGNING STREET DIRECTIONALS

2.6.1 Directional Grid System for Wilmington and New Hanover County (Preferred Choice) - The Cape Fear River and Market Street shall be the base lines for the purpose of numbering houses and buildings under the provisions of this section. Each street running east and west, or substantially in that course, shall, for the purpose of numbering under this section, have its beginning at the east line of the Cape Fear River, the numbering to begin at this initial point with the number one and ending with the number one hundred (100) at the west line of Front Street, then beginning with the east line of Front Street with the number one hundred and one (101), and increasing eastwardly, in like manner, to the corporate limits of the city as they now exist or may hereafter be extended. Each street running north and south, or substantially in that course, shall, for the purpose of numbering under this section, begin at the north and south side of Market Street, as the case may be, with number one, increasing, in the manner provided in subsection (h), north and south from such initial point to the corporate limits of the city, as they now exist or may hereafter be extended.



2.6.2 Directional Abbreviations - Abbreviations must be used for the directionals and they can only be these options:

- North = N
- South = S
- East = E
- West = W

2.6.3 No 45 Degree Directionals - Northeast, Northwest, Southeast, and Southwest are not to be used as directionals.

2.6.4 Must Have Directionals in Pairs - If a North Directional is used, then a South Directional must also be used for clarity. The same applies with East and West.

2.6.5 *Facing Cul-de-sacs (Rule Exception) – Only cul-de-sacs that face each other have the option of having a pair of directionals (N-S, or E-W). If Directionals are used for opposing cul-de-sacs there must be signs on both cul-de-sacs indicating the directional on the sign.

2.7 WHEN A STREET MUST BE RE-NAMED

If a planned or existing street is detrimental to public safety and welfare or does not meet the requirements specified in this document, it can be renamed at the discretion of the City of Wilmington Development Services Dept., or the New Hanover County Planning Dept. and with the approval of the City Council or County Commissioners.

2.7.1 Official Street Renaming Process in the City of Wilmington, NC: The process of naming or renaming any existing street or alley in the City of Wilmington is defined in a Resolution dated June 17, 2003. This process is described in Section 2.1.1 (Description of Street Naming Process) of this document

2.7.2 Official Street Renaming Process In New Hanover County, NC: *A street renaming request is submitted to the County Planning Department by staff or by a citizen or a group of citizens.* - A citizen can change a street name by submitting a written request to the County Planning Office. The request must include the proposed street name along with the signatures of at least fifty-one (51%) of the affected property owners. After submission the proposed name is reviewed for compliance to addressing standards. If compliant, a public hearing is then scheduled to discuss the proposed street name. At least 10 days before the hearing, a notice of the subject matter should be posted in the county courthouse, in at least two places, usually at the beginning and end of the street, and a notice is published in the local newspaper for general circulation within the county. The commissioners must grant final approval of the new name.

The County Planning Department determines that an existing name or condition is detrimental to public safety and welfare. The County Planning Department notifies all adjacent property owners of the proposed street name change. A public hearing is then scheduled to discuss the proposed street name. At least 10 days before the hearing, a notice of the subject matter should be posted in the county courthouse, in at least two places, usually at the beginning and end of the street, and a notice is published in the local newspaper for general circulation within the county. The commissioners will grant final approval of the new name.

2.7.3 Official Street Renaming Authority in the City of Wilmington, NC: The City Address Coordinator is designated with the authority to rename existing streets within the City of Wilmington.

Reference: "RESOLUTION AMENDING CITY POLICY FOR NAMING AND RENAMING STREETS OR ALLEYS", adopted by the Wilmington City Council on June 17, 2003

2.7.4 Official Street Renaming Authority in New Hanover County, NC: The Planning Department is responsible for street name information. The Planning Department is authorized to assign and rename streets within the unincorporated portions of New Hanover County. The New Hanover County Commissioners grant final approval on all new and changed street names.

2.8 BASIC GUIDELINES TO FOLLOW WHEN RENAMING STREETS

2.8.1 Street Renaming Priority - When having to rename one of the streets with similar names consider the following circumstances:

Largest Impact - In most cases, the street with the larger number of homes, dwellings, or commercial structures along the roadway should have priority and retain the name in order to minimize the number of people affected.

Oldest Street - When renaming either of the two streets will have an equal impact, the street that has been consistently signed for the longest period of time should retain the name.

Historical Significance - In some cases, the street with a name of historical significance should retain the disputed name.

2.9 RENAMING SITUATIONS TO CONSIDER

2.9.1 Street Closures - If a portion of an existing street is to be permanently closed, by the installation of barriers or the removal of pavement. Two permanent separate street segments with the same name would result. In this situation one of the two street segments should be renamed. Two Street Closing scenarios are described below:

For a Petition Closing - It is recommended that if the street closing was done by petition, the petitioning neighborhood's street should be the street that is renamed.

Staff, Council, or Commissioner Initiated Closing - If not a petition closing, then it is recommended that the street segment with the lesser number homes, dwellings, or commercial structures along the roadway should be renamed in order to minimize the number of impacted property owners.

3. STREET NUMBERING/ADDRESSING ASSIGNMENT

3.0.1 Introduction

The rules and guidelines in this section are designed to facilitate the proper assignment of addresses to properties for every possible addressing scenario that occurs in New Hanover County. Properties and structures must be assigned addresses in a logical, easy to understand manner in order to help citizens and emergency personnel quickly locate people, places and events.

3.0.2 Key Terms

Units – Units are property address identifiers that are used to divide a single numeric address into identifiable subsets for location purposes.

Cul-de-sac -They are extended streets with a wide circular turn-a-round at their ends and only one outlet, they provide access to 4 or more lots.

3.1 WHEN TO ASSIGN ADDRESSES NUMBERS

When the proper governing body has approved a new street, it must be assigned an address range and each individual property, habitable, and/or substantial structure assigned numbers in accordance with the standards defined in this document. Addresses should not be assigned to structures that are simply accessory to another building or insubstantial in nature.

3.1.1 Street Addressing Process in the City of Wilmington, NC: Address block ranges will be assigned to streets shown on approved preliminary plans. Individual physical addresses must be assigned to lots and/or structures prior to approval of final plan.

3.1.2 Street Addressing Process in New Hanover County, NC: *In a newly planned project, a developer proposes construction of a new street.* In this situation a plan is submitted to the County Planning Department for review. As part of the development review process the County Planning Department will assign a street address range to all newly proposed streets following the rules of this document.

3.1.3 Official Street Addressing Authority in the City of Wilmington, NC: It shall be the duty of the [addressing coordinator] under the general supervision of the city manager and in accordance with the general direction of the City Council to prepare and maintain street address numbering maps of the city and, when a new building is built, or for any reason a number is required, to issue such number upon the request of the owner. It shall be the duty of the [addressing coordinator] from time to time, and upon request, to review street number assignments, resolve conflicts in numbers, reassign numbers or propose any changes which, in his opinion, are necessary.

3.1.4 Official Street Addressing Authority in New Hanover County, NC: It shall be the duty of the planning department, in accordance with the general direction of the county commissioners, to prepare, record, and maintain road address numbering in the county: and when a new house, building or mobile/manufactured home is completed, or for any reason a number is required, to issue such number upon request of the owner.

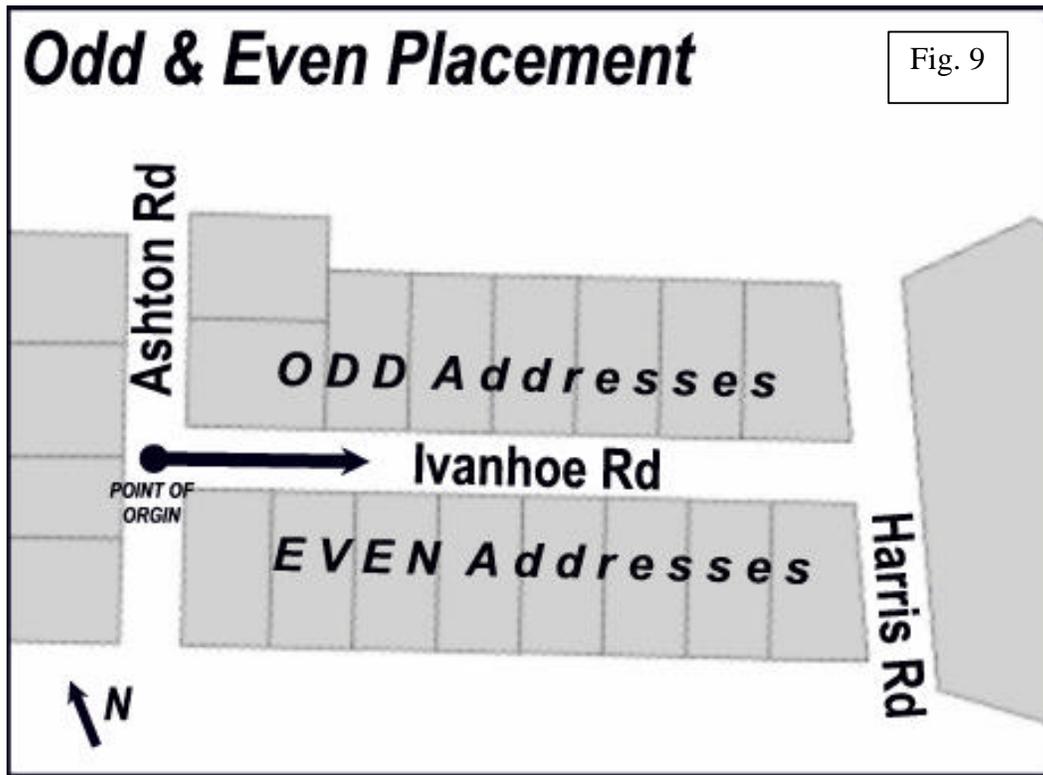
3.2 BASIC GUIDELINES TO FOLLOW WHEN NUMBERING/ADDRESSING STREETS

3.2.1 The New Hanover County Grid Numbering System

East/West Methods for Numbering Streets – Each street running west to east or substantially in that course shall, have its beginning along a route as identified in the NHC Directional Grid Section, the numbering to begin with the 100 block and increasing eastwardly to a new block where the new block begins at each new intersection or every 800 feet not to exceed 1,000 feet nor less then 300 feet unless the distance between the two intersection street is less then 300 feet.

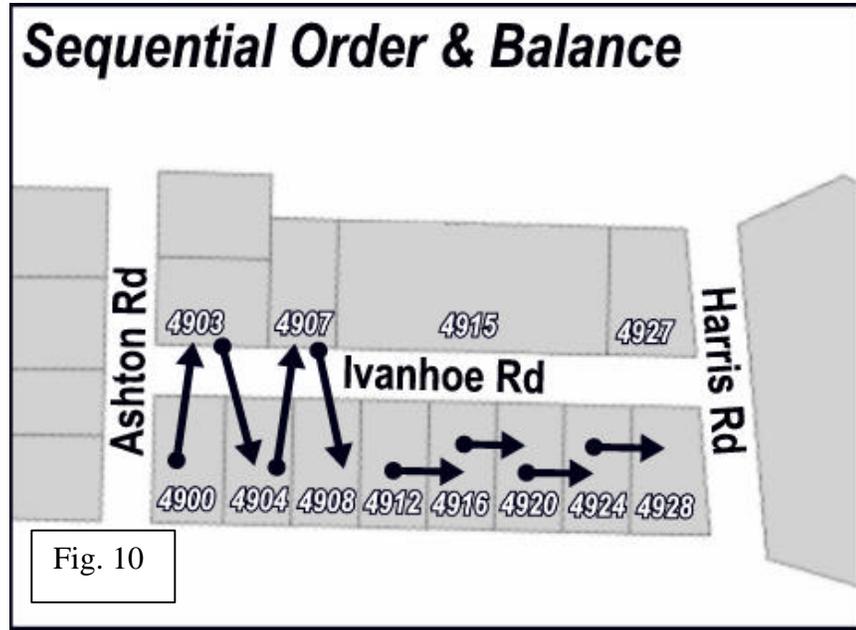
North/South Methods for Numbering Streets – Each street running north to south or substantially in that course shall, for the purpose of numbering under this section, have its beginning along a route as identified in the NHC Directional Grid Section, the north and south side of Market Street, the numbering to begin with the 100 block and increasing north or south of such street.

3.2.2 Placement of odd and even numbers – Even numbers shall be placed on the right hand side of the street and odd numbers on the left hand side of the street from the point of origin (See Fig 9), as dedicated in the NHC Directional Grid Section.



3.2.3 Addresses in Sequential Order –

All addresses need to be in sequential numeric order, always increasing from the point of origin, and should numerically balance on both sides of the street (See Fig. 10).



3.2.4 Numbers Only – Only Numbers can be used to address streets. No fractionals or decimals are to be used.

3.3 ADDRESS SPACING

3.3.1 The Basic Process of Address Spacing - The spacing of addresses between buildings will depend on the development and density of the area. Zoning, Historical Areas, Business Corridors, and Residential Areas affect the addresses spacing greatly. When determining a street's address spacing and address assignment the following process must occur:

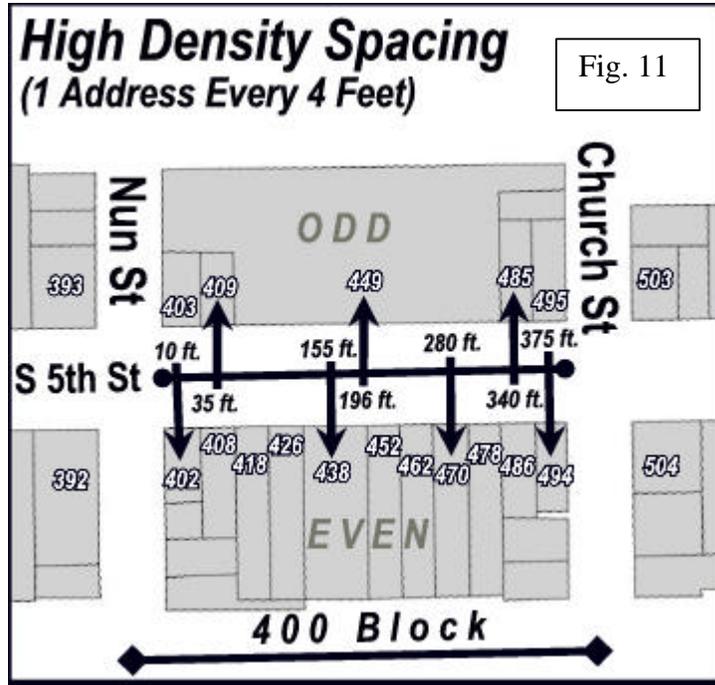
- I.** Define the address spacing for an entire road or individual building and choose its **Addressing Interval (A. I.)**.
- II.** Break the street into addressing sections or addressing blocks. There are 100 addresses possible per block, but only 50 even and odd addresses on each side.
- III.** Measure the **Distance (D)** from the beginning of the block to the front of the building(s) along the street.
- III.** Next, use the equation below to achieve an **Addressing Occurrence (A. O.)** for the property(s) involved.

$$\text{Distance} / \text{Address Interval} = \text{Addressing Occurrence}$$
$$D / (A. I.) = (A. O.)$$

- IV.** The next step is to take the resulting **Addressing Occurrence** and round it to the nearest odd or even number depending on which side of the street the property is being addressed.

V. The final step is to take the rounded number and add it to the block number to achieve the **Final Address (F. A.)** for the building.

When considering address spacing use the following spacing definitions:



3.3.2 High Density Spacing - Most of Historical Downtown Wilmington, High Density Residential, and along the business corridors (See Fig. 11) have an address interval of **1 Address Every 4 Feet**.

Examples from Fig. 11:

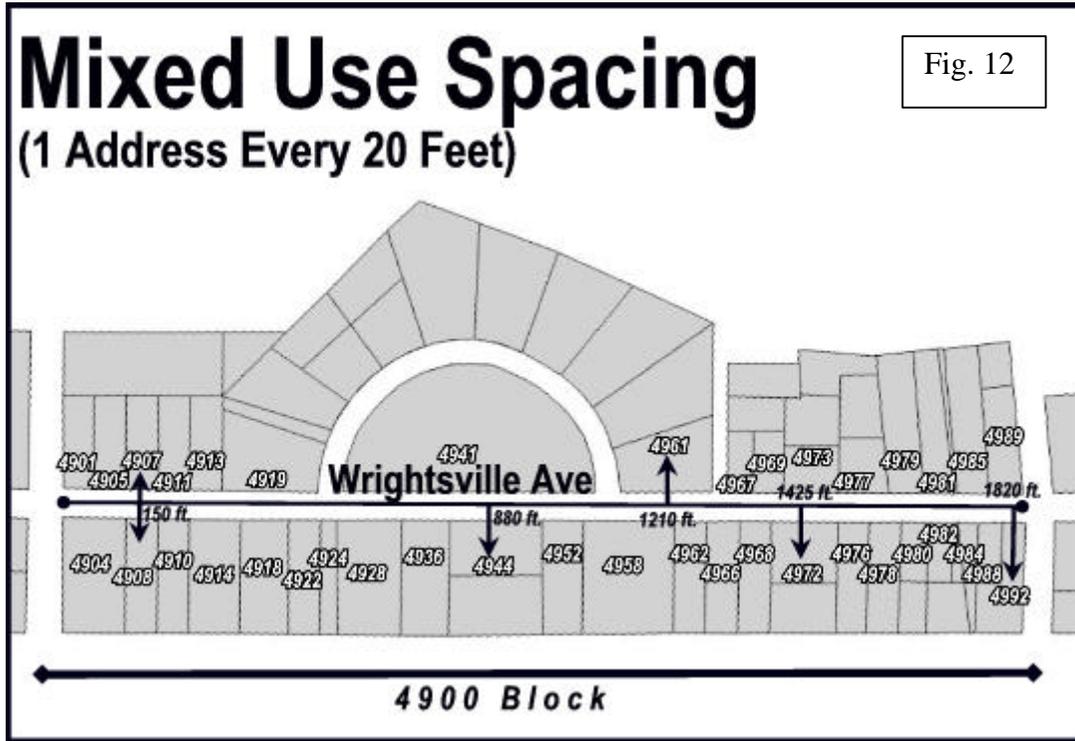
For 402 S 5th Street: 10 ft. (Distance) / 4 (Address Interval) = 2.5 (Addressing Occurrence)
Round 2.5 to 2 since the address is on the **EVEN** side and add it to the **400** block = **402** (Final Address)

For 409 S 5th Street: 35 ft. (Distance) / 4 (Address Interval) = 8.75 (Addressing Occurrence)
Round 8.75 to 9 since the address is on the **ODD** side and add it to the **400** block = **409** (Final Address)

For 470 S 5th Street: 280 ft. (D) / 4 (A.I.) = 70 (A. O.)
No need to Round 70 and since the address is on the **EVEN** side add it to the **400** block = **470** (F.A.)

For 485 S 5th Street: 340 ft. (D) / 4 (A. I.) = 85 (A. O.)
No need to Round 85 and since the address is on the **ODD** side add it to the **400** block = **485** (F. A.)

3.3.3 Mixed Use Spacing – Areas that have high to medium density residential areas, minor business groupings, and mixed-use areas (See Fig. 12) have an address interval of **1 Address Every 20 Feet**.



Examples from Fig. 12:

For 4907 Wrightsville Ave.: 150 ft. (Distance) / 20 (Address Interval) = 7.5 (Addressing Occurrence)
Round 7.5 to 7 since the address is on the **ODD** side and add it to the **4900** block = **4907** (Final Address)

For 4908 Wrightsville Ave.: 150 ft. (Distance) / 20 (Address Interval) = 7.5 (Addressing Occurrence)
Round 7.5 to 8 since the address is on the **EVEN** side and add it to the **4900** block = **4908** (Final Address)

For 4944 Wrightsville Ave.: 880 ft. (D) / 20 (A. I.) = 44 (A. O.)
No need to Round **44** and since the address is on the **EVEN** side add it to the **4900** block = **4944** (F.A.)

For 4961 Wrightsville Ave.: 1210 ft. (D.) / 20 (A. I.) = 61.5 (A. O.)
Round **61.5** to **61** since the address is on the **ODD** side and add it to the **4900** block = **4961** (F. A.)

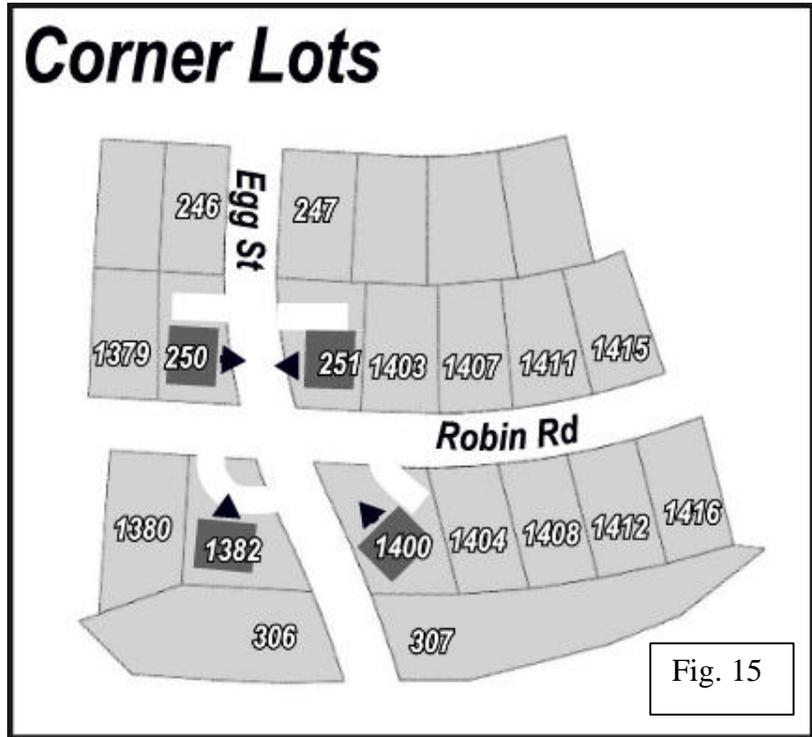
3.3.4 Residential Spacing - Single-family homes mostly in defined subdivisions also have **1 Address Every 20 Feet**.

3.3.5 Rural and Forest Lands Spacing – Areas that have sparse housing, farmland, and/or undeveloped land have a high potential for future development. They should be spaced like Mixed Use or Residential Spacing with **1 Address Every 20 Feet**.

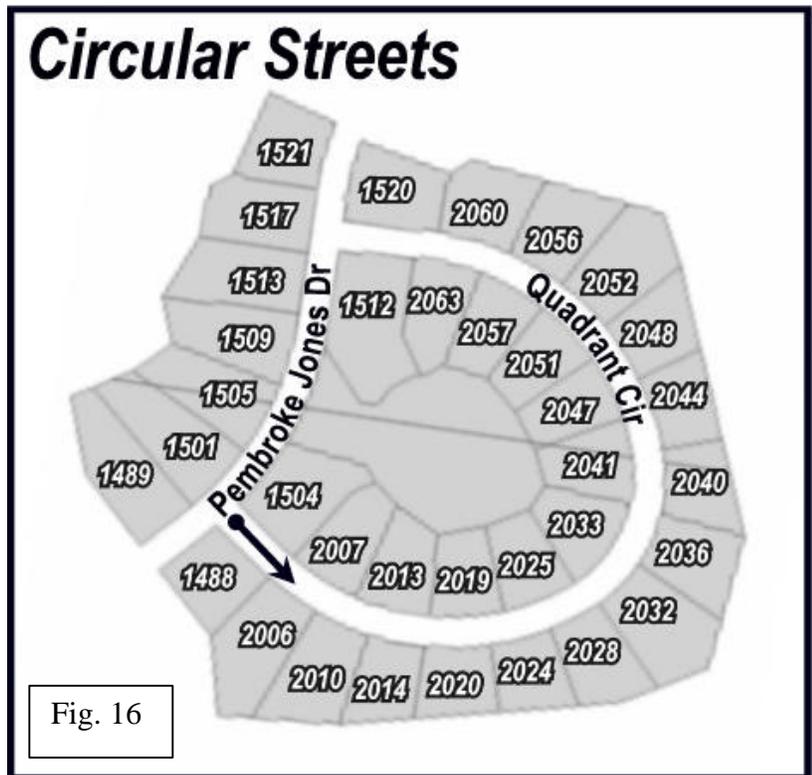
3.4 STREET ADDRESSING SITUATIONS TO CONSIDER

3.4.1 Addressing Corner Lots – Primary Option - When assigning an address to a building on a corner lot, assign a number from the street upon which the front entrance faces.

***Rule Exception** - An address can be assigned based on the side road location in situations where the front entrance of the building is obscured or building frontage is difficult to distinguish. (See Fig. 15).



3.4.2 Addressing Circular Streets - Circular streets should begin addressing at the lowest numbered intersection. The outside of the circle should be numbered first. Next, the inside is then numbered to match with the outside. This may result, in some cases, with fewer numbers on the inside and with some gaps in the inside numbers (See Fig 16).



3.4.3 Addressing Cul-de-sacs –

The numbering should begin from the intersection. Once in the cul-de-sac, numbers proceed odd around the left side of the circle, and even around the right side of the circle. When a building occurs in the middle of the circle, assign a number in a way that best fits, such as according to where the front door faces, or where the driveway ends up on the circle (See Fig. 17).

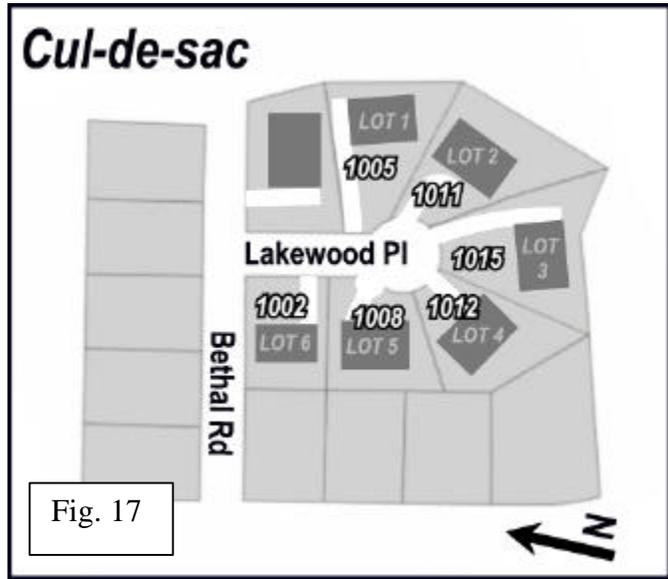


Fig. 17

3.4.4 Adding Garage Apartments, Additions, & Mobile Homes to Single Properties –

If an addition (Garage Apartments, Additions, and Mobile Homes) is added to a single-family property it should be given a new address off of the street (Example 1, Fig. 18). If there are no addresses left to assign, a Unit Letter may be assigned to the additional building(s) on that property as a last resort (Example 2, Fig 18). If many Unit Letter additional addresses need to be added to multiple properties on that street then readdressing of the entire block should be strongly considered.

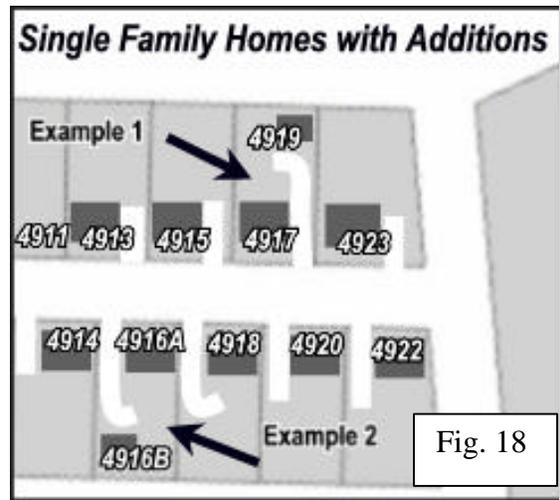


Fig. 18

3.4.5 Addressing Family Streets –

In some cases, families build additional dwellings on a single property. In the cases where there are four (4) or more homes, or dwellings, AND they are at least 200ft down a passable driveway off of the road, and serves as the primary means of ingress and egress, that driveway must be named and address numbers assigned in accordance to the rules in this document and in anticipation of possible future changes (See Fig. 19).

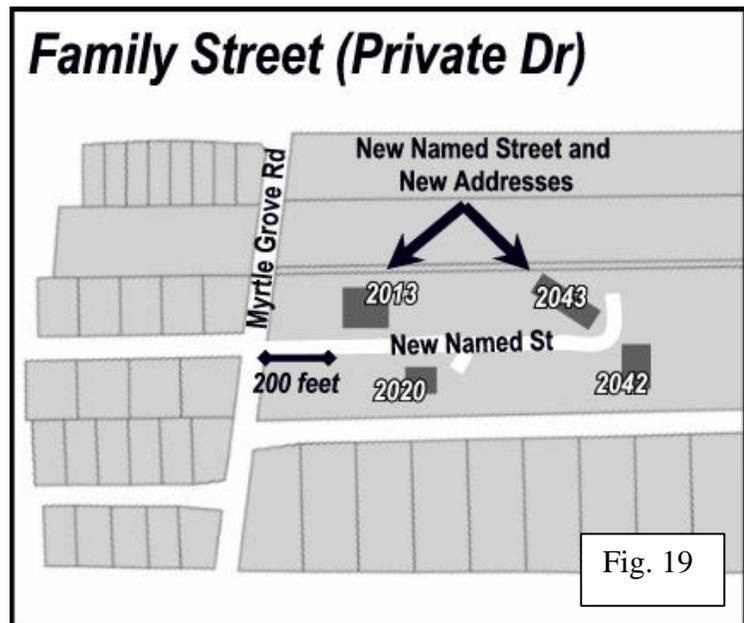
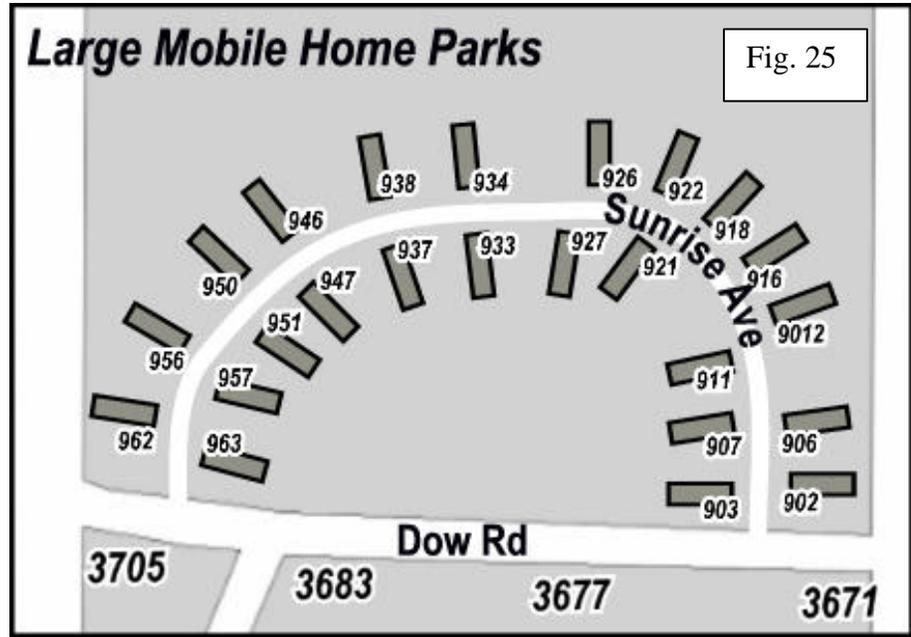


Fig. 19

3.4.6 Addressing Mobile Home Parks – The road into the Mobile Home Park should be named and Addressed in accordance with single family/high density guidelines with 1 address every 4 feet. (See Fig 25 and Fig 11 for address spacing).



3.4.7 Addressing Duplexes – Duplexes are given two separate addresses with adequate spacing between buildings. If there is no more space between properties then a Unit Letter can be assigned to both residences. Example: 302A Walnut Street, and 302B Walnut Street.

3.4.8 Addressing Single Level Condominiums – Condominiums are treated as separate property and are addressed as if they were individual addresses along a street.

3.4.9 Addressing Multi-Level Condominiums - If they are multi-level condominiums then they must be addressed like Apartment Complexes (see *Apartment Complexes* in sections 3.5.2-3.5.4).

3.5 ADDRESSING APARTMENT COMPLEXES

Apartment complexes come in many shapes and sizes. When addressing an apartment complex use one of the following scenarios below as a guide:

3.5.1 Addressing Single Level Apartments – Single level apartments are treated as if they were separate property and are addressed as if they were individual addresses along the street.

3.5.2 Addressing Multi-Level Apartments on Named Streets – This is the strongly preferred method for addressing multi-level apartments. When apartment buildings are situated on a single street or a group of distinct streets in the complex, then the street(s) should be named and the apartment buildings addressed off of the new street(s) as if each were a single home on that street, following the standards for numbering streets in accordance to the rules in this document. For Unit Numbering methods for apartments in each building refer to section 3.5.3, Fig. 22, and Fig.23.

3.5.3 Unit Numbering for Multi-Level Apartments on Named Streets - One of the following methods should be used when defining the Units for the Named Street Apartments:

All Number Units - The Units can then be numbered with 100 ranges defining the floor level and the 1-99 defining the unit location on that floor. Example Address (See Fig 22): 1220 Cardinal St., 3rd Floor (300), and Apartment 7. The Address would be **1220 Cardinal St., Unit 307**.

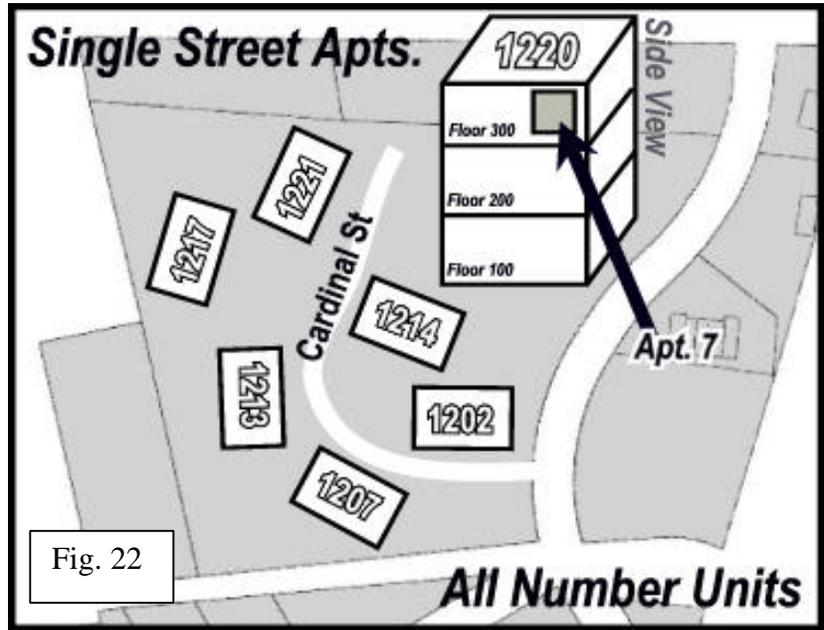


Fig. 22

3.5.4 Addressing Multi-Level Apartments on Private Streets – This is the least desirable method of addressing apartments and are only to be used as a last resort when the apartment roads are unable to be named. When apartment complexes have multiple indistinct access ways, unnamed streets, and parking lots they should be addressed based on an addressing hierarchy of one *Main Street Locator Address*, then the *Building Number*, and then *Apartment Unit Number*.

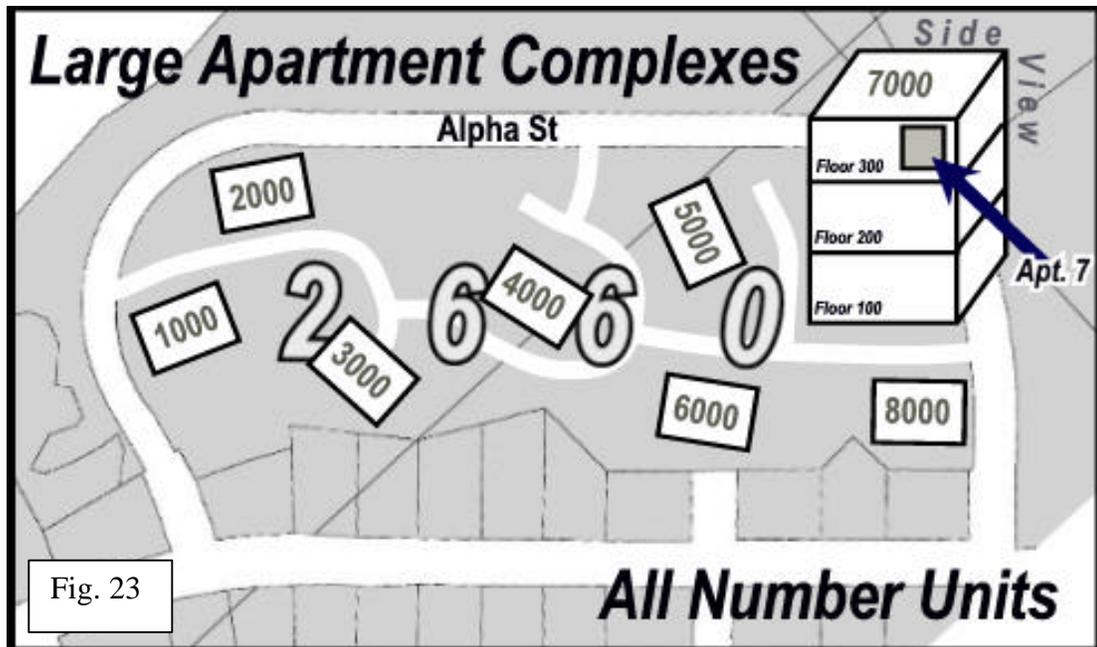


Fig. 23

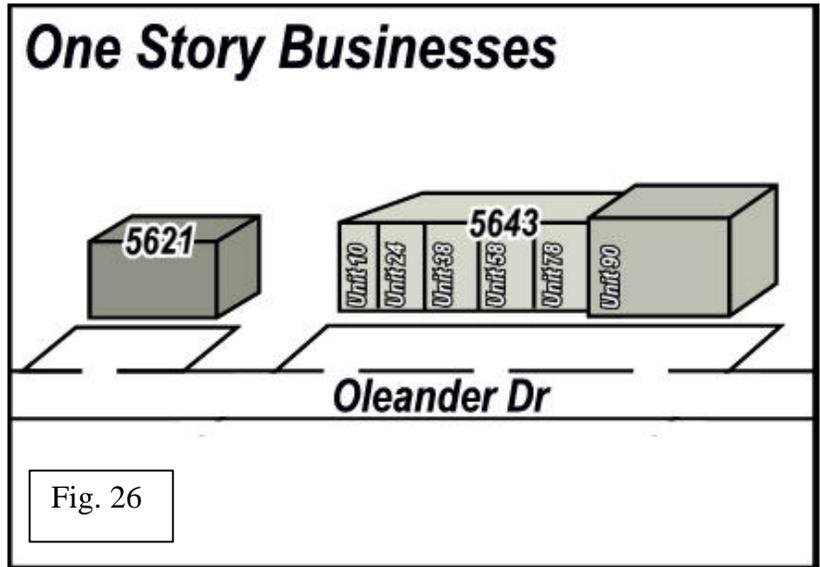
3.5.5 Unit Numbering for Multi-Level Apartments on Private Streets – The Apartment Units can be numbered with 100 ranges defining the floor level and the 1-99 defining the unit location on that floor (Preferred Methodology). Example Address (See Fig. 23): 2660 Alpha St., Building 7000, 3rd Floor (300), and Apartment 7. The Address would be **2660 Alpha St., Unit 7307**.

3.6 ADDRESSING MULTIPLE BUSINESSES

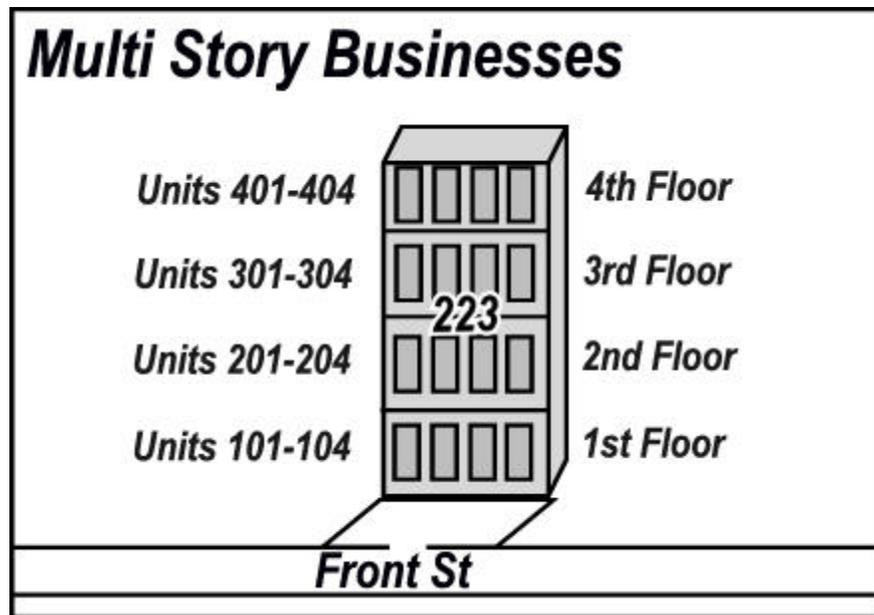
Businesses and Business Centers come in many shapes and sizes. Location is not only important for emergency situations but for customers as well. When addressing a business(s) use one of the following scenarios below as a guide:

3.6.1 Universal Business Addressing Rule – If there is an existing street, pathway, or entranceway with a length greater than 200ft, and serves as the primary means of ingress and egress for a minimum of three separate commercial structures then that street, pathway, or entranceway (even if it is private) should be named and addressed in accordance with the rules of this document

3.6.2 Addressing Single Level Businesses (Malls/Strip Malls) - If it is one building then it receives one street address, if the property contains separate buildings then they each receive a specific address (See Fig. 26). The Store(s) and/or Office(s) contained within these buildings are then assigned a Unit number 1-999. Extended spacing between addresses should be considered because of the ability for the Units to change tenants and be possibly subdivided over a short period of time.



3.6.3 Addressing Multi-Level Businesses (Office Buildings) – If it is one building then it receives one street address, if the property contains separate buildings then they each receive a specific address. Units within the building(s) are then addressed with the



assignment of Numbers or Letters. The Number system should be used to identify floor and individual units (See Fig. 27). 101-199 to be used for the first floor, 201-299 for the second floor, 301-399 for the third floor, and so forth until the building is fully addressed. Example of an address would be 2345 Market St., Unit 321 (Third Floor, Room 21).

3.7 WHEN A STREET MUST BE RENUMBERED

When the County/City responsible departments determine that renumbering a street is important to public safety and welfare, than it must be renumbered. In most cases, this involves adding additional addresses to an existing street, but there is no room between existing addresses to keep the street numbers in sequence. In order to maintain the integrity of the street system of New Hanover County the street must then be renumbered in accordance to the rules in this document and in anticipation of possible future changes.

3.7.1 Official Street Renumbering Process in the City of Wilmington, NC: It shall be the duty of the [addressing coordinator] from time to time, and upon request, to review street number assignments, resolve conflicts in numbers, reassign numbers or propose any changes which, in his opinion, are necessary. When due to conflicts, change in character or amount of occupancy of any block it becomes necessary to assign and reassign numbers within that block, the [addressing coordinator] shall prepare a map for the proposed renumbering of such area and submit this map to the City Manager and the City Council for their approval. Upon approval, it shall be the duty of the [addressing coordinator] to assign approved numbers to the owners and tenants of each building involved.

Reference: Sec 11-10, Wilmington City Code

3.7.2 Official Street Renumbering Process in New Hanover County, NC: *It shall be the duty of the planning department, from time to time and upon request, to resolve conflicts in numbering, reassign numbers or propose any changes which in their opinion are necessary and in accordance with G.S. 153A-240.* Individual numbers can be changed by the Planning Department and do not have to go through the process of a public hearing. For readdressing streets: The County Planning Department notifies all adjacent property owners of the proposed street numbering change. A public hearing is then scheduled to discuss the proposed street numbering. At least 10 days before the hearing, a notice of the subject matter should be posted in the county courthouse, in at least two places, usually at the beginning and end of the street, and a notice is published in the local newspaper for general circulation within the county. The commissioners will grant final approval of the renumbering.

3.7.3 Basic Guidelines to Follow When Renumbering a Street

When renumbering a street it must then be renumbered in accordance to the numbering rules in this document and in anticipation of possible future changes.

4. APPENDIX A – ELECTRONIC DATA ORGANIZATION AND MAINTENANCE STANDARDS

4.1 INTRODUCTION

Traditionally, addresses have been assigned and maintained in a wide variety of hardcopy formats including printed street maps, subdivision plans, project files, tabular lists, and many other forms. As our organizations have become more and more automated with the proliferation of computer systems, addresses have increasingly been entered into electronic databases. Addresses in these databases are often used as the primary key for identifying events such as customer accounts, project locations, crime incidents, work orders, and many others.

Over time, numerous address databases have been built to support many different applications on a variety of platforms. Unfortunately, there have been no uniform standards in place for how the addresses should be structured, stored, or referenced. As a result, multiple sources of essentially the same information were built which has resulted in operational inefficiency and poorly functioning databases.

The purpose of this standard is to define common electronic address specifications for Wilmington, New Hanover County, and associated jurisdictions to be used for managing address-related information digitally. A master address database shall be developed in accordance with these specifications. The master address database should be referenced when new street numbers are being assigned so that duplications are avoided.

The proposed master address database consists of a master street name table that contains a comprehensive list of all known streets in New Hanover County, and a master address table that contains a comprehensive list of all known physical addresses in New Hanover County. Any time an address is entered into any application, the address should be validated against the master street name/master address database for correctness (See Section **4.5 Address Point Dataset Model** for additional details).

4.2 ELECTRONIC ADDRESS CHARACTERISTICS

Electronic addresses are typically stored in two (2) principal formats:

4.2.1 Unique physical address represented as a point in GIS.

Example: 543 S MAPLE ST APT 21

Address points represent discrete entities such as homes or utility service connections. Point-based addressing is useful for preserving a one-to-one relationship between a unique address and its physical location.

4.2.2 Generalized linear address represented by centerlines with block-by-block address ranges in GIS.

Address ranges are useful for identifying approximate address locations, high and low block ranges, and address parity (left or right side of block).

The specifications outlined in the remainder of this document apply to unique physical addresses that can be represented as a point in GIS. To the degree possible, the electronic address standards for unique physical addresses should be consistent with those of the linear addressing model of the County E911 CAD system.

4.3 ELECTRONIC ADDRESS FORMAT

Electronic addresses should be consistently formatted across all databases that contain addresses. Individual electronic addresses in the master address database will contain the elements listed below:

Unique Identifier
Address Number
Address Sub-Number
Directional Prefix
Street Name
Street Type
Unit Type
Unit Number/Identifier
City Code

Example:

ADDR-ID	NUM	SUB NUM	DIR	STREET	TYPE	UTYPE	UNIT	CITY
12345	6002	1/2	N	MAPLE	AVE	STE	F	WM

Databases that contain address records should be structured in a similar manner such that records can be sorted, searched or grouped on any individual element. For consistency, all text item values should be capitalized.

Characteristics and descriptions of these elements follow. For additional details of each element, see *Address Point Dataset Model* section 4.5 later in this document.

4.3.1 Unique Identifier

When addresses are added to the master address table, a unique identifier will be assigned to each unique physical address record. The address id will be a sequential integer value and can be used as a key to link other database tables to the master address table. This is a required field in the master address table and may not be null.

4.3.2 Address Number

The address number (house number or street number) should consist entirely of numbers. Where fractional numbers or characters are required, the non-numeric portion shall be recorded in the address sub-number field. Example: 123-1/2 MAPLE ST. The address number is 123 and the sub-number is 1/2. The address number should not be null, however a 0 address number may be used to represent an unknown value.

4.3.3 Address Sub-Number

The Address sub-number will contain any fractional or character portion of the address number. Note that this is different than a unit, apartment, or suite number (see below).

4.3.4 Directional Prefixes

The standard directional prefix should always be abbreviated and shall not contain periods. Any directional references in a street name shall be stored as a directional prefix. By convention, only directional prefixes are allowed. Example: 138 MAPLE ST N will be stored as 138 N MAPLE ST, with N being the directional prefix.

Special Rules Governing Use of Directional Prefixes

In some instances, directions are commonly considered to be part of the street name. By convention, the electronic address standard will always abbreviate directionals and parse them into the directional prefix field unless one of the following conditions occurs:

A street name has two directions preceding a street name. In this instance, the first directional will be abbreviated and placed in the prefix field, and the second fully spelled. Example: W NORTH BEND RD

The street name itself is a direction. In this instance, the direction will not be abbreviated. Example: EAST AV

4.3.5 Street Name

Numeric street names shall be written using numbers rather than spelled out. For example, 1ST is to be used rather than FIRST. Numeric street names shall always include the "TH", "RD", "ST", or "ND" characters as part of the street name. For example, 12TH shall be used rather than 12.

Databases that contain street name data should restrict street name values to those names contained in the master street name table.

4.3.6 Street Type

Street types such as Street, Avenue, etc. should be always abbreviated and should not include periods.

4.3.7 Unit Type

Standard unit types such as apartment, suite, building etc. should always be abbreviated and should not include periods.

4.3.8 Unit Number

The unit number may contain any alphanumeric unit designator up to 5 characters. Examples might include:

<u>Number</u>	<u>Street</u>	<u>Type</u>	<u>Unit Type</u>	<u>Unit Number</u>
123	MARKET	ST	APT	5
"	"	"	STE	J
"	"	"	BLDG	1
"	"	"	FLOOR	2
"	"	"	UNIT	LOWER
"	"	"	UNIT	UPPER
"	"	"	UNIT	REAR
"	"	"	UNIT	FRONT

4.3.9 City Code

Each address shall be qualified with an appropriate city code to distinguish similar street names and addresses in different jurisdictions.

4.4 FUNCTIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ADDRESS MANAGEMENT AND ENTRY

This section provides a functional overview of the proposed address management system. An important distinction is made between address data management and address data entry.

Address data management refers to the task of building, validating, and maintaining a collection of all known physical addresses in the county. This task is within the purview of the master address database administrator(s).

Address data entry refers to the task of entering an address into any database or application that requires address information to be collected, such as a billing system or a work order management system. Ideally, this task should be limited to simply selecting a known address from the master list rather than allowing free-form entry of address information without any validation. Customer service representatives, dispatchers, or account clerks typically perform address data entry.

The master address database should be designed to accommodate address data management functions and address data entry functions.

4.4.1 Address Data Management

Address data management consists of 2 distinct but related processes: management of the master street name list and management of the master address list. The addresses in the master address list should only contain street names that are defined in the master street name list. For example, if there is an address in the master address table such as

ADDR-ID	NUM	SUB NUM	DIR	STREET	TYPE	UTYPE	UNIT	CITY
10101	6002	1/2	N	MAPLE	AVE	STE	F	WM

then there must be a street name in the master street name table as

STREET-ID	DIR	STREET	TYPE	CITY
20202	N	MAPLE	AVE	WM

where DIR, STREET, TYPE, AND CITY uniquely identify a street name.

Some of the desired functional features for entering and managing address information are described in more detail on the next page.

4.4.2 General Functionality for Street Name/Address Data Management

General functionality for street name/address data management should include:

Multi-user concurrent access for editing, querying, and reporting.

User-level security to control access rights for viewing and updating.

Drop-down lists should be utilized to the extent possible where attribute domain values have been defined. Manual entry of values not corresponding to defined attribute domains may be allowed, but the record should be flagged to indicate further validation should be performed on street name or address information.

Auto-suggest and auto-complete data values based on defined attribute domains.

Remote access to edit, query, and reporting functions via internal network, intranet, and internet.

4.4.3 Management of Master Street Name List

Street Name Data Management

STR-ID: 2165 Dir: N Street: PRESTON Type: ST City: WM

Similar sounding street names (SOUNDEX):
PRESIDIO
PRESIDENT DAMS
PRICES
PRESCOTT
PROSPERITY
PROSPECT
PRESTWICK CLOSE
PRESTWICK
PROMENADE
PROMONTORY

Street Name Changed from:

STR-ID: 1352 Dir: N Street: PRISTINE Type: ST City: WM

Date: 08/29/2001

Action: Renaming of North Pristine St

Validation Code: 4

Record: 14

0 Unverified
1 Preliminary plan
2 Final Plan/recorded plat
3 Street sign/field verified
4 Council/Commissioner action
5 Local convention or tradition

The basic interface for entering new street names or modifying existing street names should consist of the primary street name elements shown above.

A Street is considered unique for the unique combination of street direction, street name, street type, and city. The application must be able to detect and prevent entry of duplicate street names. A sequential unique identifier should be automatically assigned to each street name record.

When a new street name is entered into the system, the application should be able to compare the proposed street name to existing street names in the database and identify any that are phonetically similar using a standard SOUNDEX algorithm. Similar sounding street names should be presented for review so that a determination can be made whether the proposed street name is adequately distinct from existing street names.

Any time a new street name is entered or an existing street name is modified, a transaction record for that street name should be generated which describes the nature of the update, including transaction date and a description of the action taken.

Parent-child relationships should be established when a street name is changed. A status code should be assigned to indicate whether the street name is active or inactive.

4.4.4 Management of Master Address List

The screenshot displays the 'Address Data Management' software interface. It includes the following fields and elements:

- ADDR-ID:** 5126
- Number:** 106
- Sub-Number:** [Empty]
- DIR:** N
- Street:** [Dropdown menu open with options: 8TH, 8TH, 9TH, 9TH, A, AVOCET, APACHE, ABBEY GLEN, APOLLO, ABALONE, AVALON, APPEALS, AVON, AVINE, APPOMATTOX, AVENEL, AVENSHIRE, ABBINGTON, AVANT]
- Type:** AVE
- City:** WM
- Unit Type:** APT
- Unit:** 10
- Date:** 08/29/2001
- Action:** Address assigned to new lot
- Validation Code:** 1 (Dropdown menu open with options: 0 Unknown/unverified, 1 Assignment by preliminary plan or application, 2 Final plan or recorded plat, 3 Field verified)
- Record ID:** 14

The basic interface for entering new addresses or modifying existing addresses should consist of the primary address elements as shown above.

An address is considered unique for every unique combination of house number, sub-number, direction, street name, street type, and city. A sequential unique identifier should be automatically assigned to each address record. The application must be able to detect and prevent the entry of duplicate addresses. If an address is entered that matches an existing address, the system should provide

House numbers should be validated against known address ranges for the street specified. If the house number falls outside a known address range, the user should be alerted and given the option of correcting the number or accepting the number as-is. If the number is accepted as-is, a flag should be set which initiates a process of verifying and updating the address range information for that street.

Any time a new address is entered or an existing address is modified, a transaction record for that address should be generated which describes the nature of the update, including transaction date and a description of the action taken.

Parent-child relationships should be established when an address is changed or a single address is divided into multiple addresses. A status code should be assigned to indicate whether the address is active or inactive.

4.4.5 Address Data Entry

Having established a procedure for creating and managing addresses, the process of address data entry is reduced to simply associating a known address in the master address list to a record in an application that requires address information. Instead of typing address information free form, addresses can be selected from a list. This will reduce or eliminate typographic errors by data entry clerks and will establish a process for ongoing quality control.

If an address to be entered cannot be found in the master address list, a provision should be made to allow manual entry, but a flag should be set to initiate the process of validation of the unknown address.

4.4.6 Querying and Reporting Functions

The application should provide the following querying and reporting functions:

Determine if a street name is already in the master street name list.

Determine if a street name is phonetically similar to a street name already in the master street name list.

List all known addresses on a specified street.

List all known addresses on a specified street within a specified address range.

4.5 ADDRESS POINT DATASET MODEL

This portion of the *Addressing Standard* discusses a model for developing a dataset of physical addresses that can be accessed as or through geospatial points. Such a dataset could be used for a variety of purposes, ranging from geocoding to assigning addresses in a reliable manner. The model has the potential to serve as both an address repository and a master street name list, providing an invaluable resource to a broad community of users. An address point geospatial dataset could be designed in a number of ways, but this document provides one model that can be altered in a few subtle ways, as noted below.

The model does not absolutely require that the data be stored as a geospatial dataset. Rather, the data can be stored as simply a table within a relational database management system (RDBMS). But, for the data to be geospatial in nature, it is necessary to store X and Y-coordinate values for each physical address so that points can be generated on an ad hoc basis. Z-coordinates (i.e., elevation) could be stored, as well.

Parcel ID (New Hanover County PID or PIN) will not be stored as a component of the dataset. Parcel ID's can change independently of addresses and vice-versa. When an association between parcel ID and address is needed, a spatial overlay between address point and tax parcel regions can be performed.

4.5.1 Master Address Database

The Master Address Database model is comprised of two primary tables:

Master Street Name Table
Master Address Table

Various other associated tables such as transaction tables and QA/QC tables are defined that can be related to the primary tables. These tables are described later in this section.

It is assumed that X Y coordinates defining address point locations will be maintained in the City/County GIS as part of its normal functioning. Thus, fields containing X and Y co-ordinates will not be maintained in the master address table. There should be a 1-to-1 correspondence between address point locations in the GIS and individual address records in the master address table.

The descriptions and diagrams that follow illustrate how a master address database can be designed.

4.4.2 Master Street Name Table

The primary function of the master street name table is to centralize the maintenance of street name assignments and to reduce redundancy of street name lists throughout City/County organizations. All street name additions and changes are posted to this single table instead of multiple, redundant tables. This has the beneficial effect of providing a reliable master street name list and reducing the potential for errors during data entry into address based systems.

The master street name table contains the basic elements necessary to uniquely define a complete street name.

The master street name table is defined with the following items:

<i>Item Description</i>	<i>Item Name</i>	<i>Item Length</i>	<i>Item Type</i>	<i>Defined Attribute Domain?</i>	<i>Nulls Allowed</i>
Street Name ID	STR-ID	7	Sequential numeric	Yes - positive integer	No
Street Parent ID	STPARENT	7	Numeric	Yes - positive integer	No
Street Direction (directional prefix)	DIR	2	Alpha	Yes - see below	Yes
Street Name	STREET	25	Alpha	No	No
Street Type	TYPE	3	Alpha	Yes - see below	No *see below
City Code	CITY	3	Alpha	Yes - see below	No

A unique street name ID will be assigned for each unique combination of direction, name, type, and city.

The Street Parent ID is included to provide a parent/child relationship between street name records as street names are changed. Additions, deletions, and changes are recorded in the Street Transaction Table.

4.5.3 Defined Attribute Domain for Street Directional Suffix

Street Direction (DIR) values are restricted to the list below:

Direction	Description
N	North

S	South
E	East
W	West
NE	Not Allowed
NW	Not Allowed
SE	Not Allowed
SW	Not Allowed
Default Value: none	

4.5.4 Defined Attribute Domain for Street Type

Street Direction (DIR) values are restricted to the list below:

Street Type Code	Description
ALY	ALLEY
AVE	AVENUE
BLV	BOULEVA RD
CIR	CIRCLE
CT	COURT
DR	DRIVE
HWY	HIGHWAY
LN	LANE
LP	LOOP
PKY	PARKWAY
PL	PLACE
PLZ	PLAZA
PT	POINT
RD	ROAD
ROW	ROW
RUN	RUN
ST	STREET
TER	TERRACE
TRL	TRAIL
WLK	WALK
WAY	WAY
Default value:	NONE

*A null street type may be acceptable in the case of streets that include obscure street types such as "Trace", "Glen", "Hollow", etc. For streets that have type values not included in the above list, the street name field should include both name and type, for example "Whistler Trace", "Wellington Glen", and "Knobby Hollow" would all be street names with null street types.

4.5.5 Defined Attribute Domain for City Code

City Code (CITY) values are restricted to the list below:

City Code	Description
-----------	-------------

WM	City of Wilmington
FD	Unincorporated New Hanover County
WB	Town of Wrightsville Beach
CB	Town of Carolina Beach
KB	Town of Kure Beach
Default Value: none	

4.5.6 Street Name Transaction Table

The street name transaction table records any actions related to naming or renaming specific streets. This table can be used to track the history of a given street from inception through any changes or corrections that are made on the name. The street name transaction table is related to the master street name table by the street name id (STR-ID) field that is common to both tables.

The street name transaction table is defined with the following items:

<i>Item Description</i>	<i>Item Name</i>	<i>Item Length</i>	<i>Item Type</i>	<i>Defined Attribute Domain?</i>	<i>Nulls Allowed</i>
Street Name ID	STR-ID	7	Sequential numeric	Yes - positive integer	No
Transaction Date	STDATE	10	Date	Yes - on or after July 19, 2001	No
Transaction Description	STACTION	90	Alpha	No	No

Examples of street transactions are initial creation of street from preliminary plan, street renaming, road closure (inactivation of street name), or correction of incorrect street name.

4.5.7 Street Name QC Table

The street name QC table is used to rate street name records in the master street name table with a code that reflects the confidence level of the referenced street name. For instance, an unverified street name will have a low confidence level, but street names that have been field verified or otherwise validated will have higher confidence levels.

The street name status code (active or inactive) is used to segregate street names that were once used (active) but which were changed or otherwise inactivated. This provides a mechanism in the master street name table to search and sort only active street names, or only inactive street names if required.

The street name QC table is related to the master street name table by the street name id (STR-ID) field that is common to both tables.

The street name QC table is defined with the following items:

<i>Item Description</i>	<i>Item Name</i>	<i>Item Length</i>	<i>Item Type</i>	<i>Defined Attribute Domain?</i>	<i>Nulls Allowed</i>
Street Name ID	STR-ID	7	Sequential numeric	Yes - positive integer	No
Street name status	SNSTATUS	1	Character	Yes - see below	No
Street name QC code	SNQC	2	Numeric	Yes - see below	No

4.5.8 Defined Attribute Domain for Street Name Status

Street Name Status (SNSTATUS) values are restricted to the list below:

Status Code	Description
A	Active
I	Inactive
Default Value: A	

4.5.9 Defined Attribute Domain for Street Name QC Code

Street Name QC Code (SNQC) values are restricted to the list below:

Street Name QC Code	Description
0	Unverified
1	Preliminary plan
2	Final plan/recorded plat
3	Street sign/field verified
4	Council/Commissioner/Staff action
5	Local convention or tradition
Default Value: 0	

4.6 MASTER ADDRESS TABLE

The master address table is used to store all known physical addresses. A unique physical address is defined by any unique combination of street number, street sub number, full street name, unit type and unit number.

Note that the records in the master address table do not store street name information directly, but rather store the reference ID (STR-ID) to the street name in the master street name table. This preserves the integrity of the street name portion of the address record.

The address parent ID acts as a pointer to establish parent-child relationships between addresses. For example, if a large parcel with a single address is subdivided, then the address ID of the large tract becomes the parent ID of each address in the subdivided tract.

The master address table is defined with the following items:

<i>Item Description</i>	<i>Item Name</i>	<i>Item Length</i>	<i>Item Type</i>	<i>Defined Attribute Domain?</i>	<i>Nulls Allowed?</i>
Address ID	ADDR-ID	7	Sequential numeric	Yes - positive integer	No
Address parent ID	ADDPARENT	7	Sequential numeric	Yes - positive integer	No
Street Number	NUM	6	Numeric	Yes - positive integer	No
Street Sub-Number	SUBNUM	6	Alpha	No	Yes
Street Name ID	STR-ID	7	Sequential numeric	Yes - any valid STR-ID in the master street name table	No
Unit Type	UTYPE	5	Alpha	Yes - see below	Yes
Unit Number / Identifier	UNIT	5	Alpha	No	Yes

4.6.1 Defined Attribute Domain for Unit Type

Unit Type (UTYPE) values are restricted to the list below:

Unit Type Code	Description
APT	Apartment
STE	Suite
BLDG	Building
FLOOR	Floor
UNIT	Generic unit where none of above apply
Default Value: none	

4.7 ADDRESS QC TABLE

The address QC table is used to rate address records in the master address table with a code that reflects the confidence level of the referenced address. For instance, an unverified address will have a low confidence level, but addresses that have been field verified or otherwise validated will have higher confidence levels.

The address QC table is related to the master address table by the address id (ADDR-ID) field that is common to both tables.

The address QC table is defined with the following items:

<i>Item Description</i>	<i>Item Name</i>	<i>Item Length</i>	<i>Item Type</i>	<i>Defined Attribute Domain?</i>	<i>Nulls Allowed?</i>
Address ID	ADDR-ID	7	Sequential numeric	Yes - positive integer	No
Address status	ADDSTATUS	1	Character	Yes - see below	No
Address QC code	ADDQC	2	Numeric	Yes - see below.	No

4.7.1 Defined Attribute Domain for Address Status

Address Status (ADDSTATUS) values are restricted to the list below:

Status Code	Description
A	Active
I	Inactive
Default Value: A	

4.7.2 Defined Attribute Domain for Address QC Code

QC Code (ADDQC) values are restricted to the list below:

Code	Description
000	Unknown/Unverified
	This the default for unknown
333	Preliminary Addresses
	Address is Valid, but could Change
700	Verified Addresses
	Verified, Researched Address
	701 Verified by Field Inspection
	702 Verified by CO
	703 Verified by Property Owner
	704 Verified by Tax Department
	705 Verified by Utilities
800	Verified with GPS Location
	Verified and GPS Located (Front Door)
	801 GPS by NHC Inspections
	Verified and GPS Located (Inspections)
911	Addresses for 911 Dispatch
	Unique Addresses for Places (911 Only)

4.8 ADDRESS TRANSACTION TABLE

The address transaction table records any actions related to address assignments or subsequent address changes. This table can be used to track the history of a given address from inception through any changes or corrections that are made on the address. The address transaction table is related to the master address table by the address id (ADDR-ID) field.

The Address Transaction Table is defined with the following items:

<i>Item Description</i>	<i>Item Name</i>	<i>Item Length</i>	<i>Item Type</i>	<i>Defined Attribute Domain?</i>	<i>Nulls Allowed</i>
Address ID	ADDR-ID	7	Sequential numeric	Yes - positive integer	No

Transaction Date	ATDATE	10	Date	Yes - on or after July 19, 2001	No
Description of Transaction	ATACTION	90	Alpha	No	No

Examples of address transactions include initial creation of addresses; bulk re-addressing, or correction of incorrect address.

4.9 MASTER ADDRESS TABLE RELATIONSHIPS DEFINED (CHART)

Master Address Table						
ADDR-ID	ADDPARENT	NUM	SUBNUM	STR-ID	UTYPE	UNIT
123	← 123	5822	1/2	46		
124	→ 123	5824		46		
125	125	601		47	APT	F
126	126	601		47	APT	G
127	127	454		48		

Master Street Name Table					
STR-ID	STPARENT	DIR	STREET	TYPE	CITY
45	← 45		MARY	ST	WM
46	→ 45		MERRY	WAY	WM
47	47	S	WALLY	DR	WM
48	48		CLEAVER	PL	WM
49	48		BEAVER	PL	WM

Address QC Table		
ADDR-ID	ADDSTATUS	ADQC
123	I	1
124	A	3
125	A	2
126	I	2
127	A	3

Street Name QC Table		
STR-ID	SNSTATUS	SNQC
45	I	1
46	A	4
47	A	3
48	I	2
49	A	5

Address Transaction Table		
ADDR-ID	ATDATE	ADACTION
123	2/3/1998	Source - City Development Center
123	3/20/1999	Re-addressed due to conflict
124	3/20/1999	New address for 5822 MERRY WAY
126	8/12/2000	Subdivision of 1 lot into 2
127	6/17/2001	Source - City Development Center

Street Transaction Table		
STR-ID	STDATE	STACTION
45	9/12/1996	Name assigned from preliminary plan
45	2/14/1997	Renamed to Merry Way
46	2/14/2001	New name for Mary Street
47	7/21/2000	Field verified sign; code to 3
48	6/3/1988	Name taken from recorded plat
48	11/11/2000	Street sign says BEAVER PL
49	11/11/2000	Changed CLEAVER PL to BEAVER PL

***Note: STPARENT and ADDPARENT provide a parent/child relationship between records as shown.**

5. APPENDIX B - ENFORCEMENT PROCEDURES

5.1 CURRENT STANDARDS IN THE CITY OF WILMINGTON, NC: For newly assigned addresses it shall be the duty of the zoning officer to inspect and verify that the address is accurate and meets all code requirements. If the address does not meet requirements then a certificate of occupancy will not be issued until the address is compliant. Once an address violation has been identified for existing address, it shall be the duty of the addressing coordinator to issue notification of the violation. If the notification process is does not resolve the violation then the address coordinator will deliver the violation to the code enforcement division. Code enforcement will work through their normal procedures to insure that the violation is corrected and brought into compliance.

5.2 STANDARDS OF ADDRESS DISPLAY IN NEW HANOVER COUNTY

The New Hanover County Code of Ordinances Section 47-101 - Address Display

It is the duty of the property owner, agent, or occupant of any house, building or mobile-manufactured home fronting on a road or private easement in the unincorporated area of the county to properly display the number which has been assigned by the planning department. Such number shall be a minimum of three inches in height. The number shall be placed on the home, building, or mailbox, so that it may be plainly seen and observed from the adjacent road.

5.3 ENFORCEMENT OF THESE STANDARDS IN NEW HANOVER COUNTY

The enforcement for address numbers ensures public safety and promotes efficient delivery services. For new structures and renovations it shall be the duty of the inspectors to verify the correct address at the time of a final inspection. Neither the certificate of occupancy nor a certificate of compliance shall be issued unless the address meets the terms of the existing code, which identifies the duty of the property owner.

In the situation where an address change has been requested by the Planning Department or the Planning Department re-numbers a road within the county, it shall be the duty of the address technician/coordinator to inform and direct the property owner(s) to use and display the new address. If the property owner does not meet the departments' request to change and display their address within 30 days, a citation of code violation will be issued to the property owner by the New Hanover County Fire Services Department.

New Hanover County Code of Ordinances Section 47-109 - Enforcement

Any Person who is found in violation of this Article shall be Subject to a civil penalty in the amount of One Hundred Fifty (\$150.00) Dollars for each offence, to be issued by either the Fire Services Department, Sheriff's Department, Code Enforcement Officer or Planning Department. Each violation shall be treated as a separate offence.

In addition to any other legal remedies, equitable remedies may enforce this article and any unlawful condition existing in violation of this Article may be subject to an injunction or order of abatement.

6. APPENDIX C - STREET SIGNAGE TECHNICAL STANDARDS (NENA BASED)*

6.1 STREET NAME SIGNS

Street name signs shall be constructed to the following specifications:

6.1.1 Tubular Aluminum or Galvanized Steel Posts

Twelve (12) feet in length, minimum, if not set in concrete.

Two and three-eighths (2-3/8) inches outside diameter, three (3) pounds per foot in weight.

Lower end five (5) feet in ground.

Anchored at ground level with three (3) angle bars driven into ground and connected to post with special bolted connecting ring.

6.1.2 Bottom of sign a minimum of seven (7) feet above ground

Sign blanks shall have the following dimensions:

Extruded flange-reinforced-edge aluminum blades.

Blades are a Minimum of twenty-four (24) inches in length, and six (6) inches high for streets under 35 m.p.h. or nine (9) inches high for streets 45 m.p.h.

Point two hundred and fifty (0.250) inches thick at flanges.

Point zero ninety-one (0.091) inches thick at center of blade.

Two (2) seven-sixteenths (7/16) inch holes in top flange end. Two (2) seven-sixteenths (7/16) inch holes in bottom flange. Each hole being one and three-fourths (1-3/4) inches from the vertical centerline of the blade and with their centers seven sixteenth (7/16) of an inch from the extreme top or bottom edge of the blade.

6.1.3 Hardware

Standard approved vandal-proof caps and crosses with recessed head attachment bolts and set-screws.

6.2 COLOR & LETTERING

6.2.1 All Block Capitals.

6.2.2 Height of Blade and Street Name - Name Text of street four (4) inches in height for six (6) inch blades.

6.2.3 Height of Prefixes and Suffixes - Prefixes (N, S, E, & W) and Suffixes (ST, AVE, RD, etc.) two (2) inches in height

6.2.4 Block Numbers (Required) - Two (2) inches in height. The street address block number shall appear below the suffix (ST, AVE, etc.) designation.

6.2.5 Color and Reflective Letters - Color of signs, white lettering on reflective green background (may be "reverse-screened").

6.2.6 Private Street Placement - Street name signs installed in areas which have not been dedicated to public use, shall have the word, "PRIVATE" incorporated thereon in letters at least one (1) inch in height. Color of signs, white lettering on reflective green background (may be "reverse-screened").

**Taken From The City of Wilmington Technical Standards Manual New Hanover County Sign Standards*

8. APPENDIX E - KEY TERMS

Block – A block is a group of buildings that form a unit from one intersection to another. The unit could be a 100 block or 1000 block.

Cul-de-sac -They are extended streets with a wide circular turn-a-round at their ends and only one outlet, they provide access to 4 or more lots.

Intersection – The meeting of two or more passable roadways or possibly where a roadway passes over a named body of water.

Public (Street) - A Public Street is a street that is maintained and owned by the municipality, state, or federal government that is responsible for it. They have more restrictions and rules governing their construction, and maintenance.

Private (Street) – A Private Street is a street that is maintained and owned by the property owner(s) that use it for access to their property by motor vehicle.

Street – A Street is any single lane and multi-lane corridor or conveyance, which is passable by a motor vehicle. This includes private and public, improved (paved), unimproved (unpaved) roadways, and alleys.

Units – Units are property address identifiers that are used to divide a single numeric address into identifiable subsets for location purposes.